剑桥“英语在用”（English in Use）丛书

CAMBRIDGE

剑桥高级英语词汇（新中文版）

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE ADVANCED

（英）Michael McCarthy
（英）Felicity O'Dell 著

英语在用

- 100 units of vocabulary reference and practice
  100个单元词汇讲解与练习
- Self-study and classroom use
  适合自学及课堂使用

外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS
剑桥大学出版社
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Learn English with the World's Bestsellers!

英语在用

剑桥“英语在用”（English in Use）丛书是一套享誉全球的英语学习用书，自出版以来，全球销量已逾千万册。丛书专为非英语国家的学习者编写，结构明晰，形式简约，重点突出，注重实用。鉴于剑桥“英语在用”丛书在学习者中的良好口碑，外语教学与研究出版社新引进了这套丛书的词汇、语法系列的修订新版，以及短语、习语等系列。希望读者朋友们通过这套高品质的学习用书，真正提高自己的英语水平。

《剑桥高级英语词汇》是为高级学习者撰写的英语词汇学习用书，既可作为自学和练习的参考书，也可作为课堂教材使用。

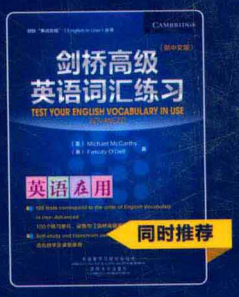
- **100个单元：**每单元为一个对开页，左页进行词汇讲解，右页编排相应练习；
- **突出“在用”：**将词汇放入语境当中讲解，为学生展示如何应用；
- **编排科学：**通过实例短文和典型例句，保证学习者接触到真实地道的英语；
- **权威保障：**以剑桥英语口笔语语料库为基础，选取当前常用词汇；
- **学习建议（TIP）/拓展练习（FOLLOW UP）：**帮助学生培养良好的学习习惯；
- **习题答案：**详尽全面，便于学生自测学习效果，掌握进度。

CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 1 billion words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique collection of over 30 million words taken from student exam papers from Cambridge ESOL. It shows real mistakes students make and highlights the parts of English which cause problems for students.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE



责任编辑：王霖霖
封面设计：刘　冬

ISBN 978-7-5135-1485-9

9 787513 514859 >

定价：39.90元

一个学术性教育性
出版机构

网址：http://www.fltrp.com

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

剑桥“英语在用”（English

剑桥高级英语词汇（新中文版）

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE ADVANCED

（英）Michael McCarthy
（英）Felicity O'Dell 著
王 成 译

外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS
剑桥大学出版社
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
北京 BEIJING

京权图字：01-2007-5788

This is a Chinese edition of the following title published by Cambridge University Press:

English Vocabulary in Use: Advanced (ISBN: 9780521677462)

© Cambridge University Press 2002

This Chinese edition for the People's Republic of China (excluding Hong Kong SAR, Macao SAR and Taiwan Province) is published by arrangement with the Press Syndicate of the University of Cambridge, Cambridge, United Kingdom.

© Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and Cambridge University Press 2011

This Chinese edition is authorized for sale in the People's Republic of China (excluding Hong Kong SAR, Macao SAR and Taiwan Province) only. Unauthorized export of this Chinese edition is a violation of the Copyright Act. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of both Cambridge University Press and Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press.

本书版权由剑桥大学出版社和外语教学与研究出版社共同所有。本书任何部分之文字及图片，如未获得两社书面同意，不得用任何方式抄袭、节录或翻印。

只限中华人民共和国境内销售，不包括香港特别行政区、澳门特别行政区及台湾省。不得出口。

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

剑桥高级英语词汇：新中文版/（英）麦卡锡（McCarthy, M.），（英）奥德尔（O'Dell, F.）著；王成译. — 北京：外语教学与研究出版社，2011.11
（剑桥"英语在用"丛书）
ISBN 978-7-5135-1485-9

Ⅰ. ①剑… Ⅱ. ①麦… ②奥… ③王… Ⅲ. ①英语—词汇 Ⅳ. ①H313

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2011）第 234838 号

2u4u 悠游网—外语学习 一网打尽
www.2u4u.com.cn
阅读、视听、测试、交流、共享
提供海量电子文档、视频、MP3、手机应用下载！

出 版 人：蔡剑峰
责任编辑：王霖霖
封面设计：刘 冬
出版发行：外语教学与研究出版社
社 址：北京市西三环北路 19 号（100089）
网 址：http://www.fltrp.com
印 刷：北京京师印务有限公司
开 本：787×1092 1/16
印 张：20
版 次：2011 年 11 月第 1 版 2011 年 11 月第 1 次印刷
书 号：ISBN 978-7-5135-1485-9
定 价：39.90 元

* * *

购书咨询：(010)88819189 电子邮箱：yirc@fltrp.com
如有印刷、装订质量问题，请与出版社联系
联系电话：(010)61207896 电子邮箱：zhijian@fltrp.com
制售盗版必究 举报查实奖励
版权保护办公室举报电话：(010)88817519
物料号：214850001

出版说明

剑桥“英语在用”(English in Use)丛书原由剑桥大学出版社出版，是一套享誉全球的英语学习用书，主要包括英语词汇、短语、习语、词汇惯用搭配和英语语法等系列，自出版以来，全球销量已逾千万册，既可用于读者自学，也可用于课堂教学，是许多学习者手边必备的参考书。

剑桥“英语在用”丛书专为非英语国家的学习者编写，作者均为剑桥大学出版社卓有经验的权威，内容实例取材于剑桥国际英语语料库，在编排结构上条理明晰，形式简约，重点突出，注重实用；并采取版面左页讲解、右页练习，书后附参考答案的方式，达到即学即练的巩固效果。

自2001年以来，外语教学与研究出版社从剑桥大学出版社陆续引进了“英语在用”丛书的词汇、语法系列的学习用书及练习册，深受英语学习者和一些培训学校的青睐和好评。近来剑桥大学出版社重新修订、扩充了丛书内容，并推出了新的版本。鉴于“英语在用”丛书在学习者中的口碑和良好的学习效果，外语教学与研究出版社新引进了“英语在用”丛书的词汇、语法系列的修订新版以及此前未有的系列（短语、习语等），特此推介给广大的读者，同时稍微更改了纸型和版式，使之更便于阅读。希望读者朋友们通过这套高品质的学习丛书，真正提高自己的英语水平。

剑桥“英语在用”丛书新出版书目：

词汇：

《剑桥入门级英语词汇》（第二版中文版）
《剑桥入门级英语词汇练习》（第二版中文版）
《剑桥初级英语词汇》（第二版中文版）
《剑桥初级英语词汇练习》（第二版中文版）
《剑桥中级英语词汇》（第二版中文版）
《剑桥中级英语词汇练习》（中文版）
《剑桥高级英语词汇》（新中文版）
《剑桥高级英语词汇练习》（新中文版）

短语、习语、惯用搭配：

《剑桥英语习语》（中文版）
《剑桥英语惯用搭配》（中文版）
《剑桥中级英语短语动词》（中文版）
《剑桥高级英语短语动词》（中文版）

语法：

《剑桥高级英语语法》（第二版中文版）

附剑桥“英语在用”丛书原出版书目：

词汇：

《剑桥初级英语词汇》（中文版）
《剑桥中级英语词汇》（中文版）
《剑桥中级英语词汇练习》（中文版）
《剑桥高级英语词汇》（中文版）

《剑桥初级英语词汇》（英文版）
《剑桥中级英语词汇》（英文版）
《剑桥高级英语词汇》（英文版）

语法：

《剑桥初级英语语法》（中文版）
《剑桥初级英语语法练习》（中文版）
《剑桥中级英语语法》（中文版）
《剑桥中级英语语法练习》（中文版）
《剑桥高级英语语法》（中文版）

《剑桥初级英语语法》（英文版）
《剑桥初级英语语法练习》（英文版）
《剑桥中级英语语法》（英文版）
《剑桥中级英语语法练习》（英文版）
《剑桥高级英语语法》（英文版）

目 录

致学习者		4
词汇学习的各方面		知识要点举例
i	学习技巧	
ii	释义类型	*polysemy, synonymy, collocation, connotation, register*
iii	善用词典	
iv	搭配	*the real thing, the genuine article*
v	多义	*fair, flat, drill*
vi	比喻	*be on the ball, all the world's a stage*
vii	语域	*garments, clothes, clobber*
viii	隐含意义及文化联想	*cowboys, black cats*
词的组成		
1	缩写与首字母缩略词	*ID, FAQ, o.n.o.*
2	前缀：创造新含义	*over-, cross-, e-*
3	后缀：有构词能力的后缀及其词性	*-free, -proof, -esque*
4	构词法	*biodegradable, cybercafé, guesstimate*
5	全球语境与语言的丰富性	*loan word, roster, intelligentsia*
6	相似不相同：易混淆的词汇	*series/serial, moist/damp*
工作与学习		
7	职场：同事与工作	*flexi-time, freelance, job-share*
8	职场：职业与发展	*drive, perks, glass ceiling*
9	商务 1	*telemarketing, niche market, entrepreneurship*
10	商务 2	*submit a tender, default on a payment*
11	为成功准备：学术研究	*rote-learning, assignment, deadline*
12	教育：讨论议题	*elitism, league tables, the three Rs*
人物及关系		
13	谈论自己	*diligent, shrewd, sagacious*
14	人际关系：积极方面	*infatuated, amiable, kindred spirits*
15	人际关系：问题	*disloyal, unsupportive, family feud*
16	情感：情绪与反应	*conciliate, rapture, blissful*
17	感觉：反感与厌恶	*abhorrence, loathing, fickle*
18	观察他人：外貌举止	*lanky, grimace, pout*
19	观察他人：性格特征	*impulsive, diffident, gullible*
20	生与死：从摇篮到坟墓	*Caesarean section, obituaries, mourning*
生活与休闲		
21	闲暇时光：休闲与消遣	*time-consuming, dabbler, shopaholic*
22	流行风尚：服装与时尚	*frumpy, dressed to kill, without frills*
23	家居风格/生活方式	*granny flat, minimalism, household word*
24	社交网络	*housewarming, hobnob, clique*
25	表演艺术：评论与批评	*hackneyed, typecast, rendition*
26	雕塑艺术	*philistinism, impenetrable, tongue-in-cheek*
27	书籍	*chronicle, memoirs, compulsive reading*
28	民以食为天	*wholesome, GM, unsavoury*
29	这顿算我的：请客与在外用餐	*sweet tooth, calorie-conscious, teetotal*

旅游

30 在路上：交通与驾驶 *hit-and-run, road rage, tailback*
31 旅行与住宿 *deluxe, charter, half-board*
32 旅游业 *back to nature, eco-tourism, discerning*

环境

33 描述世界 *paddy field, prairies, migrant*
34 天气与气候 *clammy, sweltering, snowed under*
35 建筑术语用于比喻 *glass ceiling, tower of strength, key to success*
36 树木/植物用于比喻 *nip in the bud, germinate, shrivel*
37 飞禽走兽 *rodent, herbivore, fur trade*
38 环境保护 *endangered, fossil fuels, pristine*

社会与制度

39 乐意效劳：客户服务 *obliging, shoddy, on hold*
40 权力机构：海关与警察 *sniffer dog, on-the-spot fine, drug squad*
41 世界观：思维方式 *bigot, assumption, tenet*
42 民俗节日 *renewal, commemorate, raucous*
43 语言 *Germanic, syntax, pictograms*
44 历史 *usurp power, feudal, serf*
45 贫困：富人与穷人 *malnutrition, GDP, destitute*
46 英国政治 *lobbyist, petition, grievance*
47 法律用语 *impeach, embezzle, overturn a verdict*
48 战争与和平 *deterrent, hostilities, biological warfare*
49 经济与财政 *debt, sanctions, devaluation*
50 个人财务：平衡收支 *strapped for cash, broke, golden handshake*

媒体

51 媒体：印刷品 *agony aunt, flyer, pamphlet*
52 媒体：互联网及电子邮件 *chat room, browse, cookie*
53 广告 *rock-bottom prices, state-of-the-art, trailers*
54 新闻：采集与发布 *column inch, sound bite, hot off the press*

健康

55 健康与疾病 1 *go down with, hepatitis, typhoid*
56 健康与疾病 2 *aches and pains, nauseous, acupuncture*
57 健康与疾病 3 *side effects, jaundiced view, prognosis*
58 饮食，运动与健身 *cholesterol, cardiovascular, move the goalposts*

科技

59 工业化 *low-tech, subsidies, lame duck*
60 科学技术及其影响 *PDA, biotechnology, ergonomics*
61 未来展望 *virtual reality, e-commerce, gene therapy*

基础概念

62 空间：宽展与局促 *rambling, poky, labyrinth*
63 时间：次序与经历 *donkey's years, over the hill, fleeting*
64 动作：踱步与漫步的细微差别 *hobble, trudge, stream*
65 行为：礼仪举止与肢体语言 *mind your Ps and Qs, etiquette, twitch*

66 声音：从噪声到无声 *noiseless, deafening, wail*
67 重量与密度 *unwieldy, congeal, impervious*
68 颜色：范围与浓度 *ginger, pastel, grey cells*
69 速度 *pop, scuttle, rocket*
70 原因与结果 *generate, spark off, bring about*
71 类比与对比 *affinity, disparate, discrete*
72 困难/困境/障碍 *glitch, gruelling, in a fix*
73 语气：表达事实/观点/意愿 *the odds are, expedient, compulsory*
74 数字：数据统计与数量评估 *IQ, aggregate, round down*

功能性词汇

75 允许与禁止 *acquiesce, veto, outlaw*
76 抱怨与抗议 *grouse, whinge, find fault*
77 道歉/原谅/和解 *alibi, remorse, exonerate*
78 称赞与表扬 *laud, flatter, obsequious*
79 承诺与打赌 *vow, pledge, have a flutter*
80 回忆与遗憾 *the good old days, look back, lament*
81 同意/分歧/妥协 *tally, rift, concession*
82 学术写作 1 *infer, distort, append*
83 学术写作 2 *reiterate, epitomise, allude*
84 书写：风格与样式 *doodle, block capitals, bullet*
85 讲话的措词技巧 *thingummy, umpteen, a touch of*
86 讲话的方式与障碍 *shriek, lisp, slur*
87 语言表达的模糊化 *smattering, more or less, or whatever*

习语与短语动词

88 习语类型 *have second thoughts, in the dark, stumbling block*
89 不同情境的习语 *up and running, a complete shambles, as clear as mud*
90 评论人物的习语 1 *soft spot, the brains behind, on cloud nine*
91 评论人物的习语 2 *a rough diamond, a dark horse, at loggerheads*
92 评述事件的习语 *out of the blue, famous last words, small world*
93 短语动词 1 *stand back from, stand in for, stand up for*
94 短语动词 2 *slog away, pelt down, bottle out*
95 短语动词 3 *miss out on, branch out, bubble over with*

语言差异

96 美式英语/英式英语 *kitty-corner, deplane, faucet*
97 其他类英语：多元化与多样性 *craic, beaut, shroff*
98 语言与性别 *spokesperson, butch, effeminate*
99 语言体现的年龄特征与社会阶层 *oik, wireless, luncheon*
100 报纸标题用语 *crackdown, louts, besiege*

答案 *220*

音标表 *292*

索引 *293*

Acknowledgements *315*

致学习者

本书的目的

本书旨在提高您的词汇水平，将您对英语词汇、短语的掌握提升到高级阶段。本书不仅能帮您掌握词汇的含义，而且能帮助您学习如何使用词汇，如何用词汇进行搭配，以及如何用词汇组成较长的表达式等；并有助于您进一步理解以前已经认识的词汇及在本书中为您介绍的新词汇。

本书的特色

本书既可用于教学，也可用于自学。旨在通过学习约 2,000 个新的词汇和表达式，来进一步扩大您的词汇量，同时也帮助您了解诸多词汇的惯用搭配(这些搭配在英语中是典型的，然而又很难预知）和较长的短语、句子的组成。本书还能帮您理解词汇含义之间的细微差别，比如这些词汇是正式的还是非正式的，是褒义还是贬义，如何运用在比喻中，等等。为了使本书的语言实例尽可能地自然地道，我们参考了一个具有 2.5 亿词汇量的数据库(即语料库)，它的语料源自报纸、小说、杂志以及人们在居家、购物、办公时的日常对话。我们用计算机分析该数据库，分辨出在高级阶段哪些词汇是最有用的，它们的典型搭配都是什么，以及它们常出现在什么样的语境中。所以您在本书中学习的语言均以真正英语母语人士的口语和书面语为基础。为了使语言更加自然，我们还常以较长的文本段落为例，而不仅仅是句子，所以您可以从中体会重点词汇的更为具体的使用语境，观察这些词汇是如何组成搭配的。阅读、观察词汇如何组合是高级阶段学习中很重要的内容。而且，在这一阶段，您会越来越想将词汇学习与您个人的世界联系起来，与您个人的英语学习目标联系起来，所以我们也编排了这种练习，来引导您的词汇学习更加个性化。本书中选择的主题，我们认为对要在全球背景下使用英语的学习者来说是非常实用的，可以用于广泛的社会交际，谈论一系列的成年人话题，包括社会、文化、周遭的环境以及我们自身。

本书的编排

本书包括 100 个双页对开单元。在绝大多数单元中，左页是讲解该单元要学习的词汇和表达式，在必要的地方给出了说明，如：使用这些词汇的典型语境，它们最常用的搭配是什么、含义是什么。右页用来检查您的学习效果，给出了一系列的练习来应用您所刚刚学到的知识。偶尔右页也会讲解出现的新单词，挑战并进一步扩充您的词汇水平。

我们还不时地提供学习建议，帮助您更好地组织学习，引导您构思自己的词汇学习策略。另外，很多单元还有后续的拓展练习，带您超越本书的范围利用网站等其他资源，使您可以进一步拓展与该单元有关的词汇。

本书后附有练习答案，它不仅仅是提供一个正确答案，有时还对答案做出评述，帮助您更多地了解所学单元中的词汇。

书后还有一个索引，列出了书中讲解的所有词汇和短语，便于您查找它们在书中的位置。索引中还给出了国际音标。您需要了解的音标符号表列在索引之前。

本书的使用

本书分为几个部分，建议您先完成第一个介绍部分“词汇学习的各方面”的 8 个单元。这 8 个单元不仅讲解了某些新词汇，更综述了词汇学习的实用技巧，介绍了英语词汇运用中的一些概念。学完这几个单元之后，您既可以按顺序学习本书，也可以选择您认为适合的任何一个单元学习。

学习本书所需的其他辅助工具

您需要有个词汇笔记本或文档，用来记录学习的新词汇、搭配和表达式。您也需要几本高品质的词典。本书所选择的词汇对高级阶段的学习者来说是非常实用的，同时也给出了有关这些单词的重要知识点，但有时您可能需要词典来查找其他的知识点和用法。有些练习也需要使用词典，这样有助于训练您在词典中得出最有用的信息。首先，您需要一本为非母语英语学习者撰写的英英词典。这类词典较好的有：《剑桥高阶学习词典》（*Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*），《朗文当代英语辞典》（*Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English*），《牛津高阶学习词典》（*Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*），《柯林斯 Cobuild 英语词典》（*Collins Cobuild English Language Dictionary*）。其次，一本好的双解词典对你也会有帮助。可以让老师给你推荐一本。* （参见 Unit iii 使用词典的建议。）不要忘了许多词典都有 CD-ROM 版本。如果想知道更多不同类型词典的信息，可访问剑桥大学出版社的网站：dictionary.cambridge.org。

* 上述词典大部分已由外语教学与研究出版社引进出版，详情请登录外语教学与研究出版社官方网站 www. fltrp.com 查询。

学习技巧

本书的目标

本书的目标是通过以下途径，帮助高级英语学习者扩充并提高英语词汇知识：

- 增加你所了解的词汇的数量；
- 协助你以更自然、更准确的方式使用词汇；
- 提高你对词语搭配的了解和实际运用能力；
- 提供你可能已经知道的词汇的其他含义或比喻用法。

本书的使用

在开始其他单元之前，应首先完成前 8 个单元（Units i-viii）的学习。

不要仅仅从第一页到最后一页通读整本书——选择你最需要的或者你最感兴趣的单元，先学习这些单元。

当你在学习 Units 1–100 中任何一个单元的时候：

- 阅读左侧页；
- 尝试做右侧页的练习题；
- 对照练习题答案检查自己的成绩。

在对照练习题答案检查的时候，你会发现有时答案中会包含某些你正在学习的语言知识中的其他有用信息。因此，要仔细阅读，并把你从中学到的感兴趣的语言点记下来。

复习

复习所学单元，能使你的学习达到最佳效果：

- 在第一次学习该单元一周后复习；
- 在一个月后再次复习。

词典

如果你使用一本好的学习词典（见 Unit iii）继续钻研书中你感兴趣的词汇，你能够收获更多。通过这种方法，你能进一步扩充自己的词汇知识。

例如，你会发现：

- 其他有用的搭配；
- 你查找的单词的其他含义；
- 基于同一词根的其他单词。

将词汇个性化

研究表明，如果我们将新学到的词汇与自己的经历联系起来，并且将它们运用到对我们个人而言很有意义的语境中，就能更容易记住这些新词汇。因此，除了做书上的练习外，可以将你想要学习的新单词或短语写进一段有关你个人的情景中，例如你可以将你想要学习的词汇运用到一句话中，这句话可以是你经历过的事，你在报刊上看到的报道，或是你看过的电影、电视节目等。

这种方法有两方面的作用：

- 复习你所学过的词汇；
- 使词汇对你个人而言更有意义，因此更便于记忆。

将词汇分组

研究表明，将要学的一系列词汇分组学习是很有帮助的。你怎样将这些词汇分组，或者你的分组对于其他人是否有意义都无关紧要。在分组的时候是对词汇进行充分考虑的过程，这会提高我们对词汇的掌握。

- 尝试任何你认为适当的方式，将单元中所学的单词分成三或四组（或者更多），并把这种方法作为另外一种复习技巧。

本书之外

尽管本书涉及了面向高级学习者的诸多有用的词汇和表达方式，但显然不可能涵盖所有你在英语中遇到的词汇。进一步增加词汇量的最好方法就是尽可能地多读和多听英语，本书中有很多词汇学习小提示，你可以尝试一下。

记住你也可以通过以下方法有效增加词汇量：

- 阅读——小说、报纸及杂志；
- 浏览网站；
- 阅读有关你的工作或者学术兴趣方面的英语资料；
- 看电影或录像；
- 收看有线电视；
- 收听广播；
- 听歌曲；
- 听有声书。

祝你的高级英语词汇学习之旅一路好运。希望你能够在本书的学习中获益良多，并且乐在其中。

ii 释义类型

A 基本含义

在查单词时，你想知道的主要意思就是基本含义。例如：
She has fair hair, 其中 *fair = light, opposite of dark*。
It's time to wind up the discussion now, 其中 *wind up = end*。

但是还有很多其他方面的含义也很重要，需要了解，尤其是在英语学习的较高级阶段。

B 一词多义（见 Unit v）

英语中有大量的单词不止一个含义。试看 *fair* 和 *wind up* /waɪnd ʌp/ 在下列例句中的不同含义：
That wasn't a very **fair** thing to say! [adjective: just]
The handsome knight fell in love with a **fair** maiden. [adjective: beautiful]
His knowledge of French is **fair**. [adjective: neither very bad nor very good]
She has a **fair** chance of winning the prize. [adjective: reasonable]
Fair weather is forecast for tomorrow. [adjective: dry and pleasant]
There's a **fair** on at the park this week. [noun: public event with games and rides]

Don't forget to **wind up** your watch. [turn a knob on a clockwork watch so it keeps going]
She seems to enjoy **winding** him **up**. [tell someone something in order deliberately to annoy]
If he carries on like this, he's going to **wind up** in prison. [end up in an unpleasant situation]

C 多词同义

英语中有很多不同的单词含义相似，仅有细微差别。试看下列与 *fair* 和 *wind up* 同义的单词（同上面 A 中的基本含义）。
fair – light, blonde, pale, colourless, bleached
wind up – end, finish, complete, close, stop, conclude, terminate, discontinue, abort

D 惯用搭配（见 Unit iv）

英语中的单词相互以较固定的方式结合使用（搭配）。比如说，C 中的同义词并非每一个都能替换 A 例句中的词。

形容 *hair* 可以用 *fair*, *light*, *blonde*, *bleached*（尽管这些单词都有略微不同的含义），但通常都不会用 pale 或者 colourless。

形容 *skin* 可以用 *fair*, *light*, *pale*, 但通常不会用 *blonde*, *colourless*, *bleached*。*colourless* 通常会与 *gas* 或者 *liquid* 搭配。

E 隐含意义（见 Unit viii）

词汇不止有表面意思，还有一些联想的含义。在高级英语学习阶段，培养语感识别词汇所含的内在意义是很重要的。例如，*Who is the fairest of them all* 这句话立刻会让英语母语人士联想到童话《白雪公主》中邪恶的皇后，联想到 *the fairer sex* 指女性。*fair* 表示“美丽，吸引人”的意思是一种老式的说法，通常用于讲述过去的童话和传说中。

F 语域（见 Unit vii）

注意所学词汇是否具有特定的使用语域同样是很重要的。例如 *apparel* 是“给……穿衣”的正式书面用语，而同义的 *wind someone up* 则是英式英语，是非正式的。

练习

ii.1 句中带下划线的词汇有多个含义，在该句中它的含义是什么？

1 What does polysemy mean?
2 Make a note of any special register characteristics that a word has.
3 The judge increased the sentence to life imprisonment.
4 We had a light lunch.
5 Carl is very good at putting on different accents.
6 Does Spanish writing use any different accents?
7 Where does the stress go on the noun 'photographer'?
8 There are a lot of points to think about when considering the meaning of words.

ii.2 从框中选出适当的同义词完成回答。

worn out	famished	annoying	excruciating
appropriate	brilliant	gorgeous	pouring

1 Are you hungry? Yes, I'm _____.
2 Is she an intelligent girl? Yes, she's absolutely _____.
3 Your little boy looks tired. Yes, he's _____.
4 I like her dress. Yes, isn't it _____ ?
5 Is it raining? Yes, it's _____.
6 The film was pretty bad, wasn't it? Yes, I thought it was _____.
7 Did you think the sentence was fair? Yes, I thought it was _____.
8 Does she deliberately wind him up? Yes, she loves _____ him.

ii.3 将左侧的词与右侧相应的搭配连线。

1 to contemplate	a worker
2 to dismiss	a mistake
3 to do	a good time
4 to dribble	your future
5 to have	a rope
6 to make	a compliment
7 to pay	innocence
8 to plead	cards
9 to set	some gardening
10 to shuffle	an opportunity
11 to waste	a ball
12 to wind	an example

ii.4 回答关于隐含意义和语域的问题。

1 Which of these things have lucky connotations in British English – horseshoe, mascot, black cat, the number 13?
2 Mistletoe is a kind of parasitic plant, but what are its special connotations?
3 Give the standard meaning and the informal meaning of the following words – loaf, bread, nick, kid, wicked.
4 What does the word *register* mean for a) a linguist, b) a school teacher, c) a musician?

TIP 当你在查新词的时候，也要查这个词可能有的其他含义和形式，同时要将所有涉及搭配、隐含意义及语域的知识点记录下来。

iii 善用词典

A 词典类型

类型	说明
alphabetical 按字母排序词典	最常见的类型，单词以字母顺序排列
thesaurus /θɪˈsɔːrəs/ 分类词典	单词根据意思排列，通常列在一个意思宽泛的词条下，例如在 *walk* 词条下有 ***stroll, plod, stride*** 等同义单词，并带有释义
monolingual 单语词典	只有一种语言，受欢迎的英语学习词典通常都是单语的，并且有详细的英语解释和示例
bilingual 双语词典	使用两种语言，即你的母语和你所学习的语言，因为给出了译文，所以较实用，但在区分含义的细微差别方面不够
dictionaries of synonyms /ˈsɪnənɪmz/ 同义词词典	单词以相近的意思分组，例如 *start* 与 *begin*，有时也会列出其反义词并解释意思的区别
dictionaries of false friends (or ***cognate words***) 易混淆词词典（或同源词词典）	对看起来很像的、容易混淆的单词进行讲解分析，参见 Unit 6
CD-ROM and ***online*** 光盘词典及在线词典	一些出版社为其学习词典提供了 CD-ROM 光盘，或者将词典发布在网上，使查找变得迅速简便，你可以查找单词、释义、例句和没有记全的单词，比使用纸质词典迅速很多

本书的出版社，剑桥大学出版社，为《剑桥高阶学习词典》、《剑桥美语词典》（*Cambridge Dictionary of American English*）和《剑桥学习词典》（*Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*）均提供了光盘。你也可以在线使用这些词典。除此以外，还可以在线使用《剑桥国际短语动词词典》（*Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs*）和《剑桥国际习语词典》（*Cambridge International Dictionary of Idioms*）查找单词。网址为：**dictionary.cambridge.org**。

B 词典内容

好的词典中会包含以下部分或者全部内容：

内容	说明
word 词汇	会标出词汇的地域性，例如 *nappy*（UK）与 *diaper*（US）
spelling 拼写	一个单词可能有不止一种的正确拼写方式，例如 *encyclopedia* 与 *encyclopaedia*；或区域性的拼写差异，例如 *centre*（UK）与 *center*（US）
pronunciation 发音	通常用音标标出；词典通常会列出所使用的音标符号表；标出不同的发音以及地域性区别，例如 /təˈmɑːtəʊ/（UK）与 /təˈmeɪtəʊ/（US）
meaning 释义	即一个定义，或者图解，或是图表；可能会给出不同地区的不同释义，例如 *slim* 在东非英语中表示 AIDS
senses 义项	单词通常会有多个义项，如 *face* 的义项包括（1）眼睛，鼻子，嘴等；（2）表情（*a sad face*）；（3）物体正面垂直的部分，例如 *a cliff face*（见 Unit v）

内容	说明
grammar and word class 语法与词性	这个单词是名词吗？也能用做动词吗？可以与什么介词连用？（例如 *compared with* 与 *compared to* 相同吗？）
collocations 搭配	这个单词通常与哪些单词搭配使用？例如 *alibi* 和 *cast-iron*，见 Unit 77。（同见 Unit iv）
register 语域	这个单词是正式的还是非正式的？是旧式的，诗意的，还是学术性的？（见 Unit vii）
connotations and cultural information 隐含意义和文化信息	这个单词是否有正面或负面的隐含意义？例如 Unit 70 中的动词 *cause*。是否经常用于讽刺？这个单词是否有段有趣的历史？是否来自其他语言？（见 Unit viii）
related words 相关词汇	这个单词是否是其他单词的同义词或反义词？（见 Unit ii）
examples 示例	好的学习词典会提供示范例句或短语。例句通常都来源于真实语料的电脑数据库，或是为说明该词的意义与用法的特性而专门撰写的。

TIP 买词典的时候，根据以上 B 部分的内容列出清单，看看每部词典能符合多少项，从而选择最适合你个人需要的那一本。

练习

iii.1 使用一本好词典（例如《剑桥高阶学习词典》）查询单词 *dissimilar*，看是否有关于用法的特殊方面需要注意？

（如果你的词典不能提供关于该词用法的特色说明，请参见 Unit 71 中关于该词用法的解释。）

iii.2 查词典找出两个经常跟在形容词 *liable* 后面搭配使用的介词。

iii.3 找一本收录了单词 *aught* 的词典，词典中是否有该词用法的内容？

iii.4 如果你可以上网，登录剑桥大学出版社在线词典的网址 dictionary.cambridge.org，并找出短语动词 *catch up with* 和 *catch up on* 在含义上是否有不同之处。

iv 搭配

（词语的）搭配 (collocation) 指单词的组合，各种搭配的方式通常是不固定的。在学习新单词时，同时学习与其一起使用的典型搭配是非常好的方法。

A “形容词 + 名词”的搭配

名词通常会有一些与之搭配的典型形容词。

对比 **article** 与 **thing**：

通常说	而不说
the **real thing**	the genuine thing
the **genuine article**	the real article

例句：

I don't like recorded music, I prefer the **real thing.** [i.e. real, live music]

These trainers are the **genuine article.** Those others are just cheap imported copies.

其他例句：

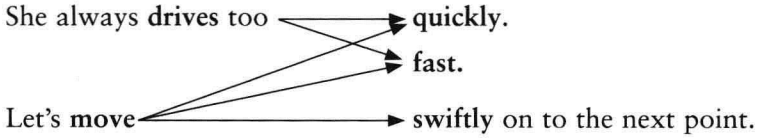
You can give a **broad summary** of something. (*Not:* ~~a wide summary~~)
You can describe something in **great detail.** (*Not:* ~~in big detail~~)

某些形容词只能跟特定的名词连用。例如：

a formidable task/opponent/amount/person

B “动词 + 副词”的搭配

通常，动词会有一些典型的副词与之搭配。图表中的箭头指示了该动词的常用搭配：



其他例句：

It's something **I feel strongly** about. (*Not:* ~~I feel powerfully about~~)
If **I remember rightly,** it happened at about six-thirty. (*Not:* ~~If I remember perfectly~~)

C “副词 + 形容词”的搭配

学习哪些副词是修饰某类形容词的典型搭配十分有用。例如，副词 **utterly**，意为“完全地，彻底地”，通常用在形容词之前，这些形容词多数是贬义的，典型例子有：**alien, appalling, blank, dismal, depressed, disgusting, distasteful, false, fatuous, impossible, lost, ludicrous, naïve, ridiculous** 等。在学习单词时要注意这些规律。

D “动词 + 宾语”的搭配

动词与其宾语经常构成搭配。

You **raise your hand** to ask a question. (*Not:* ~~lift your hand~~)
You can **raise a family.** (i.e. bring up children; *not:* ~~lift a family~~)
You can **visit / go to / check out a website** on the Internet.

练习

iv.1 在以下句子中选择 *real* 或 *genuine*，圈出其常用的搭配，如果两者都可以使用，就都圈出来。

1 The Egyptian Pyramid hotel in Las Vegas is great, but I'd prefer to see the real/genuine thing.
2 He just doesn't live in the real/genuine world. He lives in a fantasy world all the time.
3 This briefcase is made of real/genuine leather.
4 She is a very real/genuine person. If she promises something, she'll do it.
5 This home-made champagne is nice, but it's not as good as the real/genuine article.

iv.2 从选项中选择一个单词填空。每个下划线标出的单词只有一个常用搭配。

1 After his death, she went to the hospital to collect his personal .....
a) affairs b) objects c) effects d) extras
2 He made a rather ..... attempt at an apology, but it didn't convince anyone.
a) faint b) frail c) fragile d) feeble
3 George was a ..... opponent, and I respected him for that.
a) formidable b) dreadful c) forbidding d) threatening
4 I was feeling ..... anxious when she didn't arrive.
a) totally b) pretty c) utterly d) blatantly
5 She seemed to be ..... bewildered by the answer they gave her.
a) vividly b) strongly c) utterly d) heavily

iv.3 选出句中最适合的搭配，所选单词需要与括号中提供的意思相近。

1 A brisk/brusque/brash (quick and energetic) walk before breakfast helps to enforce/sharpen/grow (increase, make stronger) the appetite.
2 The death tally/tale/toll in the earthquake has now risen to 20,000. (number or total)
3 Let's take a sluggish/plodding/leisurely stroll along the beach, shall we? (slow and not energetic)
4 If you want to stay at home tonight, that's utterly/perfectly/blatantly OK with me. (completely, 100%)
5 My aunt bequeathed/bequested/bereaved £20,000 in her will to cancer research. (gave after her death)
6 If I remember rightly/keenly/fairly she had two brothers, both older than her. (correctly)
7 If you want information about the publisher of this book, you can accede/call/visit their website at www.cambridge.org (consult, look at).
8 Eating all those peanuts has spoilt/attacked/lowered my appetite. I don't feel like dinner now. (destroyed, decreased)

iv.4 以下哪种搭配更有可能？选出正确答案。

1 a strong car / a powerful car
2 strong tea / powerful tea
3 auburn hair / auburn carpet
4 a doleful party / a doleful expression
5 a lengthy car / a lengthy meeting

FOLLOW UP 在接下来的七天中，尝试找出属于下列类别的你以往没有意识到的新搭配（每类至少一个）：
形容词 + 名词　动词 + 宾语　动词 + 副词

V 多义

多义（polysemy）指一个单词经常有很多不同的释义。

A 读下列句子，考虑怎样以自己的母语翻译其中的斜体词。

It's only *fair* that we should share the housework.
The Frankfurt Book *Fair* is a very important event for most publishers.
Our caravan gives us shelter through *fair* weather or foul.
I've got *fair* eyelashes and my eyes look awful without mascara.
His marks in his final exams were *fair* to disappointing.

The firefighters managed to save the children from the burning third-floor *flat*.
The countryside round here is terribly *flat* and boring.
To join the Fitness Club you pay a *flat* fee of £500.
The tune is in B *flat* minor.
He erected the shed in five minutes *flat*.

你可能在翻译每句中的 *fair* 和 *flat* 时都要用到不同的词。

这些句子所阐明的就是语言学中的（一词）多义的现象。实际上英语中很多词都有不止一个释义。有时这些意义是有很明显的关联的，例如在 *countryside* 中的 *flat* 和在 *apartment* 中的 *flat* 都有位于某一水平高度上的意思。但有时词汇的不同释义是毫无关联的。

例如，*book fair* 中的 *fair* 的意思明显与 *fair* 的其他任何意思都没有关系，这样的词汇也被称作同形异义词（homographs），拼写相同但意义不同。

下面是另一个例子。哪一个多义词适用于以下所有句子？
He struck a _____ and we slowly began to look around the dark cave.
The teenage cooks in the competition were a _____ for any of the adults.
Their marriage has been called a _____ made in heaven.

B 英语中多义现象的一个原因是语言非常灵活，词汇有时可以用作语句的不同成分。例如，*flat* 在表示 *apartment* 的意思时，可以用作形容词，例如 a set of *flat keys*.

C 了解英语的多义现象是很有用的，这有两个重要原因：

- 你要意识到你第一次所学的词汇的意义不一定与它在新的语境中出现时相同；
- 了解了一个单词的释义范围可以帮助你举一反三，掌握它的多项意义。

D 通常，上下文语境能将一个有多项释义的单词所表达的意义体现得非常清晰。例如，名词 *drill* 在与 (a) 牙齿（dental），(b) 军队（army），(c) 筑路（road-building）有关的语境中分别是什么意思呢？

我们会在本书的不同部分涉及多义词的一些例子。但你也要在查词典时注意这种现象，并记下你所查词汇的任何有用的其他义项。

vi 比喻

比喻（metaphor）即使用单词的抽象意义而非字面原义。

A

比喻是将某物比作与其有相似特征的另外某物的一种表达方式。

例如我们将 city 称作 jungle 就是在使用比喻，暗示城市像丛林一般狂野且处处充满危险。

我们说 someone lights up one's life，也是在使用比喻，暗示此人给我们带来极大的欢乐，就像生命中的灯火一样。

B

许多众所周知的习语都使用比喻的表达方式。例如：*to be on the ball* [to be very aware of things and ready to act – like a good footballer], *to keep someone or something on a tight rein* [to have a lot of control over someone or something – like a rider having control over a horse] 等。

vi.1 以下还有一些使用比喻的习语，句中的习语是什么？都是什么意思？它们来源于生活中的哪些形象？

a) Jane's going to be in the saddle while the boss is on holiday.
b) It's hard to know what to do when management keeps moving the goalposts.
c) Starting his own decorating business was just another of his half-baked ideas.
d) We've had to tighten our belts since Sam lost his job.

vi.2 更多不常见的和原创性的比喻大量运用于文学作品中。以下是几个出自莎士比亚笔下的著名比喻，给每句中所使用的比喻划线，并解释它们指的是什么。

a) All the world's a stage and all the men and women merely players.
b) Night's candles are burnt out; and jocund day stands tiptoe on the misty mountain tops.
c) There is a tide in the affairs of men, which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.

C

英语中许多词汇被频繁地运用于比喻，以至于英语人士可能都不会再注意到它是比喻。以下是一些例子：

- 把智慧比作光，例如聪明人被形容为 *bright*，不太聪慧的人则是 *dim*；
- 把感觉或激情的强烈程度比作温度，某人一时热衷于某事一时又毫不理会可以说成 *blow hot and cold*；
- 把人的移动比作水的运动，例如我们可以说人们 *flooding* 或 *trickling* out of a hall；
- 时间相当于金钱，两者都可以 *spent* 或 *wasted*，或者 *used profitably*；
- 商业活动好似军事行动，*strategies*，*tactics* 和 *campaigns* 等词均可以用于这两种语境。

vi.3 下面是另一些运用以上五种比喻的例子，给句中的比喻划线，并说出它是上面的哪种比喻，指的是什么。

a) This book throws a great deal of fresh light on the history of the period.
b) We could save half an hour at least if we went through the wood.
c) Try to keep cool even if he argues with you.
d) She spent all her life fighting to get her company recognised.
e) Police tried to control the flow of the fans as they left the concert.

vii 语域

语域 (register) 涉及的是文本或对话的整体论调，以及说者与听者或作者与读者之间所建立的关系。根据情境在适当的语域内遣词造句是很重要的。

A 正式词汇和非正式词汇

有些词汇可能更加正式 (formal) 或更加非正式 (informal)，而其他词汇可能比较中性 (neutral)。如果词汇有此类的特性，将其标示出来不失为一种很好的办法。

Is your **other half** not with you today? [informal: husband/wife]
She brought her new **bloke** to the party. [informal: boyfriend]
I saw him **conversing** with a woman in a red car. [formal: having a conversation]

有时可以根据词汇是中性、正式还是非正式将其分类。

neutral 中性	*formal* 正式	*informal* 非正式
TV/television		the box/telly
glasses	spectacles	specs
clothes	clothing/garments	clobber/kit

B 口语和书面语

某些词汇更适用于口语或者更适用于书面语。在这种情况下，需要注意该词与书面语联系更紧密，还是与口语联系更紧密。

词汇/短语	口语(S)/书面语(W)	释义/例句
subsequently	W	conjunction: in speech more likely to be 'later' or 'afterwards', e.g. The police found some important clues. **Subsequently**, three people were arrested.
in sum	W	conjunction: means 'to sum up', e.g. **In sum**, we may say that most, but not all, English adverbs end in -ly.
whatsisname/ whatsername	S	vague word: used when we cannot remember the name of a person, e.g. I met **whatsisname** at the party, you know, the guy who works at the university.
thingy	S	vague word: used as a noun, of people and things whose name one cannot remember, e.g. Give me that **thingy** there, yes, that bottle opener.
mind you	S	discourse marker: used to bring attention to an important point, e.g. He's a good actor. **Mind you**, he should be; he went to the best drama college.
now then!	S	discourse marker: used to get people's attention when something is about to happen, e.g. **Now then!** I want everyone to put their luggage together in one pile.

C 过时词汇

有些词汇和短语是正确的，但听起来可能已过时或很老气，例如：**asylum** [hospital for the mentally ill], **frock** [dress], **wireless** [radio], **consumption** [tuberculosis/TB], **eyeglasses** [glasses] 等。

练习

vii.1 根据要求将下划线标出的词汇转换为正式的或非正式的。

1 She works in a shop that sells <u>women's clothes</u>. (formal)
2 I've got some new <u>spectacles</u>. Do you like them? (informal)
3 Did you see that documentary about Wales on <u>TV</u> last night? (informal)
4 Have you met Lily's new <u>boyfriend</u>? (informal)
5 I spent the morning <u>talking</u> with the Director. (formal)
6 Molly was there with her <u>other half</u>. He's a nice <u>chap</u>. (formal)

vii.2 用给出的单词完成表格，阴影部分不填。

shades　meal　kids　cop　ensure　umbrella　children

neutral	*formal*	*informal*
	offspring	
sunglasses		
policeman/woman	police officer	
		brolly
	repast	
make sure		

vii.3 判断下列单词更倾向于口语（spoken English）还是书面语（written English），在单词后面标 S 或 W。

1 frequently　2 start　3 begin　4 maybe　5 moreover

vii.4 你认为下列过时单词现在的同义词是什么？如需要可查词典。

1 apothecary　2 damsel　3 poesy　4 whither

vii.5 读下列节选文字，判断应将它们归入哪一类语域风格。在可以帮助你判断语域类别的关键词下划线，例如，如果你认为某段节选文字是“正式的，诗体的，过时的，或书面体的”，是哪些词汇让你这样认为的？

Some register types:

literary/poetic/non-literary　academic/non-academic
archaic/modern　technical/non-technical
spoken/written　formal/informal

1 When using a .pst file that is stored in a shared directory, or else one that is located on a file server, use the Macron file system to restrict access to the .pst file.

2 Views are certainly divided on the answers to the questions listed above; even whether it matters that pluralism and different paradigms reign in SLA is a matter of ornery and splenetic debate. (Block 1996; Gregg et al 1997)

3 Sweetest love, I do not go,
For weariness of thee,
Nor in hope the world can show
A fitter love for me;
But since that I
Must die at last, 'tis best,
To use my self in jest
Thus by feigned deaths to die.

4 And so, my fellow Americans: ask not what your country can do for you – ask what you can do for your country. My fellow citizens of the world: ask not what America will do for you, but what together we can do for the freedom of man.

5 Mind you there was a lot of rain in Germany over Christmas wasn't there, cos I saw the river in Bonn on the news on telly. The Rhine. Yeah. The river in Bonn.

viii 隐含意义与文化联想

隐含意义（connotation）指单词或短语的联想意义、引申意义。

A

你现在处在高级英语学习阶段，不仅仅要了解单词的意思，也要知道其隐含意义。隐含意义是语言学中的术语，指一种语言中说话者使用的词汇所引发的联想。

例如，cowboy 在 **cowboy builder** 或 **cowboy plumbers** 的用法中，有“不诚实”或“不可靠”的联想含义。

词汇的隐含意义常在广告中使用。例如，一家小型印第安建筑公司的广告打出了口号：

You've tried the cowboys. Now try the Indians.

这个口号包括两个隐含意义——*cowboy* 的联想含义上面已经提到，*cowboy* 和 *Indians* 又让人联想到美国西部电影。它直截了当地表明，作为牛仔老对头的印第安人，他们是诚实可靠的建筑工。

B

词汇的隐含意义往往十分个人化。童年时与狗有不愉快经历的人可能认为狗凶恶可怕，而对于另外的人来说狗可能代表了忠诚和友善。在你记忆单词的时候掺入个人的联想色彩有助于更好地学习词汇。

例如，假设你要学习以下三个单词，对你个人而言它们会带给你什么联想呢？请在学习词汇的时候，闭上眼睛将这些事物融入你自己的想象。

a shark **a scar** **a diamond**

但有些隐含意义在同一种语言中是被所有或绝大部分使用者共同接受的，你需要了解这些隐含意义，以充分理解当代的文体，特别是新闻语体。那么概括来说，*shark*，*scar* 和 *diamond* 对英语人士的隐含意义是什么呢？

C

新闻语体中使用的隐含意义可能寿命十分短暂。例如，**The Iron Lady** 指 20 世纪 80 年代英国的首相 Mrs Thatcher，表达了一个强悍、不妥协的女性形象。但在她去职之后，很快对大多数人来说这一说法就失去了这个联想意义。有的词汇的隐含意义对同以一种语言为母语的人来说并不相同，而是因地域而异。比如 **black cats** 在英国意味着“好运”，而在美国却意味着“厄运”。高品质的当代词典会给出此类相关信息，说明词汇的隐含意义是哪些人共有的。

D 一些英语词汇的隐含意义可能与你的母语一致。你能将英语中表示颜色的词汇与其隐含意义联系起来吗？这些隐含意义是否与你的母语相同？

1 blue	purity
2 green	evil
3 yellow	miserable
4 red	inexperienced
5 white	danger
6 black	a coward

本书中所有涉及隐含意义的地方我们都会说明。你自己在听、读英文时也要注意。给你遇到的所有有趣的例子做笔记。

1 缩写与首字母缩略词

A

缩写就是单词和短语的简单缩略。

有些常见的缩写来自拉丁语：

e.g. for example, from *exempli gratia*
i.e. that is, from *id est*
NB note well, from *nota bene*
AD the year of Our Lord, used to count years since the birth of Christ, from *Anno Domini*

有的来自词汇的缩简：

bedsit: one room which is a **bed**room and a **sit**ting room
sitcom: short for **si**tuational **com**edy (a kind of TV programe)
sci-fi: **sci**ence **fi**ction

有的以单独字母发音：

EU European Union
BC Before Christ, used to count years before the birth of Christ
ID identity document
asap as soon as possible

有的缩写即首字母缩略词，即由一个或一组单词的第一个字母(少数情况下是第一个音节)组成并作为一个词来发音：

AIDS /eɪdz/ acquired immune deficiency syndrome
NATO /'neɪtəʊ/ North Atlantic Treaty Organisation

有的既可以作为首字母缩略词发音，也可以作为单独的字母发音：

VAT value-added tax, pronounced /væt/ or /viː eɪ tiː/
UFO unidentified flying object, pronounced /'juːfəʊ/ or /juː ef 'əʊ/

B

有时缩写不止有一个意思。

AA Alcoholics Anonymous [an organisation helping people with alcohol-related problems] *and* **the AA** the Automobile Association [a UK motorists' club]
PC personal computer *or* Police Constable [the lowest rank of police officer in the UK] *or* politically correct [avoiding expressions which may suggest prejudice and cause offence]
m metre, mile, million, male, married **p** per, pence, page

C

某些缩写在书写中尤其常用。

RSVP reply please [used on invitations, from French, *répondez s'il vous plaît*]
PTO please turn over
FAQ frequently asked question [found mainly on websites]

下列缩写在手机短信中越来越常见：

FYI for your information **AFK** away from keyboard **LOL** laughing out loud
BTW by the way **R** are **C** see **U** you **EZ** easy **4** for **2** to, too, two

D

缩写常用在报纸上提供住宿的小广告中。

£300 **pcm excl:** rent is £300 per calendar month excluding payment for gas, electricity, etc.
£60 **pw inc:** rent is £60 per week including gas, electricity, etc.
f/f: fully furnished **s/c:** self-contained [has all it needs within itself]
suit n/s prof female: would suit a non-smoking woman in a professional job
all mod cons: all modern conveniences, e.g. washing machine
ch: central heating **d/g:** double garage **o.n.o.:** or nearest offer

注意在下列缩写中标点符号的区别：**– c/h, c.h., ch**。

练习

1.1 在空白处正确填入左页 A 中源自拉丁语的缩写。

1 This antique vase dates from 1500 _____ .
2 Fruit, _____ the usually sweet part of a tree or bush which contains seeds, is normally delicious to eat.
3 _____ fruit cannot be taken across the border into the USA.
4 Fruits, _____ lemons, pears and grapes, are sometimes added when cooking poultry.

1.2 下列句中的缩写怎样发音？它们是哪些词的缩写？

1 If he can't kick the habit on his own, he should try joining AA.
2 Read pp.10–22 for homework.
3 Cars must not exceed 30 mph in a built-up area.
4 The film gives a convincing depiction of life BC despite some curious anachronisms.
5 Do you believe in UFOs?
6 Write back asap.

1.3 以下缩写指代何意？选择框中的单词组成全称。每个词只能使用一次。

1 WHO 2 UNESCO 3 IMF 4 OBE 5 GMT 6 IOC 7 RSPCA 8 EST

Animals	Educational	International	Organisation	Standard
British	Empire	Mean	Organisation	Time
Committee	Fund	Monetary	Prevention	Time
Cruelty	Greenwich	Nations	Royal	United
Cultural	Health	Olympic	Scientific	World
Eastern	International	Order	Society	

1.4 用标准英语解释这条手机短信。

c u 4 t at 3, OK? BTW K's going 2 b here 2.

1.5 根据以下要求，为当地报纸写一则小广告，使用左页 D 中的缩写，使广告尽可能简洁。

Could you prepare an advert for a girl to rent the third bedroom in our flat? We want someone who doesn't smoke and it would be nice to have a teacher or a nurse or someone in a reasonably reliable job. The advert had better mention that the flat is fully furnished and centrally heated and has all the kitchen appliances she might need. Don't, of course, forget to say that she would have to pay £220 a month, not including bills.

1.6 写一则出租你自己的住宅或公寓的广告。

1.7 有时一些组织选择名称时会使它的首字母缩略形式看起来既幽默又便于记忆，例如 ASH 为 Action on Smoking and Health 的缩写。下面还有一些例子，你认为其中未说明的字母代表什么？

1 DUMP Disposal of _____ Medicines and _____
2 NOW National _____ of Women
3 UNITE _____ of National Income Tax Employees
4 CALL Computer Assisted _____ Learning
5 AAAAA American _____ for the _____ of Abbreviations and Acronyms

2 前缀：创造新含义

A 介词前缀：不同的意义

over- 可以指（a）超出，（b）覆盖或主宰，（c）越过某种障碍。

(a) EXCESS
That film was **overrated** in my view. [people said it was better than it really was]
It was a bad restaurant, with an **overpriced** menu. [too high prices]

(b) COVER
In this program, you can choose to **overwrite** the existing file or to save it as a new file. [cover/replace the old text with the new text]
Our garden is **overshadowed by** the block of flats next door. [the flats cast a shadow over our garden]
She always felt **overshadowed by** her older, more successful, sister. [metaphorical use, felt less important than]

(c) CROSS
He **overstepped** the mark when he said that. [crossed a barrier into offensive/unacceptable behaviour]
Will you be staying **overnight**? [from one day to the next]

under- 可以指（a）少于要求的量，（b）在另一物体下，（c）某种负面的行为。

(a) LESS
Don't **underestimate** the time it will take. [think it will be less than it really is]
The company is seriously **understaffed.** [lacking staff]

(b) BELOW
It's quite wet **underfoot.** Did it rain last night? [on the ground, beneath your feet]
The **underlying** question is a very difficult one. [the deeper question]

(c) NEGATIVE
I wish you would not **undermine** everything I do. [attack, weaken]
He did it in a very **underhand** way. [secretly and possibly dishonestly]

up- 可表示某种转变，通常为积极的。

The airline **upgraded** me to business class. [changed my ticket to a better class]
There has been an **upturn** in the economy. [sudden change for the better]

cross-（源于 *across*）通常指两个独立事物之间的连接。

Cross-border cooperation has led to a number of arrests of drug smugglers. [across the frontiers of two or more countries]
Cross-cultural misunderstandings often happen. [between people of different cultures]

B 较少使用的前缀

con/com- 表示将事物混合在一起，通常在含有交流意义的动词中出现。

converse commiserate condolences congeal contaminate

e- 表示某物来自于另一事物。

They were **ejected** from the restaurant for bad behaviour. [formal: thrown out]
The machine **emitted** a loud noise and then stopped working. [formal: gave out]

a(d)- 通常有将某物加与某物或将事物联结起来的含义，有时会将后面的辅音字母双写，替换掉 d。

The building **is adjacent to / adjoins** the hotel. [formal: is next to]
She gave me an **annotated** edition of Shakespeare's works. [with notes added]

pro- 通常表示促进某事物或某物的增加。

promote proliferate procrastinate procreate

练习

2.1 参照左页 A 中的条目 (a)，(b)，(c)，选出下列句中黑体词中 *over-*，*under-* 最明显的意思，圈出正确的字母，如需要可使用词典。

1 I really think she **overstated** her case, and lost a lot of sympathy. a b c
2 The plane's **undercarriage** failed to open and it crashed. a b c
3 A detailed list of awards is given **overleaf.** a b c
4 He has a very **overbearing** personality. a b c
5 The project was **underfunded** from the outset. a b c
6 During the cruise, a child fell **overboard** and drowned. a b c

2.2 用左页中的词汇改写句子。

EXAMPLE Cooperation across the frontier has been very good.

Cross-border cooperation has been very good.

1 The hotel gave me a luxury room instead of the ordinary one I'd booked.
2 Would you like to spend the night there or come back the same day?
3 The problem that lies under the surface is a very serious one.
4 Misunderstandings between cultures are, sadly, very frequent.
5 I think this hotel charges too much.
6 It's slippery walking just here. Be careful.
7 The company experienced a rise in popularity since it changed its name.
8 I felt that what she said was critical of my position and weakened it somewhat.
9 It would be a mistake to think Frances was less intelligent than she really is.

2.3 根据左页中 B 的解释，以下哪些单词可以有前缀 a(d)-？圈出 YES 或 NO，加了前缀的单词如何拼写？如需要可使用词典。

EXAMPLE fix (YES) NO affix.....

1 locate YES NO .....
2 verse YES NO .....
3 state YES NO .....
4 mission YES NO .....
5 pertain YES NO .....
6 minister YES NO .....
7 drain YES NO .....

2.4 用以下词汇造句，并要体现出它们的含义。如需要可使用词典。

1 promote 2 proliferate 3 procrastinate 4 procreation

2.5 以下单词的前缀意思是什么？如需要可使用词典。

1 **ab**dicate **ab**scond **ab**duct
2 **ab**laze **a**float **a**drift
3 **extra**terrestrial **extra**neous **extra**curricular
4 **inter**related **inter**departmental **Inter**net
5 **intra**venous **intra**departmental **intra**net

3 后缀：有构词能力的后缀及其词性

A 有构词能力的后缀

某些后缀是有构词能力的（可以用于构成新的单词）。因此如果阅读当代英语，就需要了解这些后缀的含义。你甚至可以大胆地尝试创造一些单词——**coining** [creating] some words。根据词根和后缀的含义判断，以下示例单词的意思都很明确。（说明：在 **washable** 一词中，**wash** 是词根，**able** 是后缀。）

-able 具备构词能力（但 *-ible* 不具备），它与动词结合构成形容词。**-able** 意为“可能的，可以的”：a **washable** jacket, **disposable** nappies, **predictable** results, **avoidable** problems, a **manageable** situation。

-conscious 与名词结合构成形容词，用来描述那些认为生活中某一方面尤为重要的人（们）：**health-conscious** person, **class-conscious** society, **safety-conscious** company, **time-conscious** workforce。

-esque 与名人的名字结合构成形容词，表示某物或某人在风格上与其相似：**Picassoesque** paintings。

-free 与表示不受欢迎的事物的名词结合，构成形容词，表示其后所修饰的名词不具备这个不受欢迎的特性：**stress-free** life, **tax-free** shop, **additive-free** food。

-rich 与名词（经常为化学或有机的物质）结合，构成形容词，表示所修饰的名词具有很多同样的物质：**fibre-rich** diet, **calcium-rich** foods。

-led 与名词或表示民族的形容词结合，构成形容词，表示受该名词或民族控制或影响的事物：**community-led** initiative, **student-led** protest, **worker-led** uprising。

-minded 与形容词或名词结合构成新的形容词，描述人物具有特殊的个性、观点和态度：**like-minded** friends [with similar interests], **career-minded** young women, **money-minded** managers。

-proof 与名词结合构成形容词，描述事物可以抵御由该名词造成的破坏或困难：**ovenproof** dish, **waterproof** jacket, **soundproof** room, **idiot-proof** instructions。

-related 与名词结合构成形容词，表示一件事物与另一件事物有联系：**stress-related** absence from work, **age-related** earnings, **tobacco-related** illness。

-ridden 与名词结合构成形容词，描述人或事物具备许多该名词的特性：**guilt-ridden** person, **crime-ridden** city。注意如果形容一个人 **bedridden**，是指他因病需要卧床休息。

-worthy 与名词结合构成形容词，描述人或事物具备该名词所表示的优点：**newsworthy** incident [worth reporting in the news], **praiseworthy** action/pupil [deserving praise]。

B 后缀的不同词性

-ly 不仅是副词结尾，也可以构成一些形容词：**lively** children [full of energy], **costly** holiday [expensive], **leisurely** walk [relaxed], **miserly** man [mean with money]。

-ant 多用于形容词结尾，如：**relevant** information, **distant** bills, 不过它也可以与动词结合构成名词来指代人：an **applicant** for a job, an insurance **claimant**, a police **informant**, a quiz **contestant**, an **occupant** of a house。

-en 与名词结合构成形容词，如：**wollen** jumper, **golden** hair, 也可以与形容词结合构成动词：**to moisten** your lips, **to sweeten** tea, a situation **worsens**, a face **reddens**。

练习

3.1 用自己的例子完成表格。

suffix	*new example in phrase*
-able	*a debatable issue*
-conscious	
-free	
-rich	
-led	

suffix	*new example in phrase*
-minded	
-proof	
-related	
-ridden	
-worthy	

3.2 用左侧形容词与框中的两个名词构成最佳的搭配。

EXAMPLE student-led *rebellion, demonstration*

1 additive-free
2 avoidable
3 disposable
4 guilt-ridden
5 high-minded
6 newsworthy
7 oil-rich
8 ovenproof
9 soundproof
10 stress-related

knives and forks　income　drinks　mistake　room　~~rebellion~~　delay　foods　criminal　story　illness　expression　glove　booth　speech　dish　country　~~demonstration~~　personality　problems　principles　economy

3.3 左页 A 中哪个后缀可以与下框中的单词构成新词？注意每个词可能不止有一种构词方式。

age　dust　Byron　sugar　work

3.4 用括号中的后缀改写句子。

EXAMPLE The weather can't be predicted. (-able) *The weather is unpredictable.*

1 Poisonous mushrooms can be easily identified. (-able)
2 He thinks so much about his career that he has no time for his family. (-minded)
3 The new phone boxes are supposed to be indestructible by vandals. (-proof)
4 During the Civil War, the country was totally overcome by terror. (-ridden)
5 The soil on that farm contains a lot of nutrients. (-rich)
6 The bank decided that he did not have enough income to allow him credit. (-worthy)

3.5 使用左页 A 中的后缀构成具有以下含义的词。

1 operating in the style of the current President of the USA
2 food for vegetarians must be this
3 connected with class
4 containing a lot of vitamins
5 can be dry-cleaned
6 very aware of people's clothes
7 initiated by the government

3.6 以下单词是形容词、副词还是动词？用词典核实。

1 dampen　3 dearly　5 roughen　7 kindly
2 friendly　4 silken　6 masterly　8 darken

4 构词法

英语中的许多文雅词汇和学术词汇都是由古希腊或拉丁语中的前缀和词根构成的。有许多英语使用者都未意识到下列词根 / 词缀的含义，但掌握了它们有助于你理解并记忆新的词汇。

A 常见词根 / 词缀

词根/词缀*	释义	示例
auto-	self	an **autonomous** country [self-ruling]
bio-	life, living things	**biodegradable** packaging [able to decay naturally]
cyber-	relating to computers and robots	a **cybercafé** [café where customers can use computers with the Internet]
de-	opposite action	to **decolonise** a country [remove colonists from]
-graph-, -gram	writing	a **monograph** [long article or short book on a subject that the writer has studied for a long time]
-gress-	step, walk, go	a **congress** [a conference, i.e. a meeting where people come together]
-ics	an area of study or knowledge	**obstetrics** [the study of childbirth]
-phon-	sound	**phonetics** [the study of human speech]
-ology	study	**criminology** [the study of crime]
pre- (opposite = **post-**)	before	**prepaid** postage [paid for in advance]
retro-	back, backwards	**retroactive** law [taking effect from a date in the past]
techno-	relating to advanced machines	**technophobia** [fear of using technological machines such as computers]
tele-	over a distance	**telepathic** experience [feeling something from a distance]

* 本栏中的连字符 (-) 标示了该词根 / 词缀出现在词首、词中还是词尾。

尽管以上这些词根 / 词缀有助于理解词汇，但你并不能像 Unit 2 和 Unit 3 中所讲的前缀和后缀那样，用它们任意组成新单词。

B 合成词

一种不那么普遍却非常有趣的构词方式是将两个已有的单词合并，例如：**brunch** = a meal that is a combination of breakfast and lunch。

heliport: a place where helicopters can land and take off (helicopter + airport)
smog: polluted fog (smoke + fog)
motel: a roadside hotel for people travelling by car (motor + hotel)
Chunnel: tunnel linking Britain and France (Channel + tunnel)
guesstimate: an approximate calculation (guess + estimate; verb – to guesstimate)
docusoap: TV series about real people using hidden cameras (documentary + soap opera)
breathalyser: a device to find out how much alcohol a person has drunk (breath + analyse)

练习

4.1 参考左页 A 中表格的信息，解释以下词汇的基本含义。

EXAMPLE biography = *writing about a life*

1 telegram
2 telephone
3 autobiography
4 phonology
5 to retrogress
6 graphology
7 to destabilise
8 autograph

4.2 举出另外 5 个单词，要求它们只由 A 中的词根 / 词缀及其他 *-ist* 或 *-ical* 等基本结尾组成。

4.3 看下列前缀，使用词典找出两个以上以这些前缀为首的新单词，并将它们记在你的笔记本上。选择只含本单元学过的前缀的词，例如 *postman* 显然并不是由前缀 *post-* 构成的。

1 cyber
2 techno
3 retro
4 tele
5 auto
6 pre
7 post
8 phon

4.4 改写句子，用含括号中所给词根 / 词缀的词替代划线部分。如需要可使用词典。

EXAMPLE I had to <u>put off</u> my trip to Japan. (POST)
I had to postpone my trip to Japan.

1 She asked the star for his <u>signature</u> on the back of her table napkin. (GRAPH)
2 She took a degree in <u>the science of crime</u> at Stockholm University. (OLOGY)
3 The novel is largely <u>based on the writer's own life</u>. (BIO)
4 It's <u>an exhibition looking back at</u> the painter's life and work. (RETRO)
5 He believes <u>you can cure yourself by telling yourself you are cured</u>. (AUTO)
6 <u>Working at home and keeping in contact with the office by phone, fax and modem</u> is becoming increasingly common. (TELE)
7 Some areas are now deliberately trying to <u>become less industrial</u>. (DE)
8 <u>Crime committed through the Internet</u> is a growing cause for concern. (CYBER)

4.5 改写句子，用说明性的文字替代划线单词。

EXAMPLE Most of the time planes fly on <u>autopilot</u>.
Most of the time planes fly automatically, controlled by a computer rather than the pilot.

1 The firm makes job applicants do a <u>graphology</u> test.
2 Johnny loves his <u>cyberpet</u>.
3 Matt's <u>a techno-wizard</u>!
4 He's giving a paper at a <u>pre-conference</u> event in Spain.
5 Is it OK if I <u>post-date</u> this cheque?

4.6 下列词汇由哪些词合并而成？你知道这些词是什么意思吗？

1 infomercial
2 edutainment
3 cybrary
4 vegeburger
5 swimathon
6 funtastic

5 全球语境与语言的丰富性

A 阅读以下谈论英语词汇的短文，注意其中能体现语言丰富性的有用词汇和短语。

When one language takes words from another, the new items are called **loan words** or **borrowings** – though neither term is really appropriate as the receiving language does not give them back. Whereas the speakers of some languages take pains to exclude foreign words from their **lexicons** [vocabulary], English seems always to have welcomed them. Over 120 languages are on record as **sources** [where something comes from] of its present-day vocabulary.

English has been enormously extended by each wave of invaders coming to Britain. Thus, for example, Viking and Norman invasions hugely **enriched** [made richer] the basic Anglo-Saxon **word stock** [set of words]. Scholarship then introduced many words **of classical origin** [from ancient Latin or Greek] at the time of the Renaissance. Moreover, English speakers' contact with the world as, for example, explorers, pirates, imperialists, convicts or fortune-seekers have all had **linguistic consequences** [results affecting language].

B 以下是一些英语中外来语的例子。

语种	词汇	释义	应用示例
Arabic	**amber**	yellowy-orange precious stone	an **amber** necklace
Dutch	**roster**	list of people's turns for jobs	the cooking **roster**
Farsi	**tabby**	female or stripy cat	our old **tabby**
German	**gimmick**	frivolous way of attracting attention	advertising **gimmicks**
Greek	**tonic**	medicine to make you feel more lively	take a **tonic**
Hindi	**cot**	child's bed with high vertical sides	sleep in a **cot**
Icelandic	**mumps**	a childhood illness	have **mumps**
Japanese	**hara-kiri**	type of ceremonial suicide	commit **hara-kiri**
Portuguese	**palaver**	unnecessary trouble	What a **palaver**!
Russian	**intelligentsia**	social class of intellectuals	19th century **intelligentsia**
Spanish	**hammock**	net hung and used as a bed	sleep in a **hammock**
Turkish	**turban**	type of men's headwear	wear a **turban**

C 某些英语词汇可能看起来与你所使用的语言很像，但意思却大不相同。这类词汇被称作 **false friends**。例如，德语中的 *Gift* 看起来与英语中 **gift** [(birthday) present] 相同，但实际它在德语中的意思是 *poison*。英语词汇 **sympathetic** 在许多其他欧洲语言中是 *nice* 的意思，但在英语中 **sympathetic** [understanding and caring about someone else's suffering] 的意思则狭窄得多。同时还要注意，英语中外来词的发音往往也与原语言十分不同。

练习

5.1 除了 A 中短文所涉及的，以下词汇还有什么惯用搭配？

1 source of　　2 enrich　　3 classical　　4 linguistic

5.2 下图表现的是 B 中那些词汇？

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5.3 使用 B 中的词汇填空。

1 The company will be committing economic ..... if it agrees to such a proposal.
2 Most children these days are inoculated against ..... when they are babies.
3 I have some lovely ..... earrings. They match my yellow scarf perfectly.
4 A weekend beside the sea was just the ..... we needed after the long winter.
5 Who's on the ..... for the cleaning this week?
6 The clowns went out into the street as a ..... to advertise their circus.

5.4 想一想有哪些词汇是由你的母语引入到英语中的。试从以下话题的范围内寻找，英语在这些方面外来的词汇相当丰富。

- food and drink
- flora, fauna and landscape features
- industrial products and inventions
- clothing and the home
- politics and society
- the arts, sports and leisure activities

5.5 列出英语以及你的母语中的 false friends，以下是英语与德语的比较。

word	*similar word in my language + meaning*	*meaning in English*
gift	Gift = poison	(birthday) present
sympathetic	sympathisch = nice	understands and cares about others' problems

5.6 以下词汇据说是从英语传入其他语言的，其中哪些出现在你的母语中？

Thematic fields	**English source words**
food and drink	bacon, beefsteak, jam, pudding, sandwich
flora and fauna	bulldog, dog, mustang [wild horse], skunk
clothing and the home	blazer, cardigan, pullover, sweater, patio
political and social life	parliament, Tory, boycott, budget, inflation, strike
industry and inventions	car ferry, container, freight, computer chip, cable TV
arts, sports and leisure	ace [1 in playing cards], boxer, football, break dance

FOLLOW UP 列出你的母语中来自英语的词汇。从一种语言到另一种语言，其发音和意义可能有很大变化。检查是否有这种情况发生，并在你所列出的词汇旁边做相应的笔记。

6 相似不相同：易混淆的词汇

A 词形相似且词义相近

某些词汇不仅看起来相似，而且意思也十分相近。

The United Nations should **intervene** to stop the civil war. [step in; neutral in meaning]
She shouldn't **interfere** in things that don't concern her. [involve herself; negative and critical]
The phone's been ringing **continually**. It's driving me crazy. [very frequently; often negative]
(From a recipe) Stir the mixture **continuously** until it boils. [without stopping]
There's a new **series** on TV about space exploration. [set of related programmes]
I don't want to miss this week's episode of *Oliver Twist*. It's a **serial** – if I miss one I'll lose track of the story. [set of programmes where the story continues over different episodes]
We sat **in the shade of** a big oak tree. [out of the sun; pleasant connotation]
The evening sun cast long **shadows**. [dark areas or shapes]
They lived **in the shadow of** a chemical factory. [in a place dominated by; negative connotation]

B 词形不同但词义范围相同

The cake mixture should be **moist** but not sticky. [slightly wet]
The climate in the north is **damp** and rather cold. [slightly wet in an unpleasant way]
The **theme** of the festival was '1000 years of culture'. [the main idea that everything followed]
The **topic** of conversation soon changed from the weather to the latest gossip. [what the people talked about at any given moment]
The **security** officer at work said there had been a burglary. [concerned with protection of property, etc.]
The **safety** officer told him that he must wear a helmet. [concerned with prevention of accidents, etc.]

C 短语合成词

有时，短语动词具有相应的名词形式，但与其次序和含义可能不同。

短语动词	名词
Six prisoners have **broken out** of a high security jail.	There has been a **breakout** at a high security jail.
The disease has **broken out** in several villages in the north of the country.	There has been an **outbreak** of the disease in several villages in the north of the country.
Economists are **looking out** for signs of an end to the recession.	The **outlook** is not good. The economy seems to be stagnant.
He stood at the corner **looking out** for police cars.	He was the **lookout** while the others robbed the bank.

有时，相同的词以不同的次序可以构成两种动词形式，意义也不同。

第1类动词：小品词后置	第2类动词：小品词前置
end up [finish]	**upend** [move into a vertical position]
hold up [delay]	**uphold** [confirm, support]
do out [decorate]	**outdo** [do better than]

练习

6.1 圈出句中使用正确的词。如需要可使用词典。

1 I have always tried not to intervene/interfere in things that are not my business.
2 The traffic was stationary/stationery for a few minutes, then it began to move again.
3 She paid me a nice compliment/complement; she said I was the most intelligent person she had ever worked with.
4 I'm sorry! I wasn't trying to evade/avoid you. I just didn't know you were here.
5 At the entrance there was a big signal/sign saying *No children*.
6 The teacher intervened/interfered to stop the argument between the two students.
7 The other benefits I received in the job were complimented/complemented by an excellent pension plan.
8 If you need stationary/stationery for your office, just ask the secretary.
9 He was continually/continuously complaining about something or other.
10 He was fined £20,000 for avoiding/evading taxes and failing to declare his income.
11 The signal/sign changed to green and the train moved away from the station.
12 You have to press the button continually/continuously until the red light comes on. Don't take your finger off it, or it won't work.

6.2 判断句中的小品词应在动词前还是动词后。

EXAMPLE I don't think these shoes will ___out___ last _____ till the end of winter. (OUT)

1 We _____ ended _____ the sofa and used it to block the doorway. (UP)
2 The cheetah is so fast it can _____ run _____ a sports car. (OUT)
3 She's always trying to _____ do _____ everyone. Why is she so competitive? (OUT)
4 The committee _____ held _____ her complaint, and she was awarded compensation. (UP)
5 The Beatles have _____ lasted _____ most other 1960s groups in popularity. (OUT)
6 We _____ ended _____ eating in a dingy café on the edge of town. (UP)
7 I'll leave on Monday. I don't want to _____ stay _____ my welcome. (OUT)
8 The radio's not working. The batteries have _____ run _____. (OUT)

6.3 将左侧的动词与右侧适当的宾语搭配起来。

1 rehearse	the batteries in the clock
2 revise	flowers in the garden
3 change	for an exam
4 alter	a friend at the airport
5 pick up	someone's suspicions
6 pick	a garment that's too big
7 rouse	an end-of-term play
8 arouse	someone who's sleeping

6.4 从框中选出与下列句子有关联的名词。

a lookout　an outbreak　a breakout　an upset　an outlook　a setup

1 There has been violence in the capital city.
2 My stomach was bad so I couldn't go to work.
3 He is very cheerful and positive about life.
4 They fooled him into thinking his car had been stolen, but it hadn't.
5 She made sure nobody was looking, while her husband did the shoplifting.
6 Four prisoners have escaped from a maximum security prison.

7 职场：同事与工作

A 同事

读下面某人谈论同事和工作的片断。

Well, Philip **is my opposite number** [has the same position/does the same job as me] in the company's New York office.

He and I have a good **working relationship** [how we communicate and work together]. Last month we got a new boss, who quickly established a good **rapport** [/ræp'ɔː/ communication/relationship] with everyone in the office. I do socialise with my **workmates** [informal: colleagues, especially in non-professional jobs] but we try not to **talk shop** [informal: talk about work].

The company is generally very **hierarchical** [/haɪər'ɑːkɪkəl/ has a structure with powerful and less powerful people]; there's a **pecking-order** [a system where some people have the right to get benefits/promotions before others] for everything. I **do a job-share** [we each have a 50% contract for the same job] with a woman called Rosemary. It suits us both as we each have children to look after.

B 日常工作

Nancy gets to work at about 8.45. She has to **clock in** and **clock out** [use an electronic card to record the time she arrives and leaves each day]. She works fixed hours; she has a **nine-to-five job**. Brett can come in at any time from eight o'clock till ten in the morning; he **works flexi-time** / he's **on flexi-time**, but his core hours are 10.00 to 12.00 and 2.00 to 4.00. Archie doesn't go to the office at all. He works from home with his computer; he's a **teleworker**. Bert works different times each week; every third week he works nights; he does **shift work** / he's a **shift worker**. Mick has his own company; he's **self-employed** and works from home. His wife works for different companies at different times; she's **freelance** / she **works freelance**.

C 不同工作模式

Most of the day I do routine tasks, but occasionally there's a crisis or I have to **meet a deadline** [have something finished by a fixed day or time]. At certain times of the year I have a very **heavy workload** [amount of work I have to do] but at other times it can be quite **light**.

I start work at my machine at seven o'clock when I'm on the **day shift**. The job's very **mechanical** [you don't have to think about what you are doing] and **repetitive** [the same thing every day]. All I ever think about is **knocking off** [informal: finishing work] at three . The shift I hate most is the **night shift**. I start at ten and work all night till six in the morning. The job's a bit **monotonous** [boring because it never changes].

I have a **glamorous** job [very exciting, which everyone admires]. I'm a pilot. The hours are **irregular** and **antisocial** [do not enable one to have a normal social life], but I'm not **stuck behind a desk** [informal: sitting in an office all day] and there's a lot of variety. The **stress levels** can be quite high when you know people's lives depend on you. I feel sorry for people who are **stuck in a rut** [stuck in a job they can't escape from] or working in **dead-end jobs** [jobs with no prospects of promotion].

D 工作种类

I have a lot of **paperwork** to do by tomorrow. [letters/reports to write, forms to complete]
My father did **manual** work all his life and was very fit. [hard and physical]
I think I'd like **vocational** work, like being a nurse or a teacher. [which helps people]

练习

7.1 改正段落中的错误。

I think I have a good work relationship with most of my colleagues. I tried to establish a good report with them from the very beginning. The person I like most is my opposite member in our office in Paris. Generally, when I socialise to my colleagues outside of work, we try not to talk about shop, but it's not easy and sometimes we have a good gossip about people who are not there.

7.2
用 3 个形容词来描述每个工作。(例如 *stressful*, *glamorous*, *dead-end*)。想一想在你的母语中会用哪些词，然后译成英语。如需要可使用词典。

1 assembly-line worker
2 shop steward
3 PR officer
4 bodyguard
5 lifeguard
6 trawlerman
7 private eye
8 refuse collector

7.3 用左页 B 和 C 中的词或短语完成以下句子。

1 I would get bored if I had a nine .....
2 When I arrive in the morning and leave the office in the evening I use this card to .....
3 I'm very tired; recently I've had a very heavy .....
4 I don't want an office job. I don't want to spend all day stuck .....
5 I can clock in any time between eight and ten and clock out between four and six; I'm on .....
6 I'd hate to feel trapped in my job and to be stuck in .....
7 He's not here this evening, he's working nights; you see, he does .....
8 I work for different companies at different times as it suits me. I'm .....
9 I used to work for someone else, but now I'm my own boss; I'm .....
10 I stopped working in the hamburger restaurant. It was just a dead- .....
11 When I was working in the factory, all I could think of all day was the moment when I could knock .....
12 Being a nurse is a good job, but you can't go out much with friends. The hours are a bit .....

7.4
举出以下工作的具体例子。如需要可使用词典。

1 a manual job
2 a vocational job
3 a job with great variety
4 a job with irregular hours
5 a job with routine tasks
6 a job with regular deadlines
7 a job with lots of paperwork

Copyright 2000, USA TODAY. Reprinted with permission.

8 职场：职业与发展

A 求职

阅读下面这则 IT 业的招聘广告（**job ad** [informal] / **advertisement** [formal]）。

Ambitious Achievers[1]

Up to £30k[2] **basic**[3]

Money motivated, eager, looking to work in a dynamic, fast-moving industry?

We are looking for ambitious, dynamic sales professionals with the talent and **drive**[4] to develop a **rewarding**[5] career within the IT industry. You will work in **close-knit**[6] teams, maintaining and developing relationships with a **diverse**[7] range of clients.

Ideally you will possess some previous IT **sales experience**[8] and a good knowledge of computers. Most importantly you will have a strong desire to succeed.

If you **fit this description**[9] and are seeking a **lucrative**[10] career in IT sales then call Claire Walden or Graham Keen on 01960 479 6021.

1 people determined to succeed and achieve great things
2 thirty thousand pounds
3 guaranteed minimum salary without overtime or bonuses
4 strong motivation
5 giving you a lot back
6 working in a close relationship
7 of different types
8 experience selling things
9 have these qualities
10 producing a lot of money

上文中有些与工作有关的近义词，可以成对学习：
motivated / eager (形容人)　**dynamic / fast moving** (形容行业或职业)
to seek a career in ... / to look to work in ... (注意 look *to*, 意为“考虑”或“希望”，不同于look *for*)

B 职场生涯

In some countries, women are allowed **maternity leave** and men **paternity leave** if they're having a child. [time away from work to have a new baby]
What **perks** (informal) / **(extra) benefits** (formal) do you get in your job? [extra things apart from salary, e.g. a car]
How important is **job satisfaction** to you? [the feeling that your job is worth doing and fulfils you]
What's your **holiday entitlement**? [number of days you have the right to take as holiday]
Do you get regular salary **increments**? [formal: increases/rises]
Most people don't want to **reach/hit a glass ceiling.** [reach a level where you cannot get further promotion, even if you deserve it]
Most people think they are **overworked and underpaid.** [often said together as a humorous fixed expression]

练习

8.1 用左页的词或短语使以下句子更为正式。

1 Do you often look at the job ads?
2 I haven't worked in sales before.
3 There's a lot of money in selling computers. I made 70k last year.
4 We sell quite a mixed range of products.
5 I thought I would apply for the job since it sounded just like me.

8.2 从左页中找出下列划线词语的反义词。

1 a very <u>loosely organised</u> team
2 a very <u>frustrating</u> job
3 to have <u>low motivation</u>
4 a rather <u>static and slow-moving</u> profession
5 a <u>drop</u> in your salary

8.3 阅读广告并回答问题。

1 Why does 'a career' sound better than 'a job'?
2 What are 'ambiguous' situations?
3 What expression means 'not depending on other people'?
4 What is the abstract noun that means 'your ability to find clever or imaginative ways of doing things'?
5 What mental quality do you need for this job?
6 What job do you think this advertisement is for?

An exciting outdoor career

If you're an out-of-the-ordinary person who is looking for more than just a job, we are offering a unique career that requires you to use your intelligence, self-reliance and responsibility. If you have an adventurous spirit, a strong, positive personality, a tough mind and a high level of personal integrity, and if you think you can deal with rapidly-changing, ambiguous and unpredictable situations that will test your resourcefulness to the limit, then contact us now.

Phone 070037652, or e-mail personnel@leadership.com

8.4 将以下表达式分为贬义的 (-) 和褒义的 (+) 两组。其中有些是左页中没出现过的。

1 to hit a glass ceiling
2 to have a lot of perks
3 to be snowed under
4 to be demoted
5 to be passed over for promotion
6 to get turned down for a job
7 to be short-listed for a job
8 to be a high-flyer

8.5 下列词汇有些使用不正确，请改正。

1 I started studying French at university, but I didn't finish my career and left after one year.
2 My boss rose my salary with £2,000 a year. I was delighted.
3 I'm underpaid and overworked, like everybody! And I'm always stressed up.
4 My holiday titlement is four weeks a year.
5 He got maternity leave when his wife had a baby.

8.6 假设你是一名职业咨询师，你会给以下的人什么建议？

What advice would you give to someone who is...

1 money motivated and who is prepared to take risks?
2 a very talented musician who is not necessarily money motivated?
3 an achiever who has a background in IT and is a very confident person?
4 suffering from a lack of job satisfaction in their present job?

9 商务 I

A 现代商务技巧

When John left school he was desperate for a job so he took the first one he was offered – in **telesales**[1]. He thought **telemarketing**[2] sounded quite glamorous but soon found that most of the people he phoned hated **cold-calling**[3] and put the phone down when he tried the **hard sell**[4]. When he realised that the company made most of its money through the rather dubious techniques of **inertia selling**[5] and **confusion marketing**[6], he decided to leave and train as a hairdresser instead.

1 selling or marketing goods and services by phone
2 see note 1
3 phoning people who have not requested a call in order to try to sell them something
4 attempt to sell something by being very forceful
5 when a company behaves as if you agreed to buy something because you did not actually refuse it
6 selling products and services in a package, in a way that makes it very difficult to work out which company is cheapest

B "买"与"卖"

Supermarkets sometimes sell an item very cheaply just so that they attract a lot of people into the shop where they will also buy more profitable items – the item being sold very cheaply is called a **loss leader.**

If a company finds a **niche market,** it finds a specialised, small group of customers with particular interests that that company can meet.

People sometimes make a purchasing decision based on **brand loyalty.** [confidence in that particular make and a tendency always to choose it]

If you **shop around,** you try different companies or shops to see which offers best value.

If you buy something **on approval,** you have the right to return it if it is not satisfactory.

If you **have first refusal on** something, the seller promises that you will be asked if you would like to buy it first, and only if you do not want it will it be offered for sale to others.

If an item is said to **come/go under the hammer,** it is sold at an auction. [sale of goods or property where people make gradually increasing **bids** and the item is then sold to the highest **bidder**]

C 从商经历

Sally started her own catering business and this turned out to be very **lucrative**[1]. However, she got increasingly irritated by all the **red tape**[2] involved in business and when a larger company suggested **merging**[3], she was interested. The two companies did not agree immediately on all the details of the takeover but they managed to **reach a compromise**[4] and **hammer out a deal**[5] without too much delay. In some ways Sally was sad that her company had been **swallowed up**[6] but she is now quite glad to be free of the hassles of **entrepreneurship**[7]. She has used the money raised by the sale of her **capital assets**[8] to buy a large house in the south of France.

1 producing a lot of money
2 bureaucracy (negative)
3 joining together to form one new company
4 come to an agreement in which both sides have to give in a little bit on what they would have otherwise liked
5 talk seriously and in detail until a business agreement is made
6 taken over by a larger company (slightly negative)
7 involvement in business and taking financial risks
8 buildings and machines owned by a company

练习

9.1 将下列商务用语正确搭配。

1 loss	selling
2 capital	refusal
3 confusion	leader
4 first	tape
5 hard	marketing
6 inertia	loyalty
7 brand	assets
8 niche	sell
9 red	market

9.2 参看左页 A、B 的内容，完成下列句子。

1 A unique painting will come _____ the hammer in London tomorrow.
2 It's a sensible idea to shop _____ a bit before buying a computer.
3 Jeremy has promised me that, if he ever decides to sell his motorbike, I can have _____ refusal on it.
4 I don't mind trying a hard sell on a person who has already expressed an interest in our products, but I hate _____-calling.
5 I wasn't sure whether the desk would fit into my office so I bought it _____ approval.
6 If you want to make a _____ for something in an auction you first have to catch the auctioneer's eye.
7 If you work in telesales you spend most of your day on the _____.
8 They produce special clothes for people who like to do yoga and have really captured this _____ market.

9.3 使用左页 C 中的词或短语替换句中划线部分。

1 As their business interests were really very similar, it did not take them very long to <u>come to an agreement</u>.
2 If you want to go into the import and export business, you had better be prepared for a lot of <u>bureaucracy</u>.
3 At the moment they are discussing the possibility of their companies <u>becoming one</u>.
4 Sportswear is a very <u>profitable</u> business to be in at the moment.
5 Only a few people have a real talent for <u>the risk-taking of opening a new business</u>.
6 A number of small companies have been <u>taken over</u> by that large multi-national in the last six months.

9.4 回答有关左页中词汇和短语的问题。

1 Find three words or phrases that have negative associations – for most people at least.
2 Name two things that might count as capital assets.
3 Find three expressions that relate to ways of buying things.
4 Find three expressions that relate to ways of selling things.
5 Find three expressions that are based on a metaphor and explain what the metaphor is and why it is appropriate.

FOLLOW UP

对你的学习而言，最重要的商务词汇是与你个人领域有关的。登录网站 **www.business.com**。这个网站链接的站点是按照普通和专门的商务领域来分类的。将有用的页面打印出来，保存在专门的文件夹里。

10 商务 2

A

以下为商业协议中使用的重要词汇。

to **put in/submit a tender:** to supply a written offer to do a job for an agreed price
to **win a tender:** to be given a job, after submitting a tender
to **meet/miss a deadline:** to supply / fail to supply something by the agreed time
a **penalty clause:** part of a contract specifying what will happen if an agreement is broken
an **outstanding** account: an account that has not yet been paid
to **default on a payment:** to fail to pay something that had been agreed
to **acknowledge** receipt: to inform the sender when something is received
to **ship** an order: to send out goods that have been ordered – nothing to do with boats; what is sent is the **shipment**
to **expire:** to end – of something that was agreed for a fixed period; the noun is **expiry**

B

阅读跟工作有关的幽默书籍是学习这个话题新词汇的好办法。下面这个例子选自一本打趣现代职场的畅销书。

Some Rules of Management

(from a Handbook for Managers)

- The problem is not a lack of resources, it's a lack of meetings.
- If you're talking, you're **communicating**[1].
- Low **morale**[2] is caused by character **flaws**[3] in your employees.
- If 10 people can complete a project in 10 days, then 1 person can complete the project in 1 day.
- **Teamwork**[4] is when other people do your work for you.

1 this verb suggests that listeners understand what the speaker is trying to convey
2 amount of confidence felt by a person or group
3 weaknesses
4 working together for a common purpose

C

以下是一些名人在商务方面的言论。

We demand that big business give the people a square deal; in return we must insist that when any one engaged in big business honestly endeavors to do right, he shall himself be given a square deal. (*Theodore Roosevelt*)

It is difficult but not impossible to conduct strictly honest business. What is true is that honesty is incompatible with the amassing of a large fortune. (*Mahatma Gandhi*)

The growth of a large business is merely the survival of the fittest [...] The American Beauty rose can be produced in the splendour and fragrance which bring cheer to its beholder only by sacrificing the early buds which grow up around it. (*John D. Rockefeller*)

The salary of the chief executive of the large corporation is not a market award for achievement. It is frequently in the nature of a warm personal gesture by the individual to himself. (*J. K. Galbraith*)

Accountants are the witch-doctors of the modern world and willing to turn their hands to any kind of magic. (*Lord Justice Harman*)

British management doesn't seem to understand the importance of the human factor. (*Charles, Prince of Wales*)

练习

10.1 用括号中的词改写句子。

1 Do you have many accounts which have yet to be paid? (outstanding)
2 Until what date is your contract valid? (expire)
3 Please let us know when you receive our payment. (acknowledge)
4 It is very important that you complete your work by the agreed time. (meet)
5 We would like to invite companies to send us proposals as to how they would do the job and what they would charge for it. (submit)
6 It is company policy to take legal action against customers who fail to pay their accounts. (default)

10.2 参看左页 B 部分。用框中的词完成句子。

employee flaw lack morale project resources

1 Joanna is working on a very interesting _____ at the moment.
2 Unfortunately, there's a _____ in your reasoning.
3 What used to be called Personnel is now called Human _____.
4 The new manager is doing his best to raise _____ in the office.
5 Sadly our new product has met with a total _____ of consumer interest.
6 We are extremely sorry to lose Matt as an _____.

10.3 以下几点分别为 C 中哪个人提到的？

1 Top businessmen often award themselves bonuses regardless of their performance.
2 It is impossible to be both rich and honest.
3 Managers don't pay enough attention to the people who work for them.
4 Large businesses succeed by destroying small businesses.
5 Companies must treat customers fairly; then government will treat companies fairly too.

10.4 参看 C，连接正确的搭配。

1 a chief	a fortune
2 a personal	of the fittest
3 a square	business
4 the survival	factor
5 an award	gesture
6 to turn	executive
7 the human	deal
8 to amass	your hand to
9 to conduct	for achievement

10.5 选择 10.4 中的搭配填空。

Jack is now the _____ (1) of a large company. He managed to _____ (2) by designing some computer software which sold all over the world. He's a talented man, prepared to _____ (3) any job that needs doing. He is good to his employees, always giving them _____ (4) because he knows how important _____ (5) is if you want _____ (6) successfully. Last year he won _____ (7) in business. In a remarkable _____ (8), he gave his prize money away to his employees.

11 为成功准备：学术研究

A 学业考试

Before an exam you can **revise** or **cram**[1] for it. If the exam happens every year, you can look at **past papers**[2]. Some things can be **memorised** or **learnt off by heart**. But **rote-learning**[3] is not sufficient for most subjects. It is also possible to use **mnemonics**[4]. But tricks alone are not enough, and the best idea is to **bury yourself in your books**[5] until you **know the subject inside out**[6].

1 study intensively for a short time
2 exam papers from previous years
3 learning purely by repetition
4 [/nɪˈmɒnɪks/] tricks that help you remember something, for example: 'i' after 'e' except after 'c' is a mnemonic for English spelling (e.g. friend, but receive)
5 spend the maximum time studying
6 know it completely

B 课程书面作业

词汇	释义
composition	could be just 50–100 words, often used to refer to children's work
essay	longer than a composition, more serious, hundreds or even thousands of words
assignment	a long essay, often part of a course, usually thousands of words
project	like an assignment, but emphasis on student's own material and topic
portfolio	a collection of individual pieces of work, not necessarily written
dissertation	a long, research-based work, perhaps 10–15,000 words, for a degree or diploma
thesis	a very long, original, research-based work, perhaps 80–100,000 words, for a higher degree (e.g. PhD)

C 写作步骤与评估

■ It's a good idea to start with a **mind-map**[1] when preparing an essay. Always write a **first draft**[2] before **writing up** the final version. Your essay should be all your own work; **plagiarism**[3] is a very serious offence in most colleges and universities. There is usually a **deadline**[4]. After the essay is **submitted**[5], it will be **assessed**[6] and usually you can get **feedback**[7].

1 diagram that lays out ideas for the topic and how they are connected to one another
2 first, rough version
3 /ˈpleɪdʒərɪzəm/ using other people's work as if it was yours
4 date by which you must hand in the work
5 handed in (formal)
6 evaluated and given a grade
7 comments from the teacher/tutor

D 高级学术研究

University academics **carry out** [less formal **'do'**] **research** and are expected to read **academic journals** [note: not ~~magazines~~], which publish **papers/articles** on specialised subjects. If a library does not have a book or journal, you can usually get it through **inter-library loan** [system where libraries exchange books/journals with one another]. Academic study can be very demanding and intensive, and some students **drop out** [leave the course before the end because they cannot cope], but the majority survive till **finals** [the last exams before receiving a degree].

练习

11.1 改正句中书面作业词汇的用法错误。

1 His PhD assignment was 90,000 words long and was on the history of US place names.
2 Little Martha did her first dissertation in school today. It was called 'My family'.
3 We have to hand in an essay at the end of the course. It can consist of up to five different pieces of work.
4 The teacher gave us the title of this week's project today. We have to write 1,000 words on the topic of 'If I ruled the world' and hand it in next Monday.
5 At the end of this course you have to do a 5,000-word thesis which will be assessed, and the grade will contribute to your final degree.
6 I think I'll do a study of people's personal banking habits for my MSc composition. It has to be about 12,000 words.
7 I've chosen to do the portfolio instead of the two exams, because I like to do one single piece of work where I can research something that interests me personally.

11.2 使用左页中的词语替代划线部分，重写短文。

When I'm preparing intensively for an exam, I don't see any point in looking up exam papers from previous years, nor is there any point in just learning things by memory. I know some people develop very clever memory tricks to help them remember the material, but there's no real substitute for re-reading and going over the term's work. It's a good idea to have some sort of diagram to organise your ideas, and memory-learning is useful, but in a limited way. At the end of the day, you just have to read a huge amount until you feel you know the subject 100 per cent.

11.3 以下是左页中未出现的关于学业和考试的惯用习语。根据上下文猜测其含义并选择正确答案。

1 It's very easy to fall behind with your studies if you miss even just a few classes.
a) stay close behind other students b) find yourself far behind other students
c) get ahead of other students
2 She seemed to just breeze through the exams. Everyone else was in such a panic and almost had nervous breakdowns.
a) do them calmly and efficiently b) not take them seriously c) cheat in them
3 I just can't seem to get the hang of English prepositions. Just when I think I've learnt them I make new mistakes.
a) memorise b) understand c) enjoy
4 When I sat down and looked at the exam paper my mind just went blank. Everyone else seemed to be writing away quite happily.
a) became confused b) became very focused c) became empty

11.4 回答问题。

1 What do we call the first attempt at writing something, e.g. an essay?
2 What word means 'the date by which you must do something'?
3 What word means 'using someone else's ideas as if they were yours'?
4 What are more formal words for 'to hand in' and for 'to mark'?
5 What verb do we use when someone doesn't complete their course?
6 What is another word for an academic article? Where can you read them?
7 What is the name of the system for getting books from other libraries?
8 What word means 'the comments you get back from the teacher about your work'?

12 教育：讨论议题

A 机会、平等，等等

读短文，注意黑体标示的短语及惯用搭配。

All education systems may ultimately be judged in terms of **equality of opportunity**[1]. This is not the same as the debates over **selective**[2] versus **comprehensive**[3] **schooling**[4]. It is rather a matter of whether everyone has the same opportunities for educational achievement or whether **elitism**[5] of one sort or another is **inherent in**[6] the system. **League tables**[7] for schools and colleges may actually help unintentionally to **perpetuate**[8] inequalities, while claiming to promote the raising of standards. Inevitably, league tables divide the world into good and bad, success and failure, resulting in a **two-tier system**[9], even if that is only how the public **perceives**[10] it. The ability of the **better-off**[11] parents and **well-endowed**[12] schools to push children towards the institutions at the top of the league may, in the long term, have the effect of **depressing**[13] opportunity for the **less well-off**[14] or for children from home environments that do not provide the push and motivation to **excel**[15].

1 when everyone has the same chances
2 pupils take exams for entry
3 everyone enters without exams
4 education received at school
8 when you favour a small, privileged group
6 existing as a basic part of something
7 lists of schools or colleges from the best down to the worst
8 make something continue forever
9 a system with two separate levels, one of which is better than the other
10 sees, considers
11 richer
12 receiving a lot of money in grants, gifts from rich people, etc.
13 reducing
14 poorer
15 achieve an excellent standard

B 其他讨论议题

例句	释义
Some people think we should return to an emphasis on **the three Rs**.	**r**eading, **w**riting and **a**rithmetic, the traditional, basic skills
Literacy and **numeracy** are skills no one can afford to be without.	– the ability to read – the ability to count / do basic maths
Curriculum reform is often done for political reasons rather than for good educational ones.	changes to the educational programme, e.g. the national syllabus
Nowadays, **lifelong/continuing education** is an issue, and creating opportunities for **mature students** is important.	– education for all ages – adult students older than the average student
Special needs education is expensive because class sizes need to be small or **one-to-one**.	– education for children who cannot learn in the normal way, because they have some disability – one teacher and one pupil, not a group
He was unhappy at his new school because the older boys were **bullying** him.	frightening or threatening

'Leadership and learning are indispensable to each other.' *(US President John F. Kennedy)*

练习

12.1 根据括号中的释义写出完整的搭配。

1 _____ tables (lists of schools from best to worst)
2 _____ education (entry to schools is decided by exam results)
3 equality of _____ (when everyone has the same chances)
4 _____ inequalities (making inequalities continue forever)

12.2 使用 A 中更正式、更适当的词汇替换划线部分。如有需要可改动句子。

1 Inequality is built into the education system.
2 Giving access only to privileged groups is bad for the country in the long term.
3 Education where everyone gets into the same type of school without exams is a basic political ideal in many countries.
4 A system where there are two levels of schools reduces the opportunities for children from poorer families and favours those from richer families.
5 Some private schools have lots of wealth and receive gifts of money, and this means they can have better resources.
6 All parents want their children to achieve the best possible results at school.
7 Emphasis on the three Rs is considered by parents to be the key to success.

12.3 B 中的哪个词或短语具有以下含义？

1 the ability to read
2 the ability to count and do basic maths
3 changes made to the official programme of education in a country
4 the traditional basic skills of reading, writing and maths
5 a student who is older than the typical age, for example, in a university
6 teaching with one teacher and just one pupil

12.4 根据自己国家的情况回答问题。

1 Under what circumstances do school closures occur?
2 What are typical discipline problems in your country? What do teachers do?
3 What special needs provision is there in typical schools?
4 What provisions are there for lifelong education?

12.5 将左边的词汇与右边的定义配对。这些词指参与教育的人士。如需要可使用词典。

1 PTA	a) teacher who works in a school when needed (e.g. if someone is sick)
2 school governors	b) group consisting of teachers and parents who meet regularly
3 supply teacher	c) teacher who works in different schools and travels between them
4 peripatetic teacher /ˌperɪpəˈtetɪk/	d) group which oversees all the business of the school

继续学习与教育有关的词汇，阅读 *The Times Higher Educational Supplement*，*The Education Guardian* 或类似的关于教育议题的报纸。或者访问它们的网站 www.thes.co.uk，www.guardian.co.uk/education。

13 谈论自己

A

中国的十二生肖是每一年以一种动物命名，十二年一个轮回。某些人认为所出生的那一年会影响人的性格。

生肖	年份	性格
RAT	1972, 1984, 1996	Imaginative, charming, generous, quick-tempered, opportunistic[1]
BUFFALO	1973, 1985, 1997	Conservative, methodical[2], conscientious, chauvinistic[3], a born leader
TIGER	1974, 1986, 1998	Sensitive, emotional, tend to get carried away[4], stubborn, rebellious
RABBIT	1975, 1987, 1999	Affectionate, obliging[5], gallant[6], sentimental, superficial[7]
DRAGON	1964, 1976, 1988	Fun-loving, popular, perfectionist, gifted, may sometimes be tactless[8]
SNAKE	1965, 1977, 1989	Sagacious[9], charming, intuitive[10], stingy, inclined to procrastinate[11]
HORSE	1966, 1978, 1990	Diligent[12], independent, placid[13], friendly, can be selfish and cunning
GOAT	1967, 1979, 1991	Elegant, artistic, always ready to complain, plagued by[14] worry
MONKEY	1968, 1980, 1992	Witty, magnetic personality[15], can be self-seeking[16] and distrustful
ROOSTER	1969, 1981, 1993	Industrious, shrewd[17], decisive, very extravagant, a flashy[18] dresser
DOG	1970, 1982, 1994	Down-to-earth, altruistic[19], morose[20], sharp-tongued[21], a fault-finder[22]
PIG	1971, 1983, 1995	Intellectual, tolerant, naïve[23], downfall[24] could be desire for material goods

1 using situations for own benefit
2 systematic, careful
3 too patriotic
4 become too excited and lose control
5 ready to help
6 (of man) polite to women
7 not caring about serious things
8 inclined to say things that upset or offend people
9 wise
10 understanding instinctively
11 delay doing something
12 hard-working
13 calm, does not easily become excited or angry
14 troubled or distressed by
15 personality that attracts people to you
16 wanting to gain advantage for oneself
17 having good judgement
18 expensive or impressive
19 thinking of others rather than oneself
20 gloomy
21 inclined to speak in a severe and critical way
22 critical person
23 without enough experience of life, trusting too easily
24 cause of destruction

B

Charming, witty, wise – recognise yourself? Stingy, selfish, sly – must be somebody else!

上表中出现了一些褒义的修饰词，也有贬义的修饰词。下表包含了部分上述词汇以及另外一些近义词，并标明了哪些是褒义的，哪些是贬义的。

褒义	贬义	褒义	贬义
generous, unstinting	extravagant, immoderate	shrewd, astute	cunning, sly
resolute, dogged	stubborn, mulish	sober, serious	morose, sullen
thrifty, frugal	stingy, parsimonious	witty, pithy	sharp-tongued, terse
diligent, industrious	work-obsessed, (a) workaholic	tolerant, broad-minded	unprincipled, unscrupulous

练习

13.1 将左侧词汇与右侧的反义词配对。如需要可使用词典。

1 altruistic	unsystematic
2 diligent	generous
3 intellectual	thick-skinned
4 methodical	unhelpful
5 morose	flexible
6 obliging	low-brow
7 quick-tempered	selfish
8 sensitive	cheerful
9 stingy	placid
10 stubborn	lazy

13.2 回答问题。

1 Which animal represents you? To what extent do the characteristics apply to you?
2 Think of a friend and find their animal in the chart. Give examples of why you think each characteristic is appropriate or not.

EXAMPLE My friend is a rooster. I think he is industrious because he worked very hard to find a lot of information for a research project he had to complete at college. I don't think he is shrewd because someone tricked him into investing in a non-existent company.

13.3 将 A 中的所有形容词和描述性短语按以下题目分类。

describe me *might describe me* *do not describe me*

13.4 下面的说话人对谁有褒义的评价？对谁有贬义的评价？

> Let me tell you about my new colleagues. Pat, my boss, seems very astute and witty. I find her deputy, Vince, a bit parsimonious and work-obsessed. I share an office with Julie who's a bit sullen and mulish. I also do a lot of work with Sam who's very tolerant and generous.

13.5 现在试想另外的人正在谈论上面几个人，但都是以不同的眼光看待他们的。那么应该怎样描述这些人？

EXAMPLE Pat is very sly and terse.

13.6 下列形容词来自哪些抽象名词？如需要可使用词典。

1 altruistic	3 diligent	5 industrious	7 gallant	9 morose
2 parsimonious	4 placid	6 sagacious	8 terse	10 unscrupulous

13.7 13.6 中的词汇较不常见，而且多用在书面语中。找出这些词在口语中的同义词。

EXAMPLE altruistic – unselfish

FOLLOW UP 在网上搜索 **horoscopes** 一词，找出形容你自己或者其他人性格的有用词汇，继续查看你感兴趣的链接。某些网站上可能会有性格测试，以帮助你了解自己是哪一类的人。

14 人际关系：积极方面

A 爱情

When Tom met Lily it was **love at first sight.** [love began the first moment they saw each other]
She **fell head over heels in love** with him. [fell deeply and madly in love]
Nick **only has eyes for** Diana. He's not interested in other girls. [is only attracted to]
I've often seen David and Valerie at the cinema together, but it's purely a **platonic relationship.** [affectionate relationship between people of the opposite sex that is not sexual]
Nora was more than **infatuated with** [romantically obsessed with] Brian; she was completely **besotted with** [almost stupidly or blindly in love with] him.

B 友情及其他

Anona and I **hit it off** immediately [liked each other the moment we met]. We're true **soulmates** [people who feel close to each other in spirit and who understand each other deeply].
Nelly was my mother's **lifelong companion.** [friend who was with her all her life]
The moment I met Rob I could see he was **a man after my own heart.** [someone you admire because they do or think the same as you; can also be **woman after one's own heart**]
Charlie and I **get on like a house on fire.** [have a very good, enjoyable relationship]
Jim and Tony have been **bosom friends/buddies/pals** for years. [very close, good friends]
Patricia and Carmen are **inseparable.** [always want to be together, very close]
There's always been a close **bond** between Kirsten and her aunt. [relationship or feeling of togetherness]

C 一般社会关系：惯用搭配

以下对话中的回答都是第一个人所说的话的另一种表达方式。

A: You seem to be very similar to Alan – the way you think and look at life.
B: Yes, we've always been **kindred spirits.**

A: What a nice wedding! Ian and Sally seem to be perfect for each other.
B: Yes, such a **well-matched** couple!

A: Our Spanish friends are always phoning their brothers and sisters.
B: Yes, well, I think **family ties** in Spain are much stronger than here.

D 名词与形容词

形容词	名词	例句
affectionate	**affection**	He never shows much affection for his children.
amiable	**amiability**	She always treats us with great amiability.
considerate	**consideration**	'Have some consideration for the other students!' she said angrily.
faithful	**faithfulness**	Faithfulness is the key to a good marriage.
fond	**fondness**	Over the years she developed a fondness for Mario that went beyond a purely business relationship.
loyal	**loyalty**	He was a great team captain who inspired loyalty in the players.

练习

14.1 将左右两栏词汇正确搭配，填入下方句子空白处。

love	pals
head	it off
bosom	over heels in love
hit	spirits
kindred	at first sight

1 When Patrick met Andrea it was _____.
2 Phil and Colin look at life in the same way. They're _____.
3 Ever since they worked together, Lucy and Clare have been _____.
4 They just looked at each other and fell _____.
5 When Joss and I met, we immediately _____.

14.2 填空。

1 Rachel only has _____ for Mark these days. She's crazy over him.
2 They look such a _____ couple. I wonder if they will get married?
3 Sheila and I have always got _____ like a house _____.
4 He's completely _____ with her. I've never known him to be so much in love before. He's like a teenager. (two possible answers)

14.3 写出下列单词的名词或形容词形式。其中有一些是左页中没出现过的词。如需要可使用词典。

noun	*adjective*
	loyal
consideration	
passion	
	devoted
	fond
	faithful

noun	*adjective*
respect	
affection	
	romantic
support	
	amiable
trust	

14.4 下列句中使用了上表中的词，请填入正确的介词。如需要可使用词典。

1 She's absolutely devoted _____ her mother and visits her every day.
2 I've always had a lot of respect _____ my boss, and I do enjoy my job a lot.
3 She's been so loyal _____ me all these years, I can't let her down now.
4 He's very supportive _____ his colleagues; they're very lucky.
5 I'm quite fond _____ Larry, but that doesn't mean I want to marry him.
6 He puts a lot of trust _____ me, and I feel I can trust him too.

14.5 回答问题，并给出原因。

Name someone in your life who ...

1 you feel a close bond with.
2 is a real soulmate for you.
3 is a person after your own heart.

15 人际关系：问题

A 友谊

I think we should all be more careful in the use of the word 'friend'. It does not, and should not, be applied to a **casual acquaintance**. There are **colleagues**, **allies** and **partners** – all of them pretending to be friends because it suits their purpose.

True friends want nothing from you and don't expect any special favours. We should ask nothing from them except **loyalty**, despite our faults. They should speak well **behind our backs**. Such friends are hard to find ...

上文指 friend 不同于 casual acquaintance [person you know, but not very well]:
Friends should show loyalty [support for us in good and bad times]. They should not talk behind our backs [say bad things about us when we are not there].

以下为友谊所具备的品质及其反义词。

quality	*opposite*
loyal (adj.) loyalty (noun)	disloyal (adj.) disloyalty (noun)
supportive [always supports you]	unsupportive, critical
honest, truthful	dishonest, untruthful

其他关键词有：
Russia and America were **allies** [countries which fight on the same side] in the Second World War.
We were **business partners** [people who own the same business] but now we're **bitter rivals** [people in competition with each other in an aggressive and negative way].

以下为不正常的友谊的例子。注意介词的使用。
Terry has been **disloyal to** me on a number of occasions.
Jo's always very **critical of** her friends. I don't like that.
OK, I was **dishonest with** you. I'm sorry, but I didn't want to hurt you.

注意以上关键词汇的一些惯用搭配。
Jim has always been **scrupulously honest** in his dealings with us.
I would never expect **complete and unswerving loyalty** from a friend.
Monica has always been my **staunchest ally** at work. I can always rely on her to support me.
I was amazed that someone who called herself a friend could be so **deeply critical**.

B 关系破裂：表达式与惯用搭配

Relationships can **break down** because of **genuine misunderstandings**.
A **rift** [serious disagreement that divides people] can develop between two people or groups.
There's been a lot of **discord** [disagreement and discontent] in the office lately.
My father and I **don't see eye to eye** [have different opinions] on most things.
His love affair with Anna has **turned sour** [become bad]. I think they'll **split up** [separate].
Our marriage **has had its ups and downs** [had good and bad moments], but basically we're OK.
a **bumpy relationship** [up and down like a car on a road with bumps]
a **broken home** [family split up by divorce]
a **family feud** /fju:d/ [quarrel in a family causing bad feeling for many years]

练习

15.1 写出以下形容词的反义词。以下形容词有左页 A 中的，也有新补充的。如需要可使用词典。

1 loyal 2 truthful 3 honest 4 welcoming 5 contented 6 warm-hearted

15.2 句中的某些词语使用不正确。使用 A 中出现的正确词语重写句子。

1 We both own the company: we're bitter rivals.
2 I've made several casual colleagues since moving to London, but no close friends yet.
3 Were Britain and the USA colleagues in the First World War too?
4 The two companies hate each other: they're acquaintances.

15.3 使用左页中适当的形容词或副词填空。

1 You need _____ allies at work who won't let you down.
2 His _____ honesty is a quality I greatly admire.
3 I don't know why she was so _____ critical of him; it seemed very unfair.
4 Her _____ and _____ loyalty to him was a mistake. He betrayed her in the end.
5 Ray and Hilary were _____ rivals at work, but seemed to get on well outside of the office.
6 When all my other so-called friends drifted away, Jack always remained a _____ friend to me.

15.4 将下列句子改写为意思相反的。

1 Rick and his sister shared the same opinion on a lot of things.
2 Her affection for Andrew has grown stronger lately. I expect they'll get engaged.
3 Our relationship stayed firm because we always understood each other.

15.5 使用左页中的表达式描述以下情况。

1 We both thought the other was going to pick up Roger. There was a ...
2 The kids have been unhappy since their parents divorced. They come from a ...
3 Her marriage has been both good and bad at different times. It has ...
4 The two union leaders have had a serious disagreement which has split them. A serious ...
5 Two of the brothers have not spoken to their other brother for twenty years because of something bad that happened. I think it's a ...

15.6 使用适当的介词填空。

1 I know I'm not perfect, but I've never been dishonest _____ you.
2 She's very critical _____ her colleagues.
3 Why are you always so disloyal _____ me?

15.7 用自己的话解释下列表达式。如需要可使用词典。

1 to die of a broken heart
2 to hate someone's guts
3 to have it in for someone
4 to be on bad terms with someone

Look. I just don't feel the relationship is working out.

The Far Side® by Gary Larson © 1980 FarWorks, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Used with permission.

16 情感：情绪与反应

A

以下动词意指某种强烈的愿望难以控制。

Pregnant women **crave / have a craving for** strange things like tuna and banana pizza!
I still **hanker after / have a hankering for** a bright red sports car. [**Hanker** is especially used about something you cannot have.]
Young children often seem to **thirst / have a thirst for** knowledge. [**To hunger for** can also be used in the same way as to **thirst for**.]
Sometimes my cousin just **yearns to** be on her own with no family responsibilities. [If you **yearn to do / yearn for / have a yearning for** something, it means that you want something that you do not have and, often, can never have.]
An Olympic gold is probably the most **coveted** sporting prize. [**To covet** something means to want to possess it very much.]

B

以下动词描述对他人情绪所起的反应。

词汇	释义	例句
defuse	make a dangerous or tense situation calmer	Jane tried to **defuse** the tension by changing the subject.
placate	stop someone feeling angry	Jim was very angry with his daughter and it took all her charm to **placate** him.
conciliate	end a disagreement between two people or groups by acting in a friendly way towards both sides	An independent advisor has been brought in to **conciliate** between the unions and the employer.
appease	end a disagreement by giving the other side an advantage that they are demanding (normally used in a disapproving way)	Although **appeasing** the enemy postponed the war for another year, it did not ultimately prevent it from happening.

常见形容词 **implacable** 是从 placate 而来（没有在 placable 这个词），用来形容某人的观点和感觉无法改变：

I cannot understand the **implacable hatred** that he still feels for his old rival.

C

以下是一些表示非常高兴的词。

to rejoice: be extremely happy　　Everyone **rejoiced** at the news of her recovery.
exultant: feeling great pleasure and happiness, usually because of a success
Sarah was in an **exultant** mood for weeks after doing so well in her exams.
jubilant: expressing great happiness especially at a victory
There were **jubilant** shouts as the results of the referendum were announced.
rapture: extreme pleasure or happiness (形容词 = **rapturous**)
He listened to the opera with an expression of pure **rapture** on his face.
bliss: perfect happiness (形容词 = **blissful**)　注意副词 **blissfully** 常与 **happy, ignorant** 和**unaware** 搭配
They are **blissfully happy** even though they're poor.

以下是一些在口语中表达非常高兴的惯用搭配。
You look **full of the joys of spring** today.
My daughter's just had a baby girl. We're **thrilled to bits** at the news.
I feel on top of the world. It's great to have a job again.
I've been **floating/walking on air** ever since I heard I got into drama school.
How did you feel when you scored the winning goal? – I was **over the moon**!

练习

16.1 选择正确的词填空。

1 Since giving up smoking, I now find that I _____ chocolate.
a) thirst b) crave c) hunger
2 Martha is very good at _____ difficult situations.
a) placating b) appeasing c) defusing
3 Everyone is _____ to bits that Joe was so successful in the competition.
a) blissful b) thrilled c) exultant
4 If he has a tantrum, you mustn't try to _____ him. Don't give in!
a) conciliate b) appease c) defuse
5 When Lorna retires, there will probably be a lot of internal applicants for what must be the most _____ job in the company.
a) yearned b) hankered c) coveted
6 Fortunately, her parents were _____ unaware of what was going on.
a) rapturously b) blissfully c) exultantly

16.2 用括号中的词根组成新词完成句子。如需要可查词典。

1 Even after so many years away from the country where I was born, I still have a _____ to return there some day. (HANKER)
2 Nick gazed _____ at his neighbour's shining new motorbike. (COVET)
3 The lovers looked _____ into each other's eyes. (RAPTURE)
4 Jean tried making some _____ remarks which lightened the atmosphere a bit. (CONCILIATE)
5 Our local Member of Parliament is an _____ opponent of all plans to extend the city. (PLACATE)
6 The mood of the negotiations was _____ from the outset and a consensus was reached fairly rapidly to the _____ of all present. (PLACATE; JUBILANT)

16.3 将以下句子的开头与结尾连接起来。

1 Sarah has been walking	on top of the world since finishing her thesis.
2 Beth is full	after a new computer.
3 Amanda seems to be	for children with AIDS.
4 Jill feels enormous pity	on air since she got engaged.
5 Sam is hankering	at his good fortune.
6 His parents rejoiced	of the joys of spring.

16.4 回答问题。

1 What sort of things might you say someone was blissfully ignorant of?
2 If a politician talks about appeasement, is he expressing approval?
3 Would people be more likely to be called jubilant or blissful if their team had won the World Cup?
4 Have you ever felt as if you were floating on air? When?

FOLLOW UP

你能在许多种文体中找到表达感情和情绪的语句，例如在歌曲、评论、星座运势，或者是杂志中的问题专栏和其他的文学作品中。记下你见到的所有特别的表达方式，将其写进和你有关的句子中。比如，见到短语 **to be on cloud nine** [to be very happy, colloquial]，你可以写下 ***I was on cloud nine when I heard I'd passed all my exams*** 这样的句子。

17 感觉：反感与厌恶

A 反感（antipathies）与厌恶（aversions）

antipathy 是对某事物或某人的一种强烈的（甚至激烈的）反感或对抗。例如：**Antipathy** towards the government has increased as a result of the current crisis，表示这个意思的形容词不是 *antipathetic*，而是 **hostile** 和 **unsympathetic**，例如：a **hostile** crowd of protesters，an **unsympathetic** remark。

aversion 是对做某事的强烈厌恶或者不情愿，也可指引起这种情绪的人或事物。通常用于短语 **have/feel aversion to**，例如：I **felt an instant aversion to** the new manager. Arrogance has always been my **pet aversion** [the thing I dislike most of all].

averse to 的意思是反对，通常与 **not** 连用。例如：I'm **not averse to** a good night out.

B 其他表示强烈反感的词汇

名词	释义	形容词	动词
loathing	intense hatred	loathsome	loathe
abhorrence	intense disgust	abhorrent	abhor
scorn	lack of respect for something or someone felt to be worthless	scornful [showing lack of respect]	scorn
revulsion	strong disgust	revolting	revolt
repulsion	opposite of strong attraction	repulsive	repulse

C 有负面含义的形容词

以下形容词带有很强烈的负面含义。标 * 的词为非正式的。

词汇	释义
bland	lacking taste, character or interest (food, etc.)
brash	too confident; too bright (clothes, etc.)
dowdy	dull in appearance or lacking style (clothes, person, especially of women)
fickle	changing opinions suddenly without reason
fuddy-duddy *	old-fashioned
grasping *	always wanting more money
nit-picking *	too concerned about unimportant details
obnoxious	unpleasant and rude
obsequious	too eager to praise or obey people

词汇	释义
off-hand	showing rude lack of interest in others
officious	too eager to tell others what to do
ostentatious	displaying wealth or possessions in a vulgar way
pompous	too formal and showing that you think that you are more important than other people
pretentious	trying to appear more serious or important than you are
puerile	too silly and childish
sloppy *	not taking care in the way you work
squalid	very dirty and unpleasant
trite	lacking in originality; banal

练习

17.1 回答关于 A、B 中词汇的问题。

1 Name three foods that you find revolting.
2 Name three things that you loathe doing.
3 Name someone that you feel scorn for.
4 Are there any ideas that you find abhorrent?
5 Have you ever felt an instant antipathy to someone?
6 Do you have a pet aversion? If so, what is it?

17.2 用括号中的词根组成新词，完成句子。

EXAMPLE His books seem to me to reflect his own *pomposity*. (POMPOUS)

1 The parents are delightful but their children are _____. (LOATHE)
2 Although Sal loves it, I find that painting of a woman with two heads quite _____. (REPULSE)
3 The behaviour of some of the committee can only be described as _____. (ABHOR)
4 You copied out the diagram very _____. Please do it again. (SLOPPY)
5 _____ is sometimes said to be more characteristic of women than men but I think that this is a false stereotype. (FICKLE)
6 After her contribution to the discussion, Nick looked at her so _____ that she wished she had not spoken. (SCORN)

17.3 读下面的句子。然后用所给出的单词写出四个表达同样意思的句子。

I loathe people who talk with their mouth full.

1 revolt 2 aversion 3 abhorrent 4 repulsion

17.4 你会使用 C 中的哪个词描述以下情形？

1 someone who drives a pink Rolls Royce with fur seats
2 a girl who falls in and out of love with someone different every few weeks
3 someone who always laughs very loudly at the boss's jokes even if they're not funny
4 someone who never checks a piece of writing they have done and who never bothers to use a ruler to draw lines
5 a woman who only goes out with rich men because she is interested in their money
6 a flat with clothes all over the floor and dust on every surface
7 a piece of chicken cooked in water without any salt, pepper, herbs, spices or vegetables
8 a story that is full of clichés and has a predictable and sentimental plot

17.5 下列词汇表达的特性与 C 中某些词相似，但具有积极正面的含义。找出它们在 C 中的对应词。如需要可使用词典。

EXAMPLE nonchalant *sloppy*

1 traditional 3 meticulous 5 authoritative
2 childlike 4 casual 6 colourful

18 观察他人：外貌举止

A 与身材、体重和总体外观相关的词

词汇	释义	例句
scrawny	unattractively thin and bony-looking	He was too **scrawny** to be a football player.
lanky	very tall and thin, and usually moving awkwardly	A **lanky** teenager walked in.
gangling/ gangly	with long, thin arms and legs and rather awkward movements; often used of men and boys	A **gangling/gangly** youth approached him.
portly	with fat stomach and chest; often used humorously about older men	A **portly** figure stood near the ticket desk.
stout	with a quite fat, solid body; used of men and women	She's the **stout** woman wearing glasses, over there.
corpulent	fat (formal, literary word)	She introduced me to a rather **corpulent** gentleman.

B 面部特征与肤色

I've noticed Robert has put on weight; he's getting a **double chin** [fat around the chin]. His hair always looks so **unkempt** [untidy; scruffy]. I don't know why he doesn't look after it. His sister is the opposite: **never a hair out of place** [her hair is always neat and tidy]. He has a rather **swarthy** [dark-coloured, used about skin] complexion. His sister's complexion is more **sallow** [yellowish and unhealthy-looking]. He works incredibly hard; he often looks **haggard** [his face shows tiredness and age, with the skin hanging in folds] and exhausted.

C 面部表情

Look at those models **pouting**[1] for the photographers! [positioning their lips in a sexually attractive way]
If she doesn't get what she wants, she **pouts** for the rest of the day. [positions her lips in a look of annoyance]
You don't have to **grimace**[2] every time I eat raw garlic. I happen to think it's delicious. [make an expression of pain or strong dislike]
I arrived late and she just **scowled**[3] at me. [gave a bad-tempered, angry look]
He was **leering**[4] at us. I felt very uncomfortable and wanted to leave. [looking in an unpleasant, sexually interested way]

D 举手投足

I asked him for advice but he just **shrugged his shoulders**. [lifted his shoulders up and down to show he didn't know or couldn't answer]
He **folded his arms** [crossed one arm over the other close to his body] and **crossed his legs** [crossed one leg over the other while sitting] and waited for me to speak.
She **bites her nails** and **picks her nose** all the time. It drives me crazy!
She **clenched her fist** and told him to get out of the room at once. [closed her hand as if to hit him]
He just **tapped his fingers** and waited. [made quick, light hitting movements, e.g. on a table]

练习

18.1 根据记忆，将以下单词分为两组：分别表示 *fat* 和 *thin*。

stout　corpulent　scrawny　portly　gangling　lanky

18.2 用 18.1 中的词替换划线部分，改写句子。每个词使用一次，必要的话可对句子进行适当改动。

1 She looks as if she needs a good meal; her body is so thin and bony.
2 Marian and Frank are very suitable for each other; they're both very tall and thin individuals.
3 A rather round, overweight, middle-aged man offered to show us the way.
4 A very tall, thin, bony, awkward-looking boy carried our bags for us.
5 She's become quite fat these days, ever since she stopped playing tennis.
6 A rather overweight gentleman ascended the stairs, red-faced and breathless.

18.3 用左页 B 中的词汇造句，描述每幅图画。

1

2

3

4

18.4 这些人在做什么？

EXAMPLE He is grimacing.

1

3

5

7

2

4

6

8

18.5 回答问题。如需要可使用词典。

1 The verb *to pout* had two meanings on the opposite page. What were they?
2 If someone scowls at you, how are they probably feeling?
3 What is the difference between a *swarthy* complexion and a *sallow* complexion?
4 What do we mean when we talk about someone's *gait*?
a) their way of looking　b) their way of walking　c) their way of talking
5 Give two reasons why someone might scratch their head.
6 Why might someone raise their eyebrows?
7 When would you clench your fists?
8 When do people normally shrug their shoulders?
9 What might you do with your fingers if you were nervous or impatient?
10 In what situations do you (a) fold your arms (b) cross your legs?

19 观察他人：性格特征

A 表面行为：一些有用的形容词

词汇	释义	例句
impetuous	acts on a sudden idea without thinking first; generally negative	He's so **impetuous**; I wish he would consider things first.
impulsive	similar to *impetuous*, but can be used in a more positive way	His **impulsive** generosity led him to give away most of his money.
effusive	gives exaggerated expression of pleasure, praise or gratitude	She always gives you such an **effusive** welcome.
excitable	easily excited by things	He's a very **excitable** child; he needs to calm down.
pushy	always selfishly promoting one's own position or interests (informal)	She's so **pushy**, it's typical of her to demand an interview for the new job.
garrulous	talks too much, especially about unimportant things	Freddie's so **garrulous**; it's impossible to get any work done.
taciturn	reserved or says very little (generally negative)	I thought he was rather **taciturn** when I first met him. He hardly spoke.

B 社交能力

Jean's such an **introvert** [inward-looking and quiet], and her brother Mark is such an **extrovert** [outward-looking and sociable]. Strange, isn't it?
Mr Rogers is such a **diffident** man. [lacks confidence; has a low opinion of himself]
English people are traditionally thought of as rather **reserved**. [not immediately sociable]
Barbara tends to be rather **aloof**. I don't know if she's just shy. [unfriendly and not sociable]
My aunt Annie can be very **haughty** [unfriendly and thinks herself better than others] and **disdainful** [does not believe others deserve respect] at times, but she's lovely really.
I've always found Professor Mactoft very **unapproachable** [not easy to be sociable with or start a conversation with], but his colleague Dr O'Daly is very **approachable**.
Nancy is so **conceited** [thinks herself wonderful] and **self-important** [has an exaggerated sense of her importance], but Flora is such a **modest** person. [prefers not to exaggerate her own qualities]
My boss is such a **flirt**, though I would never call her that to her face. Nobody in the office is safe. [makes constant romantic approaches]

C 性格特征

Joss is a somewhat **naïve** person; he thinks love can solve all the world's problems. [/naɪˈiːv/ willing to believe simple things perhaps because of inexperience]
Telephone salespeople often take advantage of **gullible** people. [easily deceived]
My father was a very **conscientious** man; he never took time off work unless he was really sick. [/kɒnʃiˈenʃəs/ always took his work very seriously]
You are so **obstinate** [unwilling to change, despite persuasion] and **pig-headed**! [similar to *obstinate* but stronger, more disapproving] Why don't you listen when people give you good advice?
He's quite an **unscrupulous** character; I should be very careful if I were you. [lacking in moral principles, prepared to do very bad things]

练习

19.1 回答问题。

1 What is the opposite of *approachable*?
2 What word is a stronger way of saying *obstinate*?
3 If someone is *diffident*, do they have lots of or little self-confidence?
4 How could you describe a greeting that showed exaggerated pleasure?
5 Is *scrupulous* the opposite of *unscrupulous*? (Use a dictionary if necessary.)
6 Which tends to be more negative, *impetuous* or *impulsive*?

19.2 写出以下形容词的名词形式。如需要可使用词典。

adjective	*noun*
excitable	excitability
disdainful	
impetuous	
obstinate	
modest	

adjective	*noun*
gullible	
reserved	
garrulous	
conceited	
pig-headed	

19.3 用左页中的形容词填空，首字母已给出。

I remember my grandmother so well. Her i..... (1) generosity meant she was always giving money to beggars and other poor people. She was very a..... (2), never a..... (3), and would always chat to strangers; in fact she was quite an e..... (4) and would sing and dance at parties. But when it came to work she was very c..... (5) and never missed a day in forty years. She was a very determined person, indeed she could be quite o..... (6) and p..... (7), and could not be persuaded to do something she didn't want to. She was proud but never c..... (8) or s..... (9), talkative but never g..... (10), self-confident but never p..... (11), always wishing success for everyone else before herself. She was always d..... (12) of u..... (13) people, since she was a person of great moral principles.

19.4 以下句子包含左页中的词汇，但形式不同。使用左页中的词改写句子，如：使用名词代替形容词。

1 She's a flirtatious sort of person, and doesn't care who knows it.
2 He's always had a tendency to be introverted.
3 Larry shows a lot of reserve, while his sister is known more for her approachability.
4 I'm a person who buys on impulse rather than thinking about what I really need.
5 He was a man of great garrulousness, and taciturnity is a word I would never associate with him.

FOLLOW UP 试试你能在报刊的星座运势栏目中找到多少描述行为和性格特征的词语。

20 生与死：从摇篮到坟墓

A

DOCTORS praised the fortitude of a mother yesterday who **made medical history**[1] when she gave birth to triplets, one of whom had grown outside her **womb**[2]. The surgeons **delivered**[3] the triplets by **Caesarean section**[4] last Friday after it was discovered that one of the babies had created its own **placenta**[5] outside the womb, putting the life of the mother at risk. Doctors had discovered that the mother was expecting triplets earlier in the pregnancy but it was not until the 28th week that they realised that Ronan had developed outside the **uterus**[6] and was the result of an **ectopic pregnancy**[7]. The mother had **conceived**[8] naturally and was not taking any fertility drugs. The majority of ectopic pregnancies result in **termination**[9].

[1] did something medically very unusual
[2] woman's organ where egg develops into a baby
[3] helped mother to give birth
[4] operation in which mother's stomach and womb are cut to allow baby to be born
[5] tissue joining the **foetus**, i.e. the developing baby, to the mother and giving it food
[6] medical word for 'womb'
[7] when the egg develops outside the womb in the **fallopian tubes**, which link the ovaries to the womb
[8] become pregnant
[9] intentional ending of a pregnancy, usually by a medical operation (also called an abortion); a miscarriage is an early unintentional end of pregnancy

B

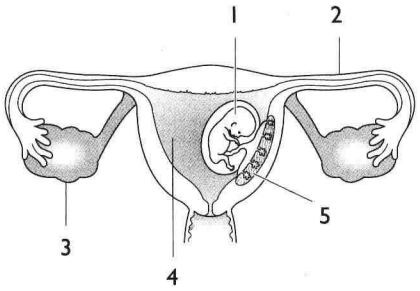
I come from a '**ripe old age**[1]' sort of family – I'm 70 now – and like the idea of living for a long time. I have an aunt, my **late**[2] mother's sister, who is 102. She lives in **sheltered accommodation**[3] but **has all her wits about her**[4]. Funerals used to be about people **mourning**[5]; now they are more likely to be a celebration of the person's life, which I think is much healthier. I haven't mentioned my funeral in my **will**[6] – I just want something absolutely plain and simple, a family-only **cremation**[7] service. I would like **my ashes**[8] **scattered**[9] on Ilkley Moor, near Leeds, where I spent a lot of time as a lad. I don't want any memorial stones. As for **obituaries**[10], I would just like them to be large. I just hope I don't die on the same day as a previous prime minister.

[1] living well into old age; usually used in the phrase **to live to a ripe old age**
[2] now dead
[3] special housing, usually for old people, where care staff also live
[4] is able to think and react quickly
[5] expressing their sadness after someone's death (the mourners have been **bereaved**)
[6] legal document saying what is to happen to your possessions after your death
[7] service where a dead body is burned (as opposed to a **burial**, where the body is buried in the ground)
[8] the remains of your body after cremation
[9] thrown (people sometimes have their ashes scattered in a place which has special associations for them)
[10] newspaper articles giving details about the lives of people who have died

C

表达"濒临死亡"的口语方式：**to be at death's door, to be on one's last legs**
死的委婉说法：**to pass away, to pass on**
新闻用语：**fatalities** [dead people], **perished** [died], **slaughtered** [violently killed]
法律用语：**the deceased** [the dead person], **to bequeath** [to leave something – **a bequest** – in a will], **to inherit** [to receive something – **an inheritance** – from someone who has died], to die **intestate** [without having made a will]

练习



20.1 将 A 中的词汇在图中标出。

uterus　placenta　fallopian tubes
foetus　ovaries

20.2 将生育的过程按顺序排列。

conception　delivery　fertilisation
labour　pregnancy

20.3 使用 B 和 C 中的词改正句子。

1 The whole country is in morning after the President's death.
2 I'd like my dust scattered at sea.
3 My extinct grandfather was a shepherd all his life.
4 I'm afraid her elderly godmother has just passed off.
5 My car is on its last leg.
6 My grandfather inherited me his gold watch in his will.
7 Mrs Wilson seems to have been at death's window for years.
8 Over two thousand people were perished in the earthquake.
9 It was amazing there was no fatality when the bridge collapsed.
10 My uncle left me a request of five hundred pounds in his will.

20.4 使用括号中的单词写出意思相同的句子。在某些情况下需要加上动词词尾。

1 Both my sisters are pregnant at the moment. (EXPECT)
2 Twins were born to Amanda Harrison last Monday. (BIRTH)
3 She has been taking medication to help her conceive. (FERTILITY)
4 All my grandparents lived to their 80s or 90s. (RIPE)
5 My grandmother is 90 but she is still very mentally alert. (WITS)
6 Unfortunately the deceased died intestate. (WILL)
7 John bequeathed £1,000 to each of his three nephews. (INHERIT)

20.5 从框中选择词语完成短文。

deceased　bequest　bequeathed　fatalities
inherited　slaughtered　perished　passed away

Yesterday was indeed a black day for our country. Twenty-five people ..... (1) in an earthquake. There were ten road accident ..... (2) and five more were ..... (3) in a terrorist bomb attack. Among the ..... (4) was one of our most popular young politicians.

I'm very sad to have to tell you that my grandfather ..... (5) last month. He was very kind and ..... (6) each of his grandchildren quite a large sum of money. I'd love to spend some of the money I ..... (7) on visiting you. He also left a very large ..... (8) to the university where he worked for most of his life.

21 闲暇时光：休闲与消遣

A 描述闲暇时光和业余爱好的形容词

形容词	释义	可能的语境
rewarding	gives you a lot of positive experiences	doing voluntary work, helping charities
fruitful	produces good results	collaborating/cooperating with someone in an activity
lucrative	makes a lot of money	selling your own arts or crafts, writing computer games
therapeutic /ˌθerəˈpjuːtɪk/	makes you healthy in body and/or mind	gardening, yoga, meditation
relaxing/calming	reduces stress, gives a peaceful feeling	reading, listening to music
time-consuming	takes a long time to do	being president of a club, being a member of a committee

I enjoyed being secretary of the sports club but it was very **time-consuming**. I had to give up two evenings a week to do it.
The conservation work I do is very **rewarding**. I feel I'm doing something good and useful.
Photography has been a **lucrative** pursuit for her. She often sells her pictures to magazines.
Painting is such a **therapeutic** activity. It makes me feel good, and teaches me patience.

B 描述人们消闲方式的非正式词汇

Bob's a real **culture vulture**; he goes to every theatre and art gallery he can find. [big fan of anything cultural]
I'm a bit of a **couch potato**: I spend hours every day just watching TV. [physically very inactive person]
Mary's a bit of a **dabbler**: she does a pastime for a couple of weeks, then she gets bored and starts something different. [person who never keeps doing one activity for long]
Francis is a real **doer**. He never sits round for long and always has some project or other. [person who believes in acting and doing things, not just thinking]
Laura's a **shopaholic**. She buys all sorts of things she doesn't need. [person addicted to shopping; compare **alcoholic**: addicted to alcohol]

C 与“参与活动”有关的词语搭配

Joe **is** heavily **into** downhill skiing these days. [informal: takes a great interest in / is very involved in]
I **went off** football and I started playing golf instead. [informal: stopped liking / lost interest in]
She **locks herself away** for hours in front of the computer and surfs the Internet every night. [isolates herself from the world]
He's totally **hooked on** motor racing these days. [informal: is addicted to]
What do you **get up to** at weekends, Michael? [informal: do]
Do you have a hectic social life? Yes, I have a pretty **full diary**. [a lot of commitments/ activities]

练习

21.1 使用左页 A 中的适当形容词填空。

1 I find writing poetry very _____. It helps me to get a truer understanding of myself and gives me a good feeling inside.
2 I enjoy selling the pictures I paint, but it's not very _____. I only made £300 last year.
3 Gardening is very _____. It reduces stress levels and calms you down.
4 I've had a _____ partnership with Jane for several years: she plays the piano and I play the violin. It's been very good for both of us.
5 Doing unpaid work at the hospital has been a _____ experience for me.
6 I would like to be on the club committee, but I've heard it's very _____, and I don't have a lot of free time.

21.2 猜谜，谜底是左页 B 中的词汇。

1 I am a vegetable that sits where humans sit. What am I?
2 I seldom sit and talk, I always act. What am I?
3 I am a bird that eats the flesh of art. What am I?
4 I do some of this and some of that, but never all of this or all of that. What am I?

21.3 回答问题。

1 What kind of obsessions or addictions do you personally have?
2 What was the word on the opposite page that meant 'a person who is obsessed with going out and buying things'?
3 Using the same construction as in question 2 above, what could you call a person who is obsessed with, or addicted to, the following?
a) working all the time b) sport c) eating chocolate
4 What are you? Invent a word for your obsession(s).

21.4 在下面的短文中找出：

1 three expressions meaning 'time when you aren't working'.
2 an expression meaning 'divided equally'.
3 an expression meaning 'reducing the amount of work needed to do something'.
4 two words that mean 'getting machines to do work for us'.
5 an expression meaning 'making many articles/goods at once'.

This is how one expert on leisure time sees things changing over a long period.

- **With the advent of agriculture 10,000 years ago, former hunters and gatherers gained ten per cent of their time off.**
- **By the 1770s, mechanisation increased leisure time to twenty-three per cent.**
- **By the 1990s, automation and mass production gave people forty-one per cent free time.**
- **By 2015, new technologies and labour-saving goods and services will split the week fifty/fifty between work and leisure.**

21.5 写出与划线部分同义的非正式表达式。

1 My daughter's <u>extremely interested in</u> folk music. She buys a lot of folk CDs.
2 He <u>isolates</u> himself in his darkroom and does photography for hours on end.
3 She's <u>totally addicted to</u> ice hockey these days. She watches every competition on TV.
4 I have a <u>long list of social appointments</u> for the rest of the month.
5 What do you <u>engage in</u> when you aren't working, Nigel?

22 流行风尚：服装与时尚

A 阅读下面的报摘，其中讨论了针对不同的人和场合所适用的着装。

Karen Hyland, 22, a self-confessed '**scruff**[1]', about to graduate from the University of East Anglia this summer, is among those desperately seeking a speedy transition from the campus uniform of jeans, trainers and sweatshirts to smart suit and shoes, without resorting to the **pastel**[2], **power outfits**[3] favoured by New Labour's fresh female intake. Short skirts are to be avoided, as are Eighties shoulder pads, but no one wants to look **frumpy**[4] and the student budget is inevitably tight. 'I have to create a new image for my proposed career in television,' explained Karen. 'Money aside, choosing the right **outfit**[5] for my pending interviews is giving me nearly as much worry as my finals.' What Karen needed was The Interview Suit – something smart, young and modern, which would be suitable for most office **dress codes**[6], while being individual enough to convince prospective employers that she could bring personality and flair to the job.

1 dirty and untidy person
2 in pale colours
3 formal clothes to make you seem powerful
4 old-fashioned and boring
5 set of clothes for a particular occasion
6 accepted way of dressing in a particular social group

B 以下是其他一些谈论着装的词汇和短语。

In offices many staff **dress down** on Fridays. [wear less formal clothes]
Sometimes an invitation or a restaurant or nightclub will ask people to dress in **smart-casual** clothes. [clothes that are informal but clean, tidy and stylish]
Clothes can be informally described as **dressy** [suitable for formal occasions], **skimpy** [close-fitting, using little material], **baggy** [loose, e.g. of sweater], **snazzy** [modern, stylish].
To be dressed to kill means to wear clothes intended to attract people's attention (sexually). Some rich people buy **designer (label) clothes** but most people prefer to buy clothes more cheaply **off the peg/rack** or **on the high street.**

C 以下是另外一些关于时尚的词汇和短语。

A few years ago denim jackets were **all the rage.** [very fashionable]
They were dressed in **the height of fashion.** [an extremely fashionable way]
The magazine has **up-to-the-minute** fashion articles. [dealing with the most recent trends]
The film **has set a new trend** for the leather trousers worn by the heroine. [started a new fashion]
If you are **ahead of your time,** you have new ideas or opinions before they are fashionable.
If a fashion/trend **catches on,** it becomes popular.
A **slave of/to fashion** is someone who is strongly influenced by fashion.

D 与服装有关的词汇和短语通常具有比喻意义。

to speak **off the cuff** [without having prepared anything]
to be hand in glove with someone [to have a close working relationship with someone]
cloak-and-dagger [involving secrecy and mystery]
to have/take the shirt off someone's back [someone's last possession]
to do something **on a shoestring** [spending as little as possible]
without frills [simple and plain]
to put someone in a straitjacket [restrict someone's freedom]
to wear the trousers (usually used of a woman) [to be the dominant partner in a marriage]

练习

22.1 回答关于 A 中文章的问题。

1 What did Karen mean by calling herself a 'scruff'?
2 What is the student 'uniform' said to consist of?
3 Is this 'uniform' typical for students in your country too?
4 Why does Karen want to change her style of dressing now?
5 What three things do newly-graduated students not want in their new clothes?
6 What does Karen want her 'interview suit' to be like and why?
7 What is the dress code in a workplace you are familiar with?
8 What sort of clothes do you think Karen should choose?

22.2 用 B 中的词或短语填空。

1 Goodness me, you're dressed to _____ ! Where on earth are you going?
2 The sign outside the bar said: 'Dress _____ – no jeans or trainers'.
3 I _____ at work when I'm not meeting clients.
4 I can't afford _____ clothes. I buy most of my outfits on the _____.
5 That's a very _____ shirt – those bright colours really suit you!
6 As soon as she gets home from work, she changes from her smart suit into tracksuit bottoms and a comfortable, _____ , old jumper.

22.3 回答下列关于时尚的问题。

1 What is all the rage in your country at the moment?
2 What was the height of fashion five years ago?
3 What do you think about people who are a slave to fashion?
4 How interested are you in being up-to-the-minute with fashion?
5 What sort of people start new fashion trends?

22.4 使用 D 中的短语改写句子。

1 I'm no good at speaking if I haven't had time to prepare what I want to say.
2 Although he's the head of a large company, his wife is the boss at home.
3 Have you any idea what all these secret and mysterious meetings at work are about?
4 Be careful what you say to Helen – she works very closely with the boss.
5 I wouldn't invite them to stay if I were you – they'll take everything you've got to give before you know where you are.
6 The new legislation has really restricted our freedom.

22.5

下面是其他一些服装词汇的比喻用法。解释划线部分词语的字面意思和比喻意思。如需要可使用词典。

1 The hotel provides a cheap, no frills service.
2 We wanted to leave but were hemmed in by the crowd and couldn't escape.
3 Phil's got so many books – his room is bursting at the seams.
4 The negotiations have been cloaked in secrecy ever since they began.
5 If she wins the prize again this year, it'll be a real feather in her cap.

22.6 你想通过你的着装体现什么形象？就此写一段话。

FOLLOW UP

访问时尚杂志 *Vogue* 的网站 www.vogue.co.uk，找出关于最新流行时尚的词汇。记下你所见到的每一个有用的词汇。

23 家居风格 / 生活方式

A 家居风格

A **squat** /skwɒt/ is an empty building where people start living without the owner's permission.
A **hovel** /'hɒvəl/ is a very poor, dirty house or flat in a bad condition.
A **pied à terre** /pjeɪd/ɑ:/'teə/ is a small flat or house in a city owned or rented by people in addition to their main home and used when they are visiting the city.
A **penthouse** is a luxury flat at the top of a building.
Council housing is provided by the state for people who cannot afford to buy their own homes.
High-rise flats are flats in a tall, modern building with a lot of floors.
A **granny flat** is a set of rooms for an elderly person, connected to a relative's house.

B 当代生活方式

Today many people want to get out of **the rat race** [unpleasant way in which people struggle competitively for wealth or power] and live a less stressful or less conventional lifestyle.
Feng Shui: an ancient Chinese philosophy which states that the position of buildings and the arrangement of objects in the home affects the health and well-being of people living there
minimalism: a style which involves using the smallest possible range of materials, colours, etc. and only the most simple shapes or designs
post-modernism: a style of architecture, the arts, etc. popular in the 1980s and 1990s which includes features from several different periods
New Age: a way of life and thinking which developed in the late 1980s and includes a wide range of beliefs and activities, e.g. astrology, alternative medicine, that are not accepted by most people and are a reaction against modern scientific and economic developments
subsistence farming: where people live by growing just enough food for their own family

C 与家居和生活方式有关的习语和比喻

表达式	释义	例句
a household word/name	something everyone knows	Nike has become **a household name**.
a drink on the house	a free drink	The restaurant owner offered us **a bottle of wine on the house**.
home truths	information that is true but not pleasant or welcome	It's time he was told some **home truths** about the way he's been behaving!
nothing to write home about	nothing special	The town is OK but **nothing to write home about**.
hit home	become fully understood or fully felt	The difficulty of managing without a regular salary **is hitting home** now.
That's the story of my life.	That's what always happens to me. (used humorously)	Everyone got a pay rise the week after I resigned. **That's the story of my life!**
have the time of your life	have a wonderful time	Paul**'s having the time of his life** in Canada.
get a new lease of life	become more energetic and active than before	When Sue moved jobs she seemed to **get a new lease of life**.
a dog's life	a very unhappy and difficult life	Reg said he led **a dog's life** in the army.

练习

23.1 根据 A 中所提到的家居住所填写表格。

accommodation	*What kind of person lives there?*	*Would you like to live there? Why/Why not?*
squat	a homeless person or someone with very little money	I wouldn't like it because you never know when you might be evicted.
pied à terre		
council housing		
granny flat		
high-rise flat		
hovel		
penthouse		

23.2 以下是 B 中所描述的哪种生活方式？

1 ensuring no chairs have their back to a door
2 working in the office from 8 a.m. to 8 p.m. and at weekends
3 having all one's flat painted white with no more than one picture on any wall
4 owning a cow and growing all the vegetables you need
5 living in a caravan, using traditional herbs for medicinal purposes and planning your life in accordance with an astrological chart

23.3 注意 B 中描述当代生活趋势的词汇。你认为什么样的人会被这些生活方式所吸引？你自己对这些生活方式有什么看法？

EXAMPLE *Feng Shui principles would appeal to people who are strongly aware of their surroundings and the influence that they have on them. The principles sound nice to me but I am sceptical about whether they are really true and I don't think I could be bothered rearranging all my belongings.*

从 B 中选出 3 个词，自己撰写一段文字。

23.4 参照 C，填空完成句子。

1 Because it was my birthday, the barman offered me a drink on the _____.
2 Mandy's so selfish, she deserves to be told a few _____.
3 The party was all right, I suppose, but nothing to _____ home about.
4 The handsome new man at work is already married but that's the _____ of my life!

23.5 选择 C 中的习语替换句中划线部分。

1 We <u>had the most marvellous time</u> on holiday this year.
2 As soon as spring comes I feel as if I'm <u>becoming energetic and active again</u>.
3 The problems caused by the floods are only <u>making themselves fully felt</u> now.
4 I imagine that being a servant in the past was <u>very hard and tedious</u>.
5 All over the world <u>everybody knows about</u> McDonald's.

24 社交网络

A 交际

socialising（交际，交友）就是指和他人一起度过闲暇时光。它有很多正式或非正式的方式。以下是几种不同的交际方式。

a housewarming (party): a party to celebrate moving to a new house or flat
a launch (party): a party to celebrate the publication of a new book or product
a fancy dress party: a party where everyone dresses up in costume as other people
a stag party: a party before a wedding for the future husband and his male friends
a girls' night out / a hen party: an evening just for female friends spent at a restaurant, theatre or club, perhaps; a hen party is usually just before one of them gets married
a reception: a formal party, e.g. after a wedding or to meet an important visitor
Note that the phrase, **the wedding party**, usually refers to the main group of close family and friends at a wedding, rather than to the reception after the wedding.
A black tie or **a white tie** event suggests a formal party at which men have to wear black bow ties or white bow ties respectively.

B 社交网

下面是一段对社会交际活动的介绍。

Socialising is meeting people purely for pleasure but **networking** is making contacts that will be useful to one's business or career. In the past career networking in England usually happened simply through the **old school tie** or **old boy network** [contacts made by the children of the traditional ruling class while at expensive private schools]. Now people are perhaps rather more **pro-active** [taking action yourself rather than waiting for something to happen] in trying to make useful contacts. They may try to **put themselves about** [informal: make themselves visible in the hope of being noticed by someone important and, thus, help themselves to **climb the career ladder**]. Networking involves such things as **exchanging (business) cards** and promising to **do lunch** sometime.

to hobnob 通常含有负面含义，指与重要的人物套近乎。
I saw Dick **hobnobbing** with the boss after work yesterday.
to rub shoulders with 是一个非正式的表达，指与大人物"混"在一起。
I hear **you've been rubbing shoulders with** royalty!

C 非正式表达方式

以下是一些与交际有关的非正式表达方式。

I don't like the people Rick **hangs out with / knocks around with.** [spends social time with]
Would you like to come to **a bash/do/get-together/booze-up** we're having on Saturday? [a party; the last expression is very colloquial and suggests that a lot of alcohol will be drunk]
(Said to your host) I hope I'm not **outstaying my welcome.** [staying too long]
Sandy's a real **party animal** [someone who loves going to parties] but her boyfriend can be a bit of a **party pooper** [someone who spoils parties by being disapproving or miserable].
Do you fancy going **clubbing** this evening? [going to one or more nightclubs]
Let's go out **on the town.** [enjoy the entertainments in a town, e.g. the bars, pubs and clubs]
Mandy's very **chummy/pally** with the boss's wife. [friendly]
I hate it at my new job – everyone's so **cliquey.** [a **clique** is a disapproving word for a small group of people who spend time together and do not allow others to join them]
Are they really **an item?** [having a romantic relationship]
If he ever **stood me up** [failed to turn up for a date], I'd **drop him** [end our relationship].
They've **gone on a pub crawl.** [gone to spend an evening going to several different pubs]

练习

24.1 参看 A，回答下列问题。

What kind of party you might be invited to if...

1 a friend of yours is about to get married and is having a party before the wedding.
2 you are going to help a friend celebrate on the day of their wedding.
3 some friends have just moved into a new flat.
4 a friend has just had a book published.
5 your local council is arranging for important people in the area to meet a visiting dignitary.
6 you have friends who love dressing up as characters from famous films.

24.2 使用 B、C 中与划线部分同义的词汇改写句子。

1 It's always good to see Hugh but somehow he always manages to outstay his welcome.
2 You wouldn't believe it but Helen and Mark are now an item!
3 I don't really approve of the way Erica puts herself about, but I'm sure it'll help her to make a success of going freelance.
4 Don't forget your old friends when your film becomes a hit and you're rubbing shoulders with the rich and famous.
5 I'm going to a birthday bash this weekend. Should be fun.
6 We must invite Jane to our do. She's a real party animal!
7 Mike'll want to go on a pub crawl as soon as his exams finish.
8 Let's have a night on the town as the children are with their grandparents tonight.

24.3 回答下列与左页中词汇有关的问题。

1 Who would you call a party animal and who would you call a party pooper and why? Which of these are you more likely to be called and why?
2 Does the old school tie network have any significance in your country?
3 If not, are there any other networks which can help people up the career ladder?
4 In which sort of careers do you think it is important to network?
5 It's Friday night. Would you prefer to go clubbing or to go on a pub crawl?
6 Which of the types of party listed in A have you personal experience of? How did you enjoy them?
7 If you describe an atmosphere as cliquey, do you like the atmosphere? Why / Why not?
8 Have you ever been stood up? What happened?

24.4 填空，每空一词。

Jeremy in our marketing department didn't go to a ..... (1) school so he didn't have access to any of the privileges offered by the old ..... (2) network. The people he ..... (3) about with when he was at school mostly took quite menial jobs or had long periods of unemployment. However, Jeremy spent a few months doing work experience in a large bank. There he became ..... (4) with several people who later helped him to further his business career. He also became very skilled at ..... (5) himself about and this has also stood him in good stead over the years. He's very good at organising get-..... (6) at his home for influential people. He seems to get a kick out of rubbing ..... (7) with important people.

FOLLOW UP 你可以多听人们对英语电影和电视的闲谈。网站 **www.joblo.com/moviescript.htm** 中收录了相当广泛的电影剧本。选择一个你感兴趣的，记下你见到的有用短语。

25 表演艺术：评论与批评

A 描述作品与演出的有用形容词

形容词	释义	例句
overrated	not as good as people say	It's an **overrated** film/play.
hackneyed	done so often it is boring	The plot was so **hackneyed**!
impenetrable	complex and impossible to understand	His films are **impenetrable**.
disjointed	unconnected and not in a clear order	The play was **disjointed** and difficult to follow.
far-fetched	impossible to believe	The film *Green Aliens from Mars* was a bit **far-fetched.**
risqué /rɪ'skeɪ/	slightly immoral and likely to shock some people	The play was a bit **risqué**, and some religious leaders criticised it.
gripping	exciting and keeping your attention the whole time	It was a **gripping** film from start to finish.
harrowing	extremely upsetting	It was a **harrowing** documentary about war and refugee camps.
moving	making you feel strong emotion, especially pity or sadness	It's a **moving** story about a child whose mother dies.
memorable	you remember it long after	That was a **memorable** performance.
understated	done or expressed in a simple but attractive style	The whole ballet is really **understated**.

B 演出的成功与失败

His latest opera was **panned** [very negatively criticised] by the critics, which is strange, since all his previous works have been universally **lauded** [highly praised].
The play **bombed** in London's West End, but was more successful in New York. [was a failure]
Her latest CD has won three **awards.** [prizes/honours, e.g. 'Best CD of the Year']
Anthony O'Donnell won the award for 'Best **up-and-coming** actor' of 2001. [likely to become very famous or successful]
The critics generally agree that her new symphony is a **masterpiece.** [very great work of art]
Novak **was** definitely **miscast** as the father in that film. [was the wrong person for the role]
She has become **typecast** as a middle-aged mother. [always associated with that type of role]
He was given several **encores** for his performance of the violin concerto. [/'ɒŋkɔːz/ calls from the audience to repeat it]
She got a **standing ovation** for her performance of Juliet in *Romeo and Juliet*. [the audience stood up and applauded]

C 与表演有关的名词

I liked her **interpretation** of the song 'Yesterday'. [way of understanding and performing it]
I prefer the original **version** by the Beatles. [one of several performances that exist]
He gave an excellent **rendition** of Hamlet's speech. [performance on a specific occasion]
The actor's **portrayal** of the mother in the film was very tender. [the picture she created]

练习

25.1 凭记忆写出 A 中提到的与以下词汇意思相反的形容词。

1 credible/believable
2 original/novel
3 underrated
4 exaggerated
5 coherent/smooth-flowing

25.2 使用 A 中其他的形容词替换以下句中的划线部分。如有需要可以进行改动。

1 The musical shocked some people because they thought it was immoral and was attacked by several politicians and religious figures.
2 Her performance was one of those you will never forget, simply marvellous.
3 I can't remember the last time I saw such a film that keeps you in suspense and totally absorbed all the time.
4 It was a play that aroused very deep emotions in me.
5 It's a film that is difficult to watch without getting very upset.
6 Some of his films are absolutely impossible to understand because they are so dense and obscure.

25.3 回答问题。

1 Would you like to go to a play that was universally lauded by all the critics? Why / Why not?
2 Good performers deserve an encore. True? Would you give one?
3 Would you like to see a film that was panned by the cinema critics? Why / Why not?
4 What are the top Hollywood awards for films normally called? What is their more correct name?
5 Do most actors like to become typecast? Why / Why not?
6 A standing ovation shows that the audience disliked the performance. True? Why / Why not?

25.4 阅读短文，划出其中符合下列定义的词汇或短语。如需要可使用词典。

1 the way an actor creates a picture of a person
2 he/she is the wrong actor for that part
3 a film/book/play that keeps you in suspense
4 keep you in suspense / constantly excited
5 up-and-coming
6 a film which huge numbers of people will go and see
7 a police or crime theme
8 a very great work of art

Cliffhanger not to be missed

In this latest blockbuster cops-and-robbers movie from the Holdart Studios, budding Hollywood star Florida Packline plays country-boy Ricky Smart, who gets involved with a gang of criminals intent upon stealing ten million dollars from a Chicago bank. However, their plans are spoilt by the discovery of a dead body in the tunnel they are digging through to the bank. Who is the mystery dead woman? Is she a stranger, or someone from Ricky's own past? Packline's portrayal of the confused boy from a small town caught up in big city crime is convincing, but Julia Fischer as his long-lost sister is somewhat miscast. Not a masterpiece, but it will certainly keep you on the edge of your seat.

26 雕塑艺术

A

阅读这段文章节选，它表达了英国公众对当代艺术的态度。

■ You have heard it so often, that all those modern artists are only **pulling the wool over** the public's **eyes**[1], and it is easy to laugh, in a superior kind of way, both at the more extreme examples of contemporary art and at the apparent **philistinism**[2] of its **detractors**[3]. But, almost by stealth, the British public has discovered it perhaps does like modern art after all. Has the public **wised up**[4], or has the art **dumbed down**[5]? If people find that contemporary art is not so difficult or complicated or highbrow and impenetrable as they once thought, it could also mean that art is somehow becoming less intelligent, less sophisticated than it was.

1 deceiving
2 inability to appreciate art or culture (disapproving)
3 critics
4 become more sophisticated
5 become less intellectual (usually to appeal to a mass audience)

B

下文来自同一篇文章，表达了从历史角度看待当代艺术的态度。

■ The current enthusiasm for modern art – there are more people visiting **Tate Modern**[1] every week than there were people in Florence at the height of the **Renaissance**[2] – appears to be more than a **fad**[3]. If people got nothing from what they see there, they would **vote with their feet**[4]. At the end of the 19th century a lot of people had problems with **Impressionism**[5], and, later, when confronted with **cubist**[6] paintings, the gallery-going public had problems with those too. The **surrealists**[7] were often **deemed**[8] mad, but liking **surrealism**[9] is perfectly sane and acceptable, and it appears everywhere, from posters to advertising campaigns. As a result, we are all now more **visually literate**[10] than before, more **immune to**[11] shocks, **inured to**[12] surprises.

1 new modern art gallery in London
2 period of new interest in the arts in Europe in the 14th to 16th centuries, especially in Italy
3 a short enthusiasm for something (disapproving)
4 stop coming
5, 6, 7, 9 types of artist and schools of art of the last 150 years
8 considered (formal)
10 educated with regard to art
11, 12 not affected by

C

下面是一些可用于评论艺术的词汇。括号中是其反义词。

highbrow: intended for educated, intelligent people, disapproving (**lowbrow**)
impenetrable: extremely difficult to understand (**transparent**)
sophisticated: showing advanced skills and understanding (**primitive**)
challenging: demanding considerable effort to be understood (**undemanding**)
dazzling: inspiring great admiration because it is brilliant in some way (**pedestrian**)
evocative: calling up images and memories (**uninspiring**)
exquisite: having rare beauty or delicacy (**clumsy**)
intriguing: interesting because it is strange or mysterious (**dreary**)
peerless: better than any other (**run-of-the-mill**)
tongue-in-cheek: not intended to be taken seriously despite appearing serious (**earnest**)

D

与艺术有关的词汇经常用于比喻。

The writer **paints** his hero in a fascinating **light**. Minor characters are more **shadowy** but they are also **depicted** quite powerfully even though the **focus** is, inevitably, on the two central characters. These are **portrayed** with great sensitivity. The heroine is particularly **colourful** and we see how her character is **shaped** and **moulded** by events. Some say the author **illustrates** his **motifs** in a **black-and-white** fashion but the **images** he creates to **illuminate** the evils of slavery will remain with me forever.

练习

26.1 根据 A、B 中的短文判断以下的叙述是否正确。

1 Most modern art is amusing.
2 Attitudes to modern art are changing in Britain.
3 People may be becoming more sophisticated or art may be becoming simpler.
4 Not many people visit modern art exhibitions in London these days.
5 People have often found it hard to accept new trends in art.
6 People don't have so much exposure to art these days.

26.2 用 A 或 B 中的词或短语完成下列句子。

1 Although some people liked the exhibition there were far more _____ than enthusiasts among the reviewers.
2 When the price of cinema tickets doubled, the public simply _____ and audiences declined dramatically.
3 Politicians have accused TV companies of _____ their news broadcasts with the result that there is less public interest in political issues.
4 Every year there seems to be some new food _____ that is quickly forgotten when the next thing comes on the scene.
5 Rick managed to _____ his wife's _____ for several years before she found out about his affair.
6 After spending such a long time camping, they have become _____ to the discomfort of living in such a confined space.

26.3 将 C 中的 20 个形容词归入以下三类：

usually positive associations *usually negative associations* *negative or positive associations*

26.4 选择 C 中每对正反义词中的一个，想一想可以用它来形容哪项艺术作品（任何种类的）。写一个句子解释为什么你认为它适用。

EXAMPLE I think that the poetry of the 17th century English poet, John Milton, could be called highbrow because you need to be able to understand his classical allusions.

26.5 圈出划线部分中正确的词，完成句子。

1 I think that the artist's cartoons are usually rather highbrow/dreary/lowbrow as they are intended to appeal to a mass audience.
2 When an artist sent in an ordinary red brick to an exhibition, no one was sure whether it was impenetrable/run-of-the-mill/tongue-in-cheek or intended as a serious statement.
3 Although these cave paintings were made thousands of years ago they are in some ways very primitive/pedestrian/sophisticated.
4 I find those painter's pictures of dull grey street scenes rather dreary/peerless/dazzling.
5 The design on that china plate is earnest/exquisite/transparent – however did they manage to paint such fine detail?
6 Although his photographs are quite challenging/evocative/intriguing, it is worth making the effort to understand them.

FOLLOW UP

网址 **www. museumspot. com** 提供了全世界范围的艺术馆和博物馆的丰富链接。访问这个网站及你感兴趣的链接。记下你见到的任何有用的词汇。

27 书籍

A 书籍简介（blurbs）

blurb 是通常印刷在书籍封底的短文，介绍本书内容，有时也包括内容短评。下面有一些例子。

◆ *Woman of Snow* is a **poignant chronicle**[1] of childhood in a small American town. Nora Delaye is the youngest child in a ...

Barass's third novel, this is a **compelling tale**[2] of mystery, love and betrayal in a **lugubrious setting**[3] reminiscent of the ...

A page-turner[4] full of brilliant moments of insight and an unparalleled depth of feeling, this is an **enigmatic tale**[5] that unfolds in ...

A **macabre**[6] and **chilling**[7] account of an unsolved murder that tears a village apart ...

A **breathtaking achievement**[8], a journey of self-discovery that enchants and saddens, with a combination of **wry humour**[9] and **evocative scenes**[10] of life in ...

[1] /ˈpɔɪnjənt/ a moving and sad description of a sequence of events
[2] powerful story that keeps you interested
[3] rather dark and gloomy setting/situation
[4] very interesting and engaging story
[5] mysterious story
[6] /məˈkɑːbrə/ often cruel or disgusting, concerned with death
[7] causing great fear
[8] amazing achievement
[9] humour in the face of a bad situation
[10] scenes which arouse memories or images

B 一些相对少见的书籍类型

类型	释义
journal	– a written record of what you have done each day – also means an academic publication containing articles reporting research, new theories, etc., published at regular intervals (e.g. every three months)
memoirs	written record of a person's own life, typically by a politician or military figure
anthology	collection of, for example, poems or short stories by different authors
compendium	collection of detailed, concise information about a particular subject
manual	usually a technical book with instructions, for example, a computer manual
logbook	book that records events and times, etc., for example, all the journeys made by a lorry or ship

C 其他谈论书籍的表达方式

I'm reading a book about the history of Ireland. It's **compulsive reading** [formal: difficult to stop once you've started]. *Or* It's one of those books you just **can't put down** [informal].

Bertram's latest novel is not a difficult book; in fact it's rather **lightweight** [not complex; slightly negative connotation]. It's good **bedtime reading** [nice to read in bed]. His last one was **heavy going** [difficult to read] and I just couldn't **get into** it [become involved/engage with].

练习

27.1 左页的哪类书籍符合以下的描述？

1 It's by General Rogers who led the allied forces during the recent war.
2 It's so badly written I don't know how anyone could learn how to use the video camera by reading it.
3 I recommend it. If you want to read a typical selection of English poets, it's excellent.
4 The latest issue contains a paper by Professor Colin Frith, in which he presents a new theory of the human mind.

27.2 用 C 中的词或短语改写句子，描述阅读书籍的经验感受。

1 I just could not seem to become involved in the story, so I stopped reading it.
2 It's not very serious, and it's easy to read.
3 It's dense and very difficult to read.
4 Take it to bed with you; it's just right when you're settling down at night. All the time I was reading it I just couldn't wait to get to the next page.
5 You find yourself wanting to read more, it's so fascinating.

27.3 根据括号中的意思，选用左页中的适当形容词填空。试着凭记忆完成。

1 The story takes place against a rather _____ background in 18th century London. (dark, mysterious)
2 It's full of _____ comedy and satire. (humour despite a bad situation)
3 The book is a _____ documentation of abuse in a prison. (frightening)
4 The novel is full of _____ passages depicting life in Scotland at the turn of the 19th century. (arousing memories or images)
5 It's a very _____ novel; you never really know what is happening until right at the end. (mysterious/puzzling)
6 The novel is a _____ portrayal of life in a coal-mining community during the time of the General Strike of 1926. (moving and very sad)
7 John Farr's latest novel is a _____ masterpiece. (very impressive/great)
8 *House of the Dead* is a _____ story of torture and death in a medieval castle. (cruel and dark)

27.4 写一段 50–60 字的短文，描述你最近读过的一本书。最少要使用 6 个本单元中所学的新词。

27.5 将左侧对书中内容的描述与右侧的书籍类型对应起来。

1 section on 'troubleshooting' [problem-solving]	compendium
2 concise information about a subject	journal
3 record of a recent examination or test of a lorry	manual
4 day-to-day record of life during a war in 1776	logbook

27.6 下面是某些名人对书籍的评述。你认为表达了什么观点？

1 'All books are divisible into two classes, the books of the hour, and the books of all time.' (*John Ruskin: British philosopher*)
2 'Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be chewed and digested.' (*Francis Bacon: British philosopher and essayist*)

28 民以食为天

A

这段文章是关于食品标签所用的词汇的。

As a food label is often nothing more than an advert to tempt you to buy the product, you should pay particular attention to the choice of words used. Always watch out for the word 'flavour', as this may mean that the product contains **synthetic**[1] ingredients. Chocolate-*flavour* topping, for example, will not contain chocolate, even though chocolate-*flavoured* topping will contain a small percentage – so read carefully. Many manufacturers also use a range of meaningless descriptions. Feel-good words, such as '**wholesome**[2]', 'farmhouse', 'original' and 'traditional' do not mean anything. Other words such as 'farm fresh' and 'country fresh' also intentionally blur the true nature of a product's source. 'Fresh egg pasta', for example, means that the pasta was indeed made with real and not powdered eggs, but maybe months ago. Words that you *can* trust are 'organic', '**wholemeal**[3]', 'natural mineral water', '**Fair Trade**[4]', '**free-range**[5]' and the 'V' vegetarian symbol.

Consumer pressure over **GM**[6] foods has led to better labelling but **loopholes**[7] still exist. GM product **derivatives**[8], such as starches, sugars, fats and oils where no genetically modified protein or DNA material still remains, still go unlabelled in many products such as cereal bars, fish fingers, jellies and vegetable burgers.

Take particular care over low-fat and low-sugar products. Guidelines state that 'low-fat' foods must not have more than 5 per cent fat, while 'reduced fat' means that the total fat content is 25 per cent less than the standard versions of the same product. The terms 'light' or 'lite' are meaningless since they could refer to texture, fat content, sugar content or even colour.

[1] made from artificial substances
[2] good for you, physically or morally
[3] containing all the natural substances in the grain with nothing removed
[4] refers to products such as coffee, tea or chocolate marketed in such a way that the small farmers in developing countries who produce them get the profits rather than large multinational companies
[5] relating to farm animals that are not kept in cages
[6] genetically modified, i.e. the genes (DNA) of a natural product have been altered in some way
[7] ways of getting round regulations (usually because they have not been written in a precise enough way)
[8] things produced from

B

以食物作比喻

Inviting Joe and his ex-wives to the same party was a **recipe for** disaster. [situation sure to lead to]
The film has **all the ingredients of** a box office hit. [all the necessary characteristics]
Let's invite lots of friends to our wedding to **dilute** the relatives a bit. [make less dominant]
I'm not going to call him. I'm going to let him **stew** for another few days at least. [worry or suffer especially about something you think is his fault]
The police **grilled** the suspect for hours, but eventually let him go. [asked a lot of questions]
I'm sure this is going to be another of his **half-baked** schemes that never comes to anything. [unrealistic or not thought through properly]
Let's hire a karaoke machine – that'll **spice up** the office party. [make more lively]
Rick has started hanging around with some **unsavoury** characters. [unpleasant, morally offensive]
They started their business with high hopes but things soon **turned sour**. [went wrong]
Let's go for a coffee and you can tell me all the **juicy** gossip. [exciting and interesting]

练习

28.1 回答关于 A 中文章的问题。如需要可使用词典。

1 Are food labels meant to provide information or to advertise the products?
2 Why do manufacturers try to hide the fact that foods contain synthetic ingredients?
3 In the phrase *fresh egg pasta*, does *fresh* refer to *egg* or *pasta*?
4 What do *organic*, *wholemeal* and *vegetarian* mean when describing food?
5 What does *GM* stand for? Explain what it means.
6 What is DNA?
7 *Cereal bars*, *fish fingers* and *vegetable burgers* are all types of fast food. Describe them.
8 This text is from a British magazine, so what does the word *jelly* mean? What would it mean in a US text?
9 How much fat would there be in *low-fat* cheese? And how much would there be in *reduced fat* cheese?

28.2 你认为以下食品哪个更美味？为什么？

1 strawberry flavoured yoghurt or strawberry flavour yoghurt
2 orange drink or orange juice
3 raspberry jam or raspberry flavoured jam
4 farmhouse chicken or free-range chicken

28.3 如同文中所提到的，*light* 是个具有多重意义的词。解释下列短语，并尽量给出 *light* 的反义词。

1 light coloured hair
2 a light wind
3 a light comedy
4 a light sleeper
5 to light a fire
6 a light aircraft
7 the light of my life
8 Got a light?
9 to light on the solution
10 In the light of the reports ...

28.4 解释在 B 中用作比喻的词的本义。

EXAMPLE recipe – instructions for cooking a dish

28.5 运用 B 中的比喻改写句子。

1 My mother asked me a lot of very searching questions about where I had been last night.
2 Let's make the evening more interesting by organising some party games.
3 What's been happening while I was on holiday? You must fill me in on all the interesting gossip.
4 Don't tell her that her briefcase has been found. Let her suffer for a bit longer – perhaps she'll be more careful with it in future.
5 It might be a good idea to make these investments a bit less dominant in your portfolio by exchanging some of them for others in a different line of business.
6 They lived together happily for many years, but things changed for the worse when his mother came to live with them.
7 Patience combined with interest in your pupils is bound to lead to success for a teacher.
8 Lance's ideas are never thought through properly.

FOLLOW UP

www.bbc.co.uk/food 是一个食谱总汇网站，试试在里面找到其他食品类的词汇。选择一个你感兴趣的菜谱，并记下新词汇。

29 这顿算我的：请客与在外用餐

A 付账

We'll **split the bill,** shall we? [each person will pay for him/herself]
Lunch **is on me** today. [informal: I am paying for you]
Will you **join us** [come with us] for dinner at the City Plaza hotel? We'd like you to **be our guest.** [formal: we will pay]
Let me **get this.** [informal: pay the bill this time]
I was **wined and dined** every night by our New York office. [invited out to restaurants]

B 服务态度

A new Italian restaurant called Bella Roma has just opened in the High Street, and we went there the other night to try it. I couldn't help comparing it to the Casa Italia, where we ate last week. In the Bella Roma, the service was **impeccable**[1] and quick; at the Casa Italia it's always a bit **sluggish**[2]. In the new place the waiters are **courteous**[3] and friendly without being **overbearing**[4]. In the other place they tend to be **sullen**[5] and the service is rather **brusque**[6], which I find very **off-putting**[7]. But at Bella Roma they'll **go out of their way**[8] to give you what you want.

1 perfect, cannot be faulted
2 rather slow
3 polite
4 too confident / too inclined to tell people what to do
5 bad-tempered / unwilling to smile
6 quick and rude
7 makes you feel you do not want to go there again
8 do everything possible

C 饮食偏好

I **have a sweet tooth** and can never say no to cakes or biscuits. [love sweet things]
I won't have dessert, thanks. You're lucky being so slim; but I'm afraid I have to **count the calories** / I have to be a bit **calorie-conscious** these days. [be careful how many calories I eat]
I like to end the meal with something **savoury** like cheese. [salty in flavour or with herbs]
Ben's a bit of a **fussy eater.** [person who has very particular demands when eating]
No, thanks, I won't have wine. I'm **teetotal.** [never drink alcohol]
Before I book the restaurant, do you have any particular **dietary requirements**? [formal: special needs or things someone cannot eat]
I won't have any more wine thanks. I don't want to **overdo it.** [eat or drink too much]

D 在家招待

A: Why not come home and eat with us? You'll have to **take pot luck.** [eat what we're eating, nothing special]
B: Thank you. Shall I **bring a bottle**? [usually means a bottle of wine]

A: Should I wear a suit on Friday?
B: No, no, it isn't a **dinner party** [rather formal dinner with guests], it's just an **informal get-together.** [informal group of people meeting for a meal/drinks/etc.]

A: Does anyone want **seconds**? [a second helping/serving of a dish]
B: Oh, yes please. It was delicious.

A: Can I pour you some juice? **Say when.** [tell me when I have served enough]
B: **When!** [That's enough, thanks.]
A: Help yourself to some **nibbles.** [things like nuts, crisps, etc., before a meal]

A: We leave at six. We can **grab a bite to eat** on the way. [have a quick meal]
B: Or we could get a **takeaway** when we get there. [ready-cooked meal bought to take home]

练习

29.1 使用 A 中的表达式替换划线部分。

1 No, please. Put your credit card away. I'm inviting you for dinner. (Use an informal expression.)
2 Let me pay for this one. You can pay next time. (Use an informal expression.)
3 Visitors to the company's head office in London are always taken out to the best restaurants. (Use a phrase with two words which rhyme with each other.)
4 Fancy coming with us for lunch tomorrow?
5 When we eat out as a group, each person usually pays for their own food and drink. (Use a shorter expression meaning the same.)
6 I'd like to pay for you at the theatre tomorrow night. (Use a formal expression.)

29.2 使用左页中有关饮食偏好的表达式替换划线部分。

1 I never drink alcohol. (Use an adjective.)
2 I don't really like sweet things. (Use an idiom.)
3 Are there things you can't or mustn't eat? (Use a formal/polite expression.)
4 Just a small portion for me, please. I don't want to eat too much. (Use an expression that means the same.)
5 She's become very careful about how many calories she's eating. (Give two different ways of saying the same thing.)
6 Sasha is such a choosy person when it comes to food. It's difficult to find things she likes. (Use an expression that means the same.)

29.3 给出左页中与下列词组意义相反的词汇。

1 a sweet dish
2 a friendly waiter
3 a formal gathering
4 rude staff
5 quick service
6 dreadful service

29.4 左页中哪些表达式是以下的意思？

1 eat whatever your hosts are eating at home, not a special dish for you
2 tell me when I've poured enough in your glass
3 get a quick meal or some other food that does not take a long time
4 small items you eat before a meal, or perhaps at a reception
5 another portion of what you have just eaten
6 a semi-formal party or reception in someone's house, probably not a meal

29.5 你认识以下请柬上的所有词汇吗？

Mr W. and Mrs B. Ogilvy
cordially invite you to a ball to celebrate the wedding of their daughter
Cassandra
to
Major Derek Littlebrain
at Barnet Hall on 21st March
7pm for 8pm
Black tie *R S V P*

Aaron and Sally

invite you to come along and
toast the launch of their new CD
at Frontiers Music store
88, Fleece Street
6 November at 5.30pm
aperitifs
admission by invitation only

30 在路上：交通与驾驶

A 英国交通驾驶规定

注意词汇搭配。

■ You must **give way** at a **give-way sign**. On a roundabout, traffic coming from your right **has the right of way** [is allowed to go before other traffic]. **Sounding/hooting/tooting your horn** is prohibited except in emergencies. **Jumping** [not stopping at] **a red light** is a serious offence. **Reckless driving** [very dangerous driving, without any care for others] is also a very serious offence.

■ **Drink-driving** may result in a heavy fine or imprisonment. You may be asked to take a **breathalyser** [instrument you breathe into to measure alcohol level] test. **Hit-and-run** [running over or into someone and not stopping] accidents are extremely serious and could result in a **ban** [removal of one's driving licence] for several years and/or imprisonment. Less serious offences may result in **penalty points** [negative points on your licence which are added up over time]. **On-the-spot fines** [given at the scene of the offence] may be issued for careless driving and other offences.

■ **Exhaust emissions** [waste gases produced by the vehicle] must meet government standards, and the car must be **roadworthy** [in a condition that it can be driven safely], which includes a minimum depth of **tyre tread** [the depth of the grooves in the tyre rubber].

B 交通问题

下列句子是人们在谈论驾驶经历和交通事故，注意其中的黑体词。

It was the rush hour, and there was a long **tailback** on the motorway. [line of slow or stopped traffic]

There was a **pile-up** [crash between several or many cars] involving ten cars, because of the fog, so the road was closed and we were **diverted** [directed away from our road] on to a narrow country lane.

I had stupidly parked in a **towaway zone** and came back to find my car had gone! [area where your car may be taken away if you park illegally]

I just parked for a few minutes outside the station, but when I came out my car had been **clamped**. [fitted with a metal device on the wheel to prevent it from moving]

I saw two men fighting next to their cars. I think it was a case of **road rage**. [anger or violence between drivers because of difficult driving conditions]

The road was wet and I **skidded** on a bend and almost crashed. [lost control of the steering]

There was a **head-on collision** [two vehicles hitting each other directly in the front] on the main road between here and the next village last night. Luckily, both cars had **air bags** and the drivers survived.

There was an accident at the junction between the A476 and the A53 this morning involving a lorry carrying a load of glue. Traffic has been stuck there for the last three hours. *(Radio announcement)*

练习

30.1 使用左页中的词或短语填空，完成句子。

1 We can't park here; it's a _____ zone.
2 There was a five-mile _____ on the motorway because of road works.
3 Fog caused a number of _____, one of which involved 15 cars.
4 If it's a _____ sign, you don't have to stop if the road is clear, but if it's a stop sign, then you must always stop.
5 Who has the _____ at a corner in your country? Cars or pedestrians?
6 It was a _____ accident, but the police have a description of the car.
7 The permitted level of _____ is to be lowered in an attempt to reduce air pollution in big cities.
8 He was given a _____ test and it was discovered he had consumed a huge amount of alcohol. He was charged with _____ and fined £500.
9 In some countries drivers _____ their _____ just because they get frustrated. As a result, the city streets are incredibly noisy.

30.2 回答第一个人的话，你的回答要解释划线部分的含义，如示例。使用左页中的词汇。

EXAMPLE A: I came out and saw a big metal thing on my wheels.
B: Oh, so your wheels had been clamped!
A: Yes. I had to pay £100.

1 A: As I drove round the corner there was some ice on the road and I lost control of the steering.
B: Oh, so _____.

2 A: The two women were obviously having an argument about the way one of them had driven. Then suddenly they started hitting each other!
B: Oh, I guess it was a case of _____.
A: Yes. It's happening more and more these days.

3 A: The policeman looked at my tyres and said they were illegal.
B: Oh, so you didn't have the minimum depth of _____?

4 A: The road was closed. Two lorries had come straight at each other and crashed.
B: Oh, so it was a _____.

5 A: The policeman fined me £100 there and then. I have to pay it within seven days.
B: Oh, really? I didn't know they could give _____.
A: Yes. You have no choice. They just give it to you and you can't dispute it at the time.

6 A: The man at the garage said my car wasn't in a fit condition to be driven legally.
B: Oh, so it's not _____.

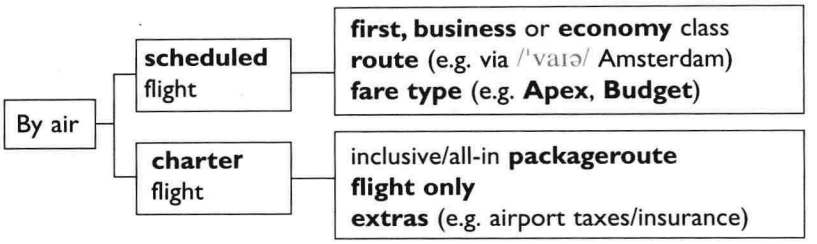
30.3 你认为划线部分是什么意思？用自己的话解释它们的含义。如果你不能根据上下文推断出它们的意思，可以使用词典。

1 There were three separate accidents in the city centre during the rush hour and soon there was total gridlock. It took about two hours to clear.
2 I've spent six hours behind the wheel today, and now all I want to do is rest. I never want to see another motorway.
3 The police car made me pull over and they checked my lights.
4 I had a minor bump yesterday. It wasn't serious, but one of my lights got smashed.
5 My car conked out on the motorway and I had to ring for assistance. It cost me £50.
6 He's a bit of a back-seat driver, so don't be surprised if he criticises your driving.

31 旅行与住宿

A 预订旅行和假期

以下是在预订旅行 / 假期时的一些选择：



A **scheduled flight** is a normal, regular flight; a **charter flight** is a special flight taking a group of people, usually to the same holiday destination. **Apex** fares normally have to be booked a fixed number of days in advance and they offer **value for money**. **Budget** fares are usually cheaper but may have **restrictions** (e.g. you can only travel on certain days) and are usually **non-refundable** [you can't get your money back] or if you cancel, you may have to pay a **cancellation fee**. Some tickets allow a **stopover** [you may stay somewhere overnight before continuing to your destination]. **All-in packages** normally include accommodation and **transfers** [e.g. a bus or coach to and from your hotel].

Sea travel is normally on a ferry, and the journey is called a **crossing**, but you can have a holiday on the sea if you **go on a cruise**. For some people a luxury cruise is **the holiday of a lifetime** [one you will always remember].

You may decide to book a **berth** in a **shared cabin** [a bed in a cabin with other people], or to have a single or double cabin. For more money, you can often get a **deluxe** cabin, perhaps on the **upper deck** [the higher part of the ship, which is often bigger and more comfortable]. Cruises often go to **exotic** [unusual or exciting] islands where you can **get away from it all** [escape your daily life and routines].

Car hire is another way of **getting around** [informal: travelling to different places]. When you book it, you normally choose whether you want **unlimited mileage** [/ˈmaɪlɪdʒ/ you can travel as many miles as you like for the same price]. There may also be **extras** to pay such as accident insurance. If you hire a car it gives you the freedom to **go as you please** [go where you want when you want].

B 住宿

Some people prefer hotels. Others prefer **self-catering** [where you do your own cooking] accommodation, such as a holiday apartment or **chalet** [/ˈʃæleɪ/ small cottage or cabin specially built for holiday-makers]. In Britain and Ireland, **guest houses** [private homes offering high standard accommodation] and **inns** [similar to pubs, but also offering accommodation; usually beautiful old buildings] offer good accommodation which is often cheaper than hotels, and there are many private homes offering bed-and-breakfast [often called **B and B**]. Some types of accommodation offer **half board** [usually breakfast and one other meal] or **full board** [all meals].

练习

31.1 使用 A 中的词汇简化句子，如示例。

EXAMPLE It was a regular flight which the airline runs every day.
It was a scheduled flight.

1 I hate those special flights where everyone is booked to the same holiday destination.
2 It was a ticket you had to book 30 days in advance to get the cheaper fare.
3 The ticket allowed us to spend up to three nights in Singapore on the journey from London to Sydney.
4 You can get a bed on the ferry in a little room with three other beds.
5 We hired a car, with as many miles as we wanted free.
6 When you get there, the bus or taxi to your hotel is included in the cost of the holiday.
7 It was a special cheap fare, but there were some things you were not allowed to do.

31.2 正确搭配词语。

1 bed	catering
2 full	for money
3 self-	mileage
4 unlimited	island
5 exotic	and breakfast
6 value	board

31.3 框中的表达式能与下列哪种假期联系起来？如需要可使用词典。每种表达式可能有不止一种假日对应。

to rough it	an exhilarating experience	to be out in the wilds
to lounge around	to keep on the move	to sleep under the stars
a real learning experience	to be your own boss	to just drift along
a cosy atmosphere	to go as you please	to spend a fortune on entrance fees

1 self-catering holiday
2 camping trip
3 staying in an inn or a guest house
4 skiing holiday
5 trekking holiday
6 cruise
7 sightseeing holiday
8 holiday with car hire

31.4 使用 31.3 中的正确表达式完成句子。

1 It was a lovely cruise; we just ..... all day.
2 I prefer self-catering because I like to .....
3 Camping is OK if you don't mind .....
4 Skiing is always such .....
5 Sightseeing's great but it's easy .....
6 The guided tour of the ancient ruins was .....
7 Inns and guest houses usually have quite .....

31.5 以下是一些与度假有关的图画。用自己的话表述它们属于哪一种假期，要用到左页中的词汇。

1
2
3
4
5

32 旅游业

A 旅游胜地综述

FOR TOURISTS YEARNING to **escape the crowd**[1], **wander off the beaten track**[2] and **get back to nature**[3], Suriname increasingly looks **a promising choice**[4]. Nobody in Suriname claims that the country **boasts**[5] the best sand, sea and sun in the Caribbean. But that, in a way, is precisely the point: there aren't **hordes**[6] of people either.

As Henk Essed, director of the Suriname Tourism Foundation, observes: We don't really need masses of tourists like we have in the rest of the Caribbean. Instead, Suriname's modest **tourism sector**[7] focuses on what makes the country different. The biggest attraction for visitors **seeking something out of the ordinary**[8] is the **wealth of**[9] wildlife. Large **tracts**[10] of the country are still covered by **virgin**[11] rainforest, home to a huge range of **flora and fauna**[12].

There is great potential to develop **eco-tourism**[13] as one of the major sources of income in the near future, says Harold Sijlbing, managing director of Stinasu, an organisation which promotes conservation of wildlife and ecological awareness.

[1] go where there are not many people
[2] go to places tourists don't normally go
[3] live a natural, rural style of life
[4] a choice which could be a very good one
[5] this use of *boast* is for listing the good qualities of a place (formal)
[6] crowds, in a negative sense
[7] tourist industry (formal)
[8] common collocation: looking for something different/unusual
[9] large amount of (formal)
[10] areas of land, collocates with *large*, *vast*, *huge*
[11] original and natural
[12] plants and animals (Latin); a fixed phrase
[13] holidays that respect the environment

B 旅游广告

Unwind[1] in Estera, **recharge**[2] in Postalia, all from under £500

Guided tours for the **discerning**[6] traveller. Ancient sites in modern comfort.

Rambles, hikes and **treks**[10] **Unrivalled**[11] programme Send for our brochure

Taste of **the bush**[3]: all travel in air-conditioned **4x4**[4] vehicles

Stunning[7] locations. **Unbeatable**[8] prices. Phone now.

Waterfront[5] villas, self-catering, sleep up to six

Awe-inspiring[9] national parks

Savour[12] the renowned landscapes in our heaartland[13]

[1] /ʌn'waɪnd/ relax, reduce your general level of stress
[2] get back your energy (like recharging a battery)
[3] a term for the wild, tree- or grass-covered areas of Africa or Australia
[4] pronounced four by four; vehicles with driving power on all four wheels
[5] on the edge of the sea or of a river
[6] who knows what he/she wants in terms of good quality
[7] extremely beautiful
[8] no other company can offer cheaper ones for the same service
[9] it fills you with a sense of the power and beauty of what you are looking at
[10] These three words represent a scale of length and difficulty. A **ramble** is a long, pleasant walk, not too demanding. A **hike** is more demanding, suggesting more difficult terrain. A **trek** is usually of several days over wild country.
[11] no other holiday programme can match this
[12] a word typically used in advertisements meaning enjoy
[13] the inland areas furthest away from the sea or from borders with other countries

练习

32.1 使用 A 中的词汇完成句子。

1 Malaysia _____ some of the loveliest beaches in Asia.
2 The tourism _____ is very important to the economies of many developing countries.
3 It is vital that tourism should not damage the flora and _____ of beautiful areas of wildlife.
4 Most tourists like to feel free to _____ off the _____ track.
5 Nobody likes to travel to a place where there will be _____ of other tourists.
6 People who spend all their time in big cities often like to _____ back to _____ when they go away for a holiday.
7 If you're _____ something out of the _____ why not try a snowboarding holiday? It's certainly different!
8 When I travel I always try to _____ the crowd and find somewhere quiet.
9 There are vast _____ of unspoilt land in the north of the country, with _____ rainforests and a _____ of wildlife.
10 We've studied the brochures and Tasmania looks a _____ choice for this year.

32.2 读以下旅游广告节选，用自己的话说明它们的意思。如需要可使用词典。

1 Itinerary includes three shore excursions and 10 nights at sea
2 Flights subject to availability
3 Single room supplement £30 per night
4 For instant bookings or quotations, call 01785 67844532
5 Fly-drive option available on request

32.3 根据括号中给出的词源，选择 B 中的词汇填空。

1 This company is excellent and their prices are _____. (RIVAL)
2 You should go into the _____ to see the true culture of the country. (HEART)
3 There are some absolutely _____ beaches to the north. (STUN)
4 I think Suntravel is _____ when it comes to cheap destinations. (BEAT)
5 The mountains were so _____. Many were over 5,000 metres high. (AWE)
6 We rented a _____ villa. It was nice to be so near the beach. (WATER)
7 I just want somewhere quiet and relaxing to _____ for a week. (WIND)
8 Everyone needs to _____ their batteries now and again. (CHARGE)

32.4 回答问题。

1 Order these words from the most physically demanding to the least physically demanding: ramble, trek, hike.
2 What verb might you find in travel advertisements meaning enjoy?
3 What adjective can be used with *traveller* to mean one who knows exactly what he or she wants in terms of quality and value?
4 Where would you find the bush?
5 How do you say this and what does it mean? 4×4

FOLLOW UP 如果你可以上网，搜索你喜欢的国家的名字，找出它们的旅游信息网页。例如，你可以在 www.irelandtravel.co.uk 找到关于爱尔兰的英文旅游信息，在 www.tourspain.es 上找到西班牙的旅游信息。

33 描述世界

A 气候

On a journey from north to south across this huge region, you would pass through a fascinating series of hot tropic landscapes. Plenty of rain falls in the far south, whereas the **arid**[1] northerly region is **prone to**[2] serious **drought**[3]. (*West Africa*)

1 dry
2 tending to have a particular negative characteristic
3 period without rain

B 植物

About one third of the landscape of Canada lies within the Arctic Circle and can remain frozen for up to nine months of the year. In these cold areas, known as the **tundra**[1], any **vegetation**[2] is limited. However, further south, large areas of land are covered by dense, **coniferous**[3] forests, known as taiga. Towards the border with the USA lie the mixed, temperate forests and the grasslands of the **prairies**[4]. (*Canada*)

1 area in north with no trees and permanently frozen ground
2 plant life
3 trees that are **evergreen** [green all year round] and produce cones, unlike **deciduous** trees, which lose their leaves in winter
4 flat grasslands in Canada and northern USA (similar to steppes in Asia or pampas in South America)

C 农业

In the south the main crop is rice, though tea, cotton, fruit and vegetables are also grown. The rice is planted in flooded **paddy fields**[1]. Two crops of rice and one of vegetables are harvested in a good year. In the north and west, which is drier and hillier, farmers grow a single crop of **cereals**[2] and **tend**[3] sheep and cattle. (*China*)

1 fields planted with rice growing in water
2 type of grass cultivated to produce a grain, i.e. a food plant like rice, wheat or maize
3 take care of animals

D 工业

One of the world's leading industrial nations, France has large **manufacturing**[1], steel and chemical industries and stands **at the forefront**[2] of engineering and technology. The country is a major producer of cars and aircraft. France has a large nuclear industry which **generates**[3] about 75 per cent of the country's electrical power. *(France)*

1 producing goods in large numbers
2 in an important position
3 produces

E 人口

THE POPULATION of Brazil is a mixture of peoples. Some **are descended from**[1] native Indians who have always lived in Brazil, others from the Portuguese who ruled there for 300 years. Many Brazilians have African **ancestors**[2] who were brought over in the 17th century to work as slaves on sugar plantations. During the 20th century large numbers of European **migrants**[3] **settled**[4] in the south. *(Brazil)*

1 are related to
2 relatives from earlier times: we are our ancestors' **descendants**
3 people who move to live in another country (an **emigrant** is someone who leaves a country and an **immigrant** is someone who moves to live in a country – emigrants from Britain currently outnumber immigrants coming to live here)
4 made their homes

练习

33.1 连接固定搭配。

1 coniferous	plantation
2 industrial	industry
3 paddy	forest
4 chemical	field
5 sugar	nation

33.2 这里还有一些可以与练习 33.1 中右栏词汇搭配的词。以上 5 个词每个都有 3 个搭配，你能找出来吗？

coffee	deciduous	dense	civilised	manufacturing
oil	pharmaceutical	rain	ripe	rubber
tea	textile	wheat	independent	sovereign

33.3 使用框中的词完成句子。

descendants　ancestors　migrants　emigrants　immigrants

1 I believe my _____ came to Britain from France in the 17th century.
2 Many _____ left Russia for France after the Revolution in 1917.
3 The USA has traditionally welcomed _____ from all over the world.
4 Our largest cities are full of _____ looking for work and a better life.
5 Some Scots are said to be the _____ of 16th century Spanish sailors shipwrecked off the Scottish coast.

33.4 使用括号中的词完成句子。判断每句话指的是哪个国家。在下框中给出了备选的国家。

1 About 80% of the _____ lives in or around cities along the _____ where life is easier than in the _____ towns and farms of the _____.
(coast, outback, population, remote)
2 400 years ago it was the _____ of the Inca _____ that _____ the _____ of South America.
(centre, length, stretched, Empire)
3 Two thirds of the _____ is under water but _____ so, because the _____ are _____ to grow rice.
(flooded, deliberately, farmland, fields)
4 To the _____ of a long, narrow _____ more than a hundred islands _____ the rest of the _____.
(country, east, make up, peninsula)
5 Much of the land is _____, dotted with _____, but parts of the _____ are more _____.
(coastline, desert, fertile, oases)
6 A line of _____, many still _____, dominates the _____ of this small country and _____, once rich with cedar, mahogany and oak, have been cut down for farmland.
(active, forests, landscape, volcanoes)

Oman　Vietnam　Peru　Australia　El Salvador　Denmark

34 天气与气候

A 关于天气的对话

这里有一些关于天气的很有用的词汇，但相对少见。你可以用这些词来谈论天气的较典型情况。在下列对话中，B 的回答与 A 同义，但较不正式。

A: Bit **chilly** today, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's **freezing/nippy**, isn't it?

A: It's **hot**, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's **boiling/sweltering/roasting!**

A: It's a bit **windy** today!
B: Yes, really **blowy/breezy**, isn't it?

A: What **oppressive/sultry** weather!
B: Yes, isn't it **stifling/heavy/close?**

A: What a **downpour/deluge!**
B: Yes, it's **chucking it down/it's pouring!**

A: Isn't it **humid** today?
B: Yes, horribly **muggy/clammy.**

B 气候用作比喻

气候常常用于比喻，尤其在英语书面语中。**climate** 这个词可以指社会的总体氛围和情况。

His dishonest policies towards the workers created a **climate of distrust.**
The government reforms have created a **climate of change.**

在这个社会性的含义范围内，**cultural, current, economic, financial, moral, political, social** 及 **prevailing** 等词都可与 **climate** 搭配使用。

She has a very **sunny disposition** – she's hardly ever miserable.
Job prospects are **sunny.**

Unfortunately, our plans met with a **frosty** reception.
'You lied to me, didn't you?' she said **icily.**
I'm **snowed under** with work – I'll never get through it all in time.

After the company accounts were examined, the manager left **under a cloud** of suspicion.
Don't let your love for him **cloud your judgement.**

The soldiers were hit with a **hail of bullets.**
The Prime Minister was greeted with a **hail/storm of abuse.**

After the long flight I was **in a haze** for a day or two.
I've only a **hazy idea** what you mean.

The truth is hidden **in the mists of** history.
She looked at him **misty-eyed** – clearly in love.

The article sparked off a **whirlwind** of speculation.
They had a **whirlwind romance.**

The horses **thundered** down the race track.
Thunderous applause followed his speech.
(注意 **thundery** 用来形容的暴风雨天气，**thunderous** 用来形容巨大的声响。)

The **winds of change/discontent/democracy** are blowing across the country.

练习

34.1 写出下列天气评述的回答，表示赞同，使用左页对话中 A 那样的稍正式的语气。

1 It's a bit nippy outside, isn't it?
2 What a sweltering day!
3 Isn't it muggy here?
4 It's blowy, isn't it?
5 Close today, isn't it?
6 It's chucking it down!
7 It's clammy today, isn't it?
8 What a stifling day!

34.2 下列词汇选自左页 B 部分，它的原义和比喻意义有什么联系？

EXAMPLE sunny – *pleasant and positive*

1 frosty
2 icily
3 snowed under
4 whirlwind
5 hail
6 under a cloud
7 in a haze
8 to thunder

34.3 给下列词汇找到适当的搭配，有一些搭配在左页出现过，其他一些搭配你可能需要查词典。

1 .... climate ....
2 ..... prevailing ....
3 ..... to cloud ....
4 .... the winds of ....
5 ..... a frosty ....
6 ..... a hail of ....

34.4 阅读下面这段短文，找出含有下列意义的词汇。

1 average
2 dry
3 height above sea level
4 distance from the equator
5 rain and snow
6 rays from the sun
7 make less extreme
8 situated very far from the sea
9 differing weather conditions at different times of the year

Schemes for dividing the Earth into climatic regions are based on a combination of indices of mean annual temperature, mean monthly temperature, annual precipitation totals and seasonality. The climate of a place is affected by several factors. Latitude affects the amount of solar radiation received, with the greatest in equatorial regions and the least in polar regions. Elevation affects both temperature and precipitation; mountainous areas are generally cooler and wetter. Location close to the sea or to large bodies of water moderates temperature; continental areas are generally more arid and more affected by extremes of temperature.

34.5 在你的母语或者你了解的其他语言中，关于天气和气候的词汇有比喻用法吗？如果有，是否这些天气特征也和在英语中一样，指代同样的喻义？

35 建筑术语用于比喻

A 建筑

请看下列说明及例句。

Note how **cement** is used both to make buildings stronger and to make relationships stronger. It can be used in this way both as a noun and a verb: Let's have a drink together **to cement** our partnership.
Brick wall used metaphorically means a barrier: When I tried to find out what had happened to my tax claim, I **came up against a brick wall.**
Ceiling can be used to suggest a limit to something: They put a **ceiling** of twenty thousand pounds on the redundancy payments.
The **glass ceiling** is a phrase used to refer to an invisible barrier that stops people, especially women, from rising to top positions at work.
Roof as a metaphor: The **roof** fell in on my world on the day he died.
Notice how the colloquial phrase **go through the roof** has two different meanings. If prices go through the roof, they increase in a rapid, uncontrolled fashion. If, however, a person goes through the roof, he or she loses their temper.
Hit the roof, similarly, can be used about prices but it is far more commonly used to mean lose one's temper: The teacher will **hit the roof** when she sees the mess we've made of this work.

As a very tall building, **tower** conveys an idea of distance from ordinary people. If someone lives in an **ivory tower**, he or she does not know about the unpleasant and ordinary things that happen in life: Academics are often criticised for living in their **ivory towers.**
If a person is a **tower of strength**, they are extremely strong (in an emotional rather than a physical sense): Our friends were a **tower of strength** when our house burnt down.
If a person or thing **towers above** something or someone else, they are either outstandingly tall or outstanding in some other positive way: Jack **towers above** all his classmates although he is actually one of the youngest pupils.

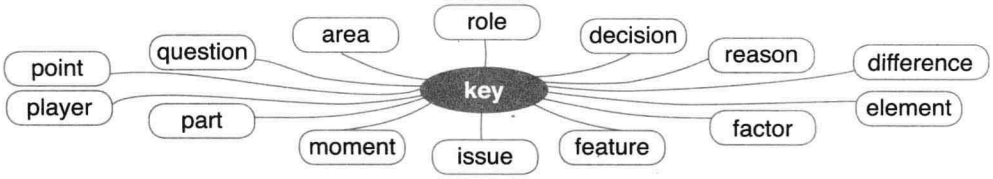
B 入口

请看下列说明及例句。

Gateway is used metaphorically in the phrase be a **gateway to**, meaning provide access. A degree in law is a **gateway to** a well-paid job.

Door can also be used in a similar way to gateway above, but it is also used in many other metaphorical phrases as well: Failing his final exams **closed/shut** a lot of **doors** for him. Knowing several languages **opens doors** when it comes to finding work. The new century gives us the opportunity to **close the door on** our past and make a fresh start. Doing something **through/by the back door** suggests doing it unofficially: Joe came into the business **by the back door** – the manager knew him from university.

Key can be used as a noun or an adjective to suggest the importance of something:
This research may **provide/hold the key to** developing a cure for cancer.
Knowing the right people is **the key to success** in that country.
The **key figures** in the government all went to the same universities.
As an adjective **key** collocates strongly with:



练习

35.1 将左右两侧的词连起来构成比喻，并解释每个比喻的意思。

1 glass	door
2 ivory	feature
3 brick	ceiling
4 back	tower
5 key	wall

35.2 填入适当的动词完成句子。

1 The boss _____ through the roof when she saw Robert arriving late again.
2 We hope that this scientist's work may _____ the key to solving the problem.
3 A degree in economics _____ the door to a number of interesting job opportunities.
4 Whenever you try to initiate something in this company you find that, sooner or later, you _____ up against a brick wall.
5 Jan's father _____ the roof when he saw that she'd dyed her hair purple.
6 Bill _____ over all the other lawyers in his firm. He is by far the most able.
7 Her argument with the board last year has, unfortunately, _____ a lot of doors for her in this company.
8 The roof _____ in on their world the day that war was declared.

35.3 使用左页中的表达式改写下列句子中的划线部分。

1 My brother is always <u>enormously supportive</u> whenever I have a problem.
2 I would be reluctant to work for a company that does a lot of business <u>in an unofficial way</u>.
3 The fee for this work will depend on the time it takes but <u>cannot be more than</u> twenty thousand dollars.
4 The cost of petrol <u>has risen dramatically</u> in the last six months.
5 Having children often <u>makes a marriage stronger</u>.
6 Vancouver is <u>the ideal place for starting to explore</u> Western Canada.
7 The <u>most important</u> decision we have to take now is where to locate our business.
8 The professor has spent all his life <u>in one university or another</u> and really finds it very difficult to cope in the real world.

35.4 以下是另外一些建筑术语作比喻的例子。你能猜出划线部分的意思并改写它们吗？

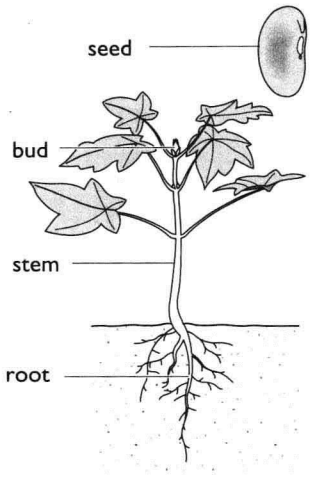
1 The company has been <u>locked in</u> a legal battle for several years now.
2 The speaker's request for questions was met with <u>a wall of silence</u>.
3 Working on this project together should help to <u>lay the foundations</u> for a good relationship in the future.
4 Her eyes were <u>locked on</u> mine as she told me she was planning to go abroad.
5 When Jack returned to this country he found his marriage <u>in ruins</u>.
6 This government should <u>clean up its own back yard</u> before criticising other countries.

35.5 这个单元的哪个比喻在翻译成你的母语时也能够同样使用？请参看练习 35.4 和左页讲解部分。

36 树木 / 植物用于比喻

A

以下是一些用树木和植物的各部分名称所作的比喻。请看说明及例句。



Seed(s) is often used to talk about the start of an idea or feeling: **the seeds of success, the seeds of discontent, the seeds of revolution.**
Root(s) is used to suggest the origins of something. You can talk about **going back to your roots,** for example, meaning going back to the place where your family came from. You can also talk about **the root of a problem** or **the roots of a tradition. Putting down roots** means settling down and making your home in one place: After travelling the world for a couple of years, I was ready to go home and **put down some roots.**
When an idea becomes known or accepted, it can be said to **take root.**
Deeply and **firmly** collocate with **rooted** as in, for example: Its origins are **firmly/deeply rooted** in the nineteenth century.
The **grass roots** of an organisation or society are the ordinary people in it, not the leaders.

Stem is used as a verb to signify that something originates in something else: Her discontent **stems** from a traumatic experience she had last year.

A branch is something that grows off or **branches out** from a main organisation. So we talk about **branches of a shop** or a **business branching out into new directions.** We haven't a blue sweater in your size, but you could try our Oxford Street **branch.**

Bud [flower before it opens] is used in the expression **nipped in the bud** [stopped before it develops into something].
He's showing signs of neglecting his work – we'd better **nip that in the bud.**
The adjective **budding** can also mean showing promise of future development: She's a **budding** young actress.

B

以下是一些与植物生长和园艺劳动有关的动词的比喻用法。请看下列例句及相关说明。

The new boss is planning to **weed out** older or less experienced staff. [get rid of]
The government will probably have to **prune back** its proposals. [cut/limit]
At last she **is reaping the reward of** all her years of study. [is getting results from]
The journalists **have dug up** some interesting facts. [have discovered]
The idea **was germinating** while we were on holiday. [was beginning to develop]
Out-of-town shopping centres **have been sprouting** all over the country. [have been appearing quickly in large numbers]
Our business **is flourishing.** [is doing very well]
A deciduous tree **sheds** its leaves. [loses]
People can **shed employees/traditions/worries/inhibitions/weight.**
Plants **fade, wither, shrivel** and **wilt** when they die. These verbs can all be used metaphorically:
Hopes of finding survivors are **fading.** [becoming smaller]
High inflation means that our savings are **shrivelling.** [becoming less]
It was so hot in the classroom that the students were starting to **wilt.** [lose energy]
A **glance/look/remark** can **wither** or **be withering.** [make the recipient feel scorned]
She gave him a **withering look.**

练习

36.1 连接正确的搭配。

1 nipped	of the problem
2 a budding	root
3 grass	poet
4 the root	of discontent
5 to reap	roots
6 to take	in the bud
7 the seeds	rewards

36.2 填空完成句子。

1 Alec has spent most of his life in London, but he is keen to _____ back to his roots when he retires.
2 The business is firmly _____ in the west of England.
3 The idea took some time to _____ root but it's very fashionable now.
4 His grandfather sowed the _____ of the business's success.
5 The US bookshop chain is opening a number of _____ in the UK.
6 It's about time she _____ down some roots.
7 The idea for her novel _____ from her interest in mountain climbing.
8 The St James's Drama College turns out a hundred _____ actors every year.

36.3 以下词汇选自左页 B 部分，它们的原义和比喻意义有什么联系？

1 fade	3 flourish	5 germinate	7 prune back	9 reap
2 shrivel	4 sprout	6 weed out	8 wilt	10 wither

36.4 给以下的每个形容词写出 3 个它可以修饰的名词。

1 budding
2 flourishing
3 withering
4 fading
5 deeply rooted

36.5 回答问题。

1 What would you like to *shed* at this point in your life?
2 Can you think of a situation where you *reaped the rewards* of something you did?
3 What in your life is *flourishing* at the moment?
4 When did you last feel that you were *wilting*?

36.6 这里还有一些植物的比喻用法。回答问题，如需要可使用词典。

1 If you are **the apple of** your teacher's **eye**, does your teacher like or dislike you?
2 If something, for example new houses, is said to be **mushrooming**, what is happening?
3 If someone **lives in clover**, do they live very poorly or very luxuriously?
4 What kind of person is a **couch potato**?
5 If discussions are **fruitful**, what are they like?

37 飞禽走兽

A 描述动物

词汇	释义/示例
mammal	animal that gives birth to live babies, not eggs, and feeds them on its own milk (e.g. cat, cow, kangaroo)
rodent	e.g. mouse, rat
reptile	e.g. snake, lizard
carnivore	animal that eats meat (e.g. lion, tiger)
herbivore	animal that eats grass/vegetation (e.g. deer, cow)
predator	animal that hunts/eats other animals (e.g. eagle, lion, shark)

B 描述典型动物行为

词汇	释义	例句
docile	behaves very gently	Our old cat is a very **docile** creature.
tame	not afraid of humans	These birds are so **tame**, they will sit on your hand.
domesticated	lives with or is used by humans	Dogs and cats became **domesticated** thousands of years ago.
wild	opposite of domesticated	There are **wild** cats in the mountains.
savage	extremely violent or wild	A **savage** wolf killed three of the farmer's sheep.
fierce	behaves aggressively	A **fierce**-looking dog stood in the doorway.

C 动物栖息地

As more buildings and roads are constructed the **natural habitat** for these animals is shrinking. [preferred natural place for living and breeding]
Some wonderful animals can be seen if you visit the big **game reserves / game parks** in Africa. [areas of land where animals are protected from hunting, etc.]
A **bird sanctuary** has recently been opened on the coast, ten miles south of here. [protected area where birds can live and breed]
We went to the local **animal shelter** to ask if we could have a dog. [place where cats, dogs, horses, etc. which have no home are given food and a place to live]

D 人与动物

Many people are opposed to **blood sports** such as foxhunting, cock fighting and bullfighting. [sports whose purpose is to kill or injure animals]
Nowadays, a lot of people refuse to wear coats made of natural animal fur since they are opposed to **the fur trade**. [the hunting and selling of animal furs for coats, jackets, etc.]
Poachers [people who hunt animals illegally] kill hundreds of elephants every year to supply **the ivory trade** [the buying and selling of ivory from elephants' tusks].
Animal rights activists often demonstrate outside this factory because animals are used in experiments there. [people who actively campaign for the protection and rights of animals]

练习

37.1 使用专门词汇改写句中划线部分。

1 There are dozens of different types of squirrels, mice and things like that living in the woods.
2 A whale isn't a fish, it doesn't lay eggs. It's actually an animal that gives birth directly.
3 There are some interesting turtles and crocodiles and that sort of thing near the river.
4 Everyone thinks these animals eat meat, but in fact they only feed on certain kinds of leaves.
5 The mother bird protects her eggs from animals that attack them.

37.2 使用左页 B 中的形容词填空，表述动物的温顺 / 凶猛或动物与人的关系。

1 Sheep are generally rather _____ animals, but the other day one attacked our dog.
2 The lions look very _____ with their huge teeth and large heads.
3 Elephants are _____ in several countries in Asia, and they work hard carrying heavy weights.
4 The dolphins are very _____ and will swim along with human beings.
5 I don't think _____ birds should ever be hunted. They should be left in peace in their natural surroundings.

37.3 下面是一些与动物有关的词汇，给出了第一个和最后一个字母，你能填出所缺的字母吗？(括号中给出了提示。)

1 h_____t (natural home)
2 s_____y (protected place)
3 r_____e (protected area, often for big game)
4 s_____r (place for homeless animals)

37.4 回答问题。

1 What do we call sports that deliberately injure or kill animals for pleasure?
2 What name is given to the activity of buying and selling elephants' tusks?
3 What do we call people who illegally hunt or catch animals or fish?
4 What arguments would animal rights activists have against the fur trade?

37.5 完成表格，阴影部分不填。如需要可使用词典。在名词和形容词栏里标出这个词的重读音节。

noun	*verb*	*adjective*
carnivore		
herbivore		
predator		
poacher		

38 环境保护

你可能已经知道很多讨论环境、污染等方面的词汇。本单元中我们会讲述这类词的惯用搭配。试着学习这些表达式，并运用到自己的写作中。

A 环境危机及潜在威胁

Shrinking habitats[1] are a threat to both plants and animals, and **endangered species**[2] need legal protection if they are to survive. Meanwhile, **global warming**[3] will produce rising sea levels and **climatic changes**[4], and **carbon dioxide emissions**[5] from the burning of **fossil fuels**[6] are contributing to the **greenhouse effect**[7]. In addition, population growth **exerts severe pressure on**[8] **finite resources**[9], and the **ecological balance**[10] may be upset by uncontrolled **deforestation**[11]. **Demographic projections**[12] suggest the world population will grow before it begins to stabilise. One of **the worst case scenarios**[13] is that there will be no tropical forests left by the year 2050. Our only hope is that **pristine environments**[14] such as Antarctica can be protected from development and damage.

1 places where animals live and breed which are decreasing in size
2 types of animals/plants which are in danger of no longer existing
3 steady rise in average world temperatures
4 changes in the weather/climate
5 carbon dioxide gas from factories, cars, etc.
6 coal, oil, etc.
7 warming of the Earth's surface caused by pollution
8 formal: puts pressure on
9 limited resources
10 balance of natural relationships in the environment
11 destruction/clearing of forests
12 forecasts about the population
13 the worst possibilities for the future
14 perfectly clean/untouched/unspoilt areas

B 应对环境问题

试读这些新闻标题，并注意有用的短语。

GOVERNING PARTY
IN BID TO IMPROVE
GREEN CREDENTIALS*

* reputation for positive support of the environment

PROPHETS OF DOOM AND GLOOM*
SHOULD LISTEN TO SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE, SAYS PRIME MINISTER

* people who always make the most depressing or pessimistic forecasts for the future

SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT*
THE ONLY ANSWER FOR EMERGING COUNTRIES, SAYS UN COMMISSION

* development of industry, etc. which does not threaten the environment or social and economic stability

PIECEMEAL CONSERVATION*
INEFFECTIVE – NATIONAL POLICY NEEDED, SAYS NEW REPORT

*carrying out conservation one bit at a time, with no overall plan

练习

38.1 用左页 A 中的词或短语替换划线部分，使句子更为正式。如有需要可改动句子。

1 All that carbon-what's-it-called gas put out by cars and factories is a major problem.
2 These flowers here are a type there's not many left of, so it's illegal to pick them.
3 A lot of wild animals have to survive in smaller and smaller areas where they can live.
4 Most of Patagonia is a completely spotless area that's never been touched.
5 We have to look after the things we use on this planet because they won't last forever.
6 If the cutting down of trees continues, there will be no forest left ten years from now.
7 Burning coal and oil and stuff like that causes a lot of pollution.
8 The sea will get higher if this heating up of the world continues.
9 Increasing population puts really big pressure on economic resources.
10 The way things all balance one another in nature is very delicate.

38.2 完成表格，如需要可使用词典。阴影部分不填。

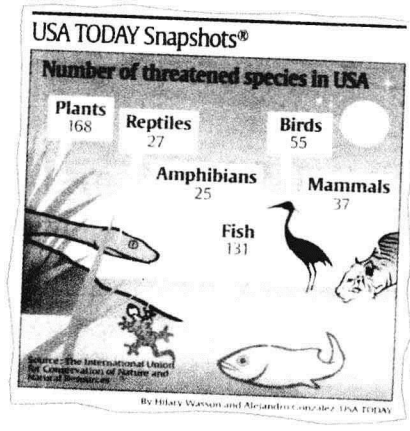
noun	*verb*	*adjective*	*adverb*
climate			
demography			
	project		
	sustain		

38.3 改正段落中的错误。

Profits of boom and gloom are always saying that we are heading for an environmental catastrophe, and that unless we adopt a policy of attainable development we will cause irreparable damage to the planet. The worst place scenery is of a world choked by overpopulation, the greenhouse affect and traffic gridlock. Much of what is claimed is exaggerated, but politicians are influenced by such voices and are always trying to improve their green potentials in the eyes of the voters.

38.4 一份美国报纸刊登了这份图表。阅读图表并回答问题。

1 There is one word in the picture for a type of animal not mentioned on the opposite page. What does this new word mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.
2 Which phrase in this unit means the same as threatened species?



Copyright 2000, USA TODAY. Reprinted with permission.

FOLLOW UP 访问主要环保组织的网站，例如 World Wildlife Fund (WWF) 的网站 www.world-wildlife.org 或 Friend of the Earth 的网站 www.foei.org，可以学到更多与环境保护有关的词汇。

39 乐意效劳：客户服务

A 优质的服务

试读这段对某家公司的评论。

They're a good company. They always make sure you get a **prompt** [quick, without delay] reply to any **query** [/ˈkwɪəri/ question or enquiry about service] and they're very **responsive to complaints** [they listen, take them seriously and act]. When I rang to ask if I could change the delivery date, they were very **accommodating** [willing to understand and help] and **got back to me** [called me with an answer to my query] within ten minutes with a new date. Whenever I ring I get **impeccable** [100% perfect] service; they're always very helpful and **obliging** [willing and happy to do things for you], whatever the problem is.

B 恶劣的服务

形容词	释义	例句
incompetent	failing through insufficient skill, knowledge or training	It wasn't just bad service; they were completely **incompetent**.
impersonal	lacking a personal element	I find supermarkets so **impersonal**.
shoddy	poor quality (of service or of goods)	They repaired my car but the work was very **shoddy**.
substandard	below the standard expected (often used about actions)	It was a **substandard** performance altogether for such a big company.
uncooperative	not supportive, unwilling to work together	The secretary was very **uncooperative**. So I ended up doing it myself.

There's a huge **backlog** of orders and they can't deliver for three weeks. [number which are waiting to be dealt with]

They never seem to have any **sense of urgency** when you ring them. It's exasperating. [feeling that your request is important or urgent]

They have a **helpline** [telephone number where you can get help if you have problems], but it's useless; they always **put you on hold** [make you wait] every time you ring.

My TV broke down but it was still **under guarantee/warranty** so I didn't have to pay to get it repaired. [having a written promise by a company to repair or replace a faulty product]

C 互联网服务

以下是一些互联网商品服务的有关说法：

Most big companies on the Internet offer a **secure site** [web address where no outside person can read your details] and have a **privacy policy** guaranteeing **safe transactions** [business exchanges which protect, e.g. your credit card from use by someone else].

This site has a very good **FAQ** [(pronounced as initials) **f**requently **a**sked **q**uestions] link where you can find answers to the most important questions.

This Internet bookshop is excellent: you can **browse** and it has a very good site index. [look at the list of goods/services offered before buying]

Most large Internet shopping sites offer **immediate dispatch** [goods will be sent at once] and a **nationwide** service [covering the whole country].

练习

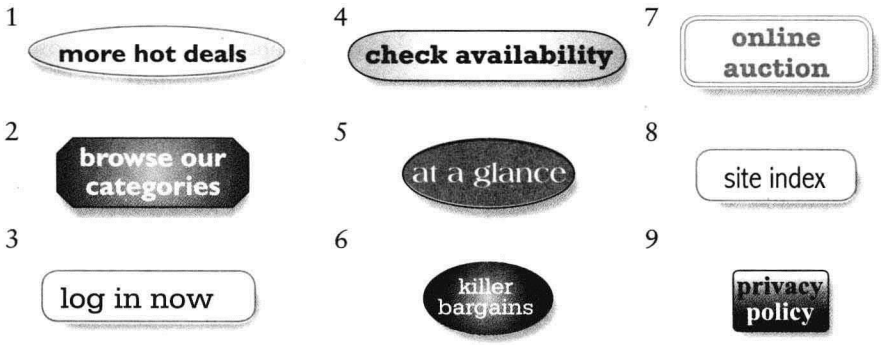
39.1 使用左页中的适当的词或短语填空。有的可能有不止一个正确答案。

1 I rang to complain and they put me _____ for about 15 minutes. Then I spoke to someone who promised to ring me again, but they never got _____ me. I'll have to call them again.
2 They promised immediate _____ of the goods I ordered, but I've been waiting over a week now, and nothing has arrived.
3 I've always found the company very _____ to complaints and inquiries.
4 I was expecting a _____ reply to my letter, but I've been waiting two weeks now, and still haven't had an answer.
5 I asked why they hadn't dealt with my order yet and they said there was a _____ of orders which had built up over the Christmas holidays.
6 In my opinion, the goods and the service were both pretty _____. I would have expected better quality from such a famous firm.
7 Staff in that shop are so _____; they are genuinely helpful.
8 I rang the _____, but they couldn't solve my problem.

39.2 回答问题。

1 Do you have a backlog of anything at the moment?
2 Have you had any recent experience of someone being very accommodating towards you?
3 What sort of companies or services usually have a helpline? Have you ever rung one? If so, what for, and was it successful?
4 Has anyone who has served you been uncooperative recently? What was the situation?

39.3 以下是目前一些购物及服务网站的链接按钮，把它们与下方的功能对应起来。



a) with one look you can see the whole range
b) look through the range before buying
c) rules for protecting your personal details
d) sale where you can offer a price for something
e) a further range of special offers
f) see if the goods you want can be supplied
g) list of all the goods/services available
h) the best special offers possible
i) enter the website straight away

40 权力机构：海关与警察

A 入境与出境：海关

On arrival in most countries as a foreigner you have to show your passport, a **landing card**[1] and often a **customs declaration form**[2]. You may need a visa and a **vaccination certificate**[3], depending on the **entry restrictions**[4]. Customs carry out **spot checks / random checks**[5] on people's luggage. They use **sniffer dogs**[6] to search for drugs and explosives. In most cases, you have to **clear customs**[7] at the **port of entry**[8]. Genuine refugees may try to seek **political asylum**[9]. Customs officers also look out for illegal immigrants, some of whom may be **economic migrants**[10].

1 form with your personal details and date of arrival
2 form showing how much money and what goods you are carrying
3 paper proving you have had the necessary health injections
4 rules about who can enter a country and for how long
5 checks done without warning
6 specially trained dogs who can smell drugs and bombs
7 take your bags through customs
8 the port or airport where you first enter a country
9 /əˈsaɪləm/ permission to stay in another country to avoid political persecution back home
10 people who try to enter from poorer countries just to get work

B 警察，交通监管员，等等

下文选自给在英语国家留学的学生的宣传单。注意其中的词汇搭配。

For some **traffic offences**[1] you have to pay a **fixed penalty**[2], and this may be an **on-the-spot fine**[3]. **Parking tickets**[4] for illegal parking are issued by police and/or traffic wardens.

If there has been an accident, the police may ask drivers to take a **breathalyser**[5] test and to **make a statement**[6] at a police station.

Police have limited **stop-and-search**[7] powers. **Surveillance cameras**[8] operate in many public areas.

A police officer cannot normally enter your home against your wishes without a **search warrant**[9].

1 *offence* is a formal word for an illegal action
2 fixed sum payable for a particular offence
3 fine payable at the time and place that you commit the offence
4 papers placed on driver's windscreens fining them for illegal parking
5 an instrument which you blow into that shows if you have consumed alcohol recently
6 say what happened and sign a copy of it
7 power to stop people and search them in the street
8 cameras that record everything that happens
9 official permission from a judge or magistrate to search your house

C 其他警备力量

名称	释义
security forces	often a name for the army and police together enforcing the law
plain clothes/undercover police	police who do not wear uniform
paramilitary police	police who are more like soldiers than civilian police officers
drug squad	police specially trained to fight the illegal drug trade
anti-corruption squad	police specially trained to discover and fight bribery/corruption

练习

40.1 用 A 中的短语和搭配替换划线部分，改写句子。

1 You'll have to show a paper proving that you have had injections for tropical diseases when you enter the country.
2 People entering from war-torn countries often ask for permission to stay to avoid political oppression in their own country.
3 You have to take your baggage through customs if you arrive on an international flight at San Francisco airport, even if you are flying on within the USA.
4 You have to fill in a paper saying how much money you're bringing into the country before going through customs control.
5 Some of the people were people who were poor and travelling hoping to find jobs, rather than genuine political refugees.
6 *Passenger to airline cabin attendant:* Could you give me one of those papers for filling in my passport number and personal details before we arrive, please?
7 At the airport the security guards had those special dogs that can smell drugs.
8 You'll need a visa; the rules about who can enter the country are very strict.
9 You have to fill in the city where you first entered the country in this box here.

40.2 根据你本国和自身经验，解释在何种情况下警察可能采取以下行动。其中一些说法并未在左页中出现，猜测其含义，如需要可使用词典。

1 carry out spot checks on lorries
2 charge someone with drink-driving
3 tap someone's telephone
4 use their powers of stop and search
5 carry out a surveillance operation on someone's house
6 set up a roadblock
7 publish a photofit picture
8 ask you to make a statement

40.3 回答问题。

What do we call ...

1 a police officer who does not wear uniform
2 a police force that are more like soldiers than police officers
3 police officers engaged in combating bribery in public institutions
4 the official paper you sometimes find stuck on your windscreen when you park illegally
5 the police unit that fights against the illegal drug trade
6 the police and army considered as a single body

FOLLOW UP

上网查找不同国家的入境和移民政策（通常会有英文版本），并注意任何新的词汇。例如，英国的规定可查 www.homeoffice.gov.uk/ind/hpg.htm，澳大利亚的规定可查 www.immi.gov.au。

41 世界观：思维方式

A 人与信念

人	释义	相关词汇
adherent (ób)	a person who supports a particular idea or party	adherence, to adhere to
convert (to)	someone who has taken on a new set of beliefs	conversion, to convert
fanatic	(disapproving) someone with a very strong belief	fanaticism, fanatical
radical	someone who believes there should be extreme political change, either of a left- or right-wing nature	radicalism
reactionary	(disapproving) someone opposed to change or new ideas	reaction
bigot	(disapproving) someone with strong unreasonable beliefs who thinks that anyone with other beliefs is wrong	bigotry, bigoted

B 女权主义的定义

Feminism: The modern feminist movement stems from the middle of the 1960s in North America. Basically the movement seeks equal political and social rights for women. The main theoretical **assumption**[1] shared by all branches of the movement **derives from**[2] the belief that there has been a historical tradition of male exploitation of women. Feminists are anxious to **eradicate**[3] this exploitation. Feminism is a fairly general label attached not to a set of universally accepted **postulates**[4] but to a range of beliefs with little in common, save a desire to raise **consciousness**[5] and to **usher in**[6] a more equal society.

1 unquestioning acceptance that something is true
2 has its origins in
3 abolish or get rid of
4 basic principles (verb **to postulate**)
5 awareness
6 introduce

C 其他表示可信度的词语

credible: believable　The schoolboy produced a barely **credible** excuse for arriving late.
credulous: too willing to believe what you're told
He's a **credulous** fool to believe what the management says.
incredulous: not wanting or able to believe something
I was **incredulous** when he told me he was quitting his job to go to New Zealand.
credence: (formal) acceptance that something is true
This document **gives/lends/adds credence to** Professor Ray's hypothesis.
gullible: easily tricked into believing things that may not be true　a **gullible** person
ingenuous: trusting, sincere, often in a way that seems foolish
It was rather **ingenuous** of Anna to ask a complete stranger to share a taxi with her.
(im)plausible: (un)convincing　a **plausible** argument　an **implausible** excuse
If you (formal) **ascribe** or **attribute** something **to** someone or something, you consider something to be caused, created or possessed by that person or thing.
Many scholars **ascribe/attribute** this anonymous poem **to** Dante.
a tenet: one of the principles on which a belief is based　the main **tenets** of liberalism
give someone the benefit of the doubt: to accept that someone is telling the truth even though it is not certain　We should **give her the benefit of the doubt.**
If you **take something with a pinch of salt,** you do not totally believe what you are told.
You should **take** what he says **with a pinch of salt** – he's inclined to exaggerate.
If you don't believe what someone is saying you can say informally:
I don't buy that!　**What d'you take me for?**　**Pull the other one!**
A likely story!　**I wasn't born yesterday!**　**I'll believe it when I see it!**

练习

41.1 写出符合 A 中词汇所形容的你认识的人的名字。

EXAMPLE *an adherent of the Liberal Party – my Uncle Jim.*

41.2 在 B 中找出以下含义的词或短语。

1 has its origin in (find two expressions)
2 wants to achieve
3 very much want to
4 totally
5 variety
6 not sharing much

41.3 参看 C，在下列句子中圈出正确的词。

1 A gullible person believes everything even if it is plausible/implausible.
2 I don't find his story at all credible/credulous.
3 When marking exams, try to give candidates the advantage/benefit of the doubt.
4 A likely/probable story! I don't believe one word you said.
5 That may be your view, but I don't buy/sell it.
6 It is better to take his promises with a pinch of salt/pepper.
7 The discovery of some ancient pieces of pottery lends consciousness/credence to the theory that there was once a Roman settlement there.
8 The play has been assumed/attributed to Shakespeare.

41.4 选择框中最适合的词填空，完成句子。

adherents	ascribe	converts	credence	eradicate
ingenuous	pinch	postulate	tenets	

1 The party claims that its primary aim is to _____ poverty.
2 It has been said that _____ to a religion can often be much more active supporters of the religion than people who were born into it.
3 It was rather _____ of him to suggest that many criminals would hand in their illegal weapons if they were promised an amnesty.
4 One of the basic _____ of Marxism is that economic relationships determine the nature of society.
5 Many of the self-professed _____ of this philosophy have never even read its basic texts.
6 Historians _____ the origins of this philosophy to Ancient Greece.
7 These findings lend _____ to the case put forward by the government.
8 Advances in modern technology have enabled contemporary physicists to _____ new theories about the origins of the universe.
9 I take anything said by an election candidate with a _____ of salt.

41.5 选 C 中的 6 个词或短语造句，要跟你的个人情况有关。

EXAMPLE *You shouldn't be so gullible and believe everything sales people tell you.*

FOLLOW UP 使用互联网搜索引擎，如 Google (www.google.com)，查找你感兴趣的世界观，例如 **feminism, Marxism, humanism, Buddhism,** 或者任何你想研究的 "**-ism**"。记下：(a) **-ism** 的词源；(b) 它的基本宗旨是什么；(c) 它和各派之间有什么区别（如果存在的话）。

42 民俗节日

A 描述节日

看这段关于中国传统节日的节选。

The Taipei Lantern Festival is held at the time of China's traditional Lantern Festival, which falls two weeks after the Chinese New Year and features children parading about the streets at night carrying homemade lanterns. Lanterns remain the focus of the festival. The most spectacular of all is the theme lantern at the Chiang Kai-shek Memorial Hall.

Chinese New Year's Day will normally fall between January 10 and February 19. It is the grandest holiday for all Chinese around the world and is celebrated in many ways during the course of the season, depending on your age, sex, and marital status. It celebrates the birth of a new year, a time for renewed hope.

名词	动词	形容词
There are big **celebrations** on New Year's Day.	New Year's Day **is celebrated** in many ways. The festival **celebrates** the New Year.	It was a public holiday and everyone was in a **celebratory** mood.
The festival is a time of **renewal**.	Each year, the festival **renews** the national spirit of the people.	The success of the cancer drugs gave her **renewed** hope.
The **festival** is held in March. [special day(s)/event] The **festivities** go on for days. [enjoyable activities]		There was a **festive** mood in the village during the spring holiday.
The parade in the town square was a very colourful **spectacle**.		The parade is always very **spectacular**.
Many customs have their origin in pagan **ceremonies**.		A **ceremonial** procession is held through the streets of the city.

B 其他与节日有关的词和短语

A lot of people are very **superstitious**, especially about numbers and colours. [have illogical beliefs about hidden forces in nature]

The festival celebrated the **centenary/bi-centenary** of the country's independence. [100th anniversary / 200th anniversary]

In some cultures, traditional festivals celebrate the end of periods of **penance** [actions to show you are sorry for bad deeds] and **fasting** [not eating for a long period].

The Rio de Janeiro carnival is always a very **flamboyant** [extremely colourful and exaggerated] and **raucous** [very noisy] event.

The Festival of the Dead was very **sombre** [serious, heavy and sad] and **atmospheric** [had a special feeling or atmosphere].

The annual holiday **commemorates** all those who died in the country's civil war. [formal: respects and remembers officially]

练习

42.1 使用 A 中的词或短语改写划线部分。要用句末给出的词性，如需要可稍加改动。

1 For Christians, Christmas is a celebration of the birth of Jesus Christ. VERB
2 The festival events included parades, sports and musical gatherings. NOUN (plural)
3 There was a feeling of celebration about the whole weekend. ADJECTIVE
4 For the country people, the spring festival symbolically renews the fertility of the land. NOUN
5 There was an atmosphere of ceremony as the military bands marched round the main square. ADJECTIVE
6 People tend to be in a mood for having a festival when the harvest is successfully completed. ADJECTIVE
7 You should go and see the lantern festival. It's always very spectacular. NOUN

42.2 这是一段有关节日的谈话，使用的语言较不正式。用框中的词和短语替换划线部分，使之更为正式，如需要可稍加改动。

parade	atmospheric	focus	be believed to	associate
pagan	symbolise	sombre	superstitious	flamboyant
raucous	trace			

Well, it's called the Festival of Flowers, and it's all to do with the coming of spring, after the dark, serious winter months. It all started with a religious tradition of taking flowers to the church to offer them to God. Spring flowers are the main thing in the festival, and there's always a big gang of people marching through the streets dressed in traditional costumes. It's all very lively and extremely colourful and rather noisy, and it has a great feeling about it. The flowers mean new life, and people thought they would be guaranteed a good harvest later in the year if they were offered to God. Nowadays most people don't have such funny beliefs about nature, but there's still a really old, pre-Christian atmosphere about it all ...

42.3

在你们国家会庆祝下面哪个节日？你能够用英语描述人们在这个节日所做的事情吗？如需要可使用词典或百科全书。

Mother's Day　Independence Day　May Day　Valentine's Day

FOLLOW UP

使用本单元的词汇写一篇导游文章，介绍你们国家、宗教或文化上的一个重要节日。注意要包括以下各项：When does it fall? What does it symbolise or commemorate? What is its main focus? What does it feature? What are its origins? When does it date back to? What sort of atmosphere does it have? 注意要尽量使用丰富的词汇来避免重复。

43 语言

A 世界主要语系

Indo-European [major group of languages in Europe and parts of Asia]

语系	语种举例
Slavic	Polish, Russian, Bulgarian
Germanic	Swedish, English, Dutch
Romance	Spanish, Romanian, French
Indo-Arian	Hindu, Romany (gypsy language), Farsi (spoken in Iran)
Celtic	Welsh, Irish, Breton (spoken in Brittany, France)
Semitic	Arabic, Hebrew
Austronesian	Malay, Tagalog (spoken in the Philippines), Maori (spoken in New Zealand)

B 语言方面的专业术语

Syntax: the grammar and word order
How does your language express **modality**? [meanings such as possibility and necessity] English does it with **modal verbs** like *must*, *could* and *should*.

Phonology: the sound system, i.e. pronunciation and intonation
How many vowel **phonemes** does your language have? [different sounds that distinguish meanings] English has 12 and 10 **diphthongs.** [sounds made by combining vowels, such as æ and eɪ]

Lexicon: technical term for vocabulary
The Germanic languages have many **compounds** [words formed by combining words, e.g. *software*]. English has a mixture of **Graeco-Latin** [originally from Greek and Latin] words and **Anglo-Saxon** [language of England from 500–1000 AD] words.

Orthography: technical term for writing systems
The English alphabet has 26 **characters** [letters or symbols]. Some writing systems, such as Chinese, are not alphabetic but have **pictograms** [characters representing pictures] or **ideograms** [characters representing ideas/concepts].

Morphology: how words are formed
There are three **morphemes** in *unthinkable*: *un*, *think* and *able* [units of meaning]. The Romance languages are **inflected** [words have endings to show tense, person, etc.], while the Chinese languages are **isolating** [each word has only one morpheme].

Written accents

变音	名称
embaraçar (Portuguese)	cedilla /sɪˈdɪlə/
für (German)	umlaut /ˈʊmlaʊt/
être (French)	circumflex /ˈsɜːkəmfleks/

变音	名称
tomé (Spanish)	acute /əˈkjuːt/
prière (French)	grave /greɪv/
mañana (Spanish)	tilde /ˈtɪldə/

练习

43.1 以下语种属于什么语系？

1 Russian
2 Welsh
3 Hebrew
4 Dutch
5 Malay
6 Spanish
7 Hindu
8 Bulgarian

43.2 用英语大声拼出以下非英语单词，如示例。

EXAMPLE coupé
You say: C-O-U-P-E acute (accent)

1 puño (Spanish)
2 gären (German)
3 grâce (French)
4 facção (Portuguese)
5 siège (French)
6 café (French)

43.3 用左页 B 中更为适当的专业术语替换句中划线部分。

1 The writing system of Burmese is quite difficult for a foreign learner.
2 Japanese uses several different writing systems with hundreds of letters and symbols.
3 The vocabulary of a language like English is constantly changing. A lot of new technical words are based on roots from Latin and Greek, rather than words from the period pre-1000 AD.
4 Unlike English, some world languages have very few vowel sounds and no combinations of vowels.
5 This ancient and beautiful alphabet uses symbols that evoke pictures to express meaning.
6 *Windscreen* is a noun made from two nouns.
7 Meanings connected with probability and obligation are expressed in different forms in different languages.

43.4 完成表格。如需要可使用词典。如果你的词典给出发音，标出其名词和形容词的重音区别。

noun	*adjective*	*change in stress?*
orthography		
lexicon		
modality		

FOLLOW UP 你能用英语描述你的母语及其主要特征吗？使用本单元的术语进行描述。在剑桥大学出版社出版的《剑桥语言百科全书》（***The cambridge encyclopedia of language*, by David Crystal**）中，可以找到世界上大部分语言的信息并学到更多关于语言的词汇。

44 历史

A

下面有一些谈论历史（尤其是历史上的政权）的很有用的专门词汇，黑体词的意思可通过上下文推断。

Lord Acton said, 'All power corrupts but **absolute power** corrupts absolutely.' Historically, power in Britain rests with the monarchy. Kings and queens **succeed one another to the throne** according to the **laws of succession.** A new monarch **accedes to the throne** as soon as his or her predecessor dies. The eldest son of the current monarch is the **heir apparent** with other close relatives said to be, say, **second, third** or **fourth in line to the throne.** If the eldest son is too young to reign, then a **regent** may take his place until he reaches a suitable age. There have been times in history when a **pretender** has **laid claim to** the throne, saying that it should rightfully belong to him, rather than to the person **proclaimed king.** In other words, he is trying to **depose** that king and to **seize power** for himself. His opponents would say that such a pretender is trying to **usurp power.** If he succeeds, then the person whose place he takes can be said to **fall from power.** A person who does not use power well can be said to **abuse power.**

B

以下有一些你可能在历史书或文学作品中见过的词汇。对于当代来说，它们可能是较不常用的概念，但仍然是人们非常熟知的词汇，有时还会用在当代生活的比喻中。

Periods

feudal: relating to a social system strictly organised according to rank, typical of e.g. Europe in the Middle Ages
medieval: of or from the Middle Ages i.e. 1000–1500 AD
Renaissance: period of new growth of interest and activity in the arts especially in Europe in the 14th to 16th centuries
Victorian: relating to the period 1837–1901 when Victoria was Queen of Britain – associated with values of self-control, hard work, loyalty, strong religious beliefs

Military

infantry: soldiers on foot
cavalry: soldiers on horseback
legion: Roman army
(suit of) armour: metal protective clothing worn by soldiers

Transport

chariot: two-wheeled vehicle pulled by a horse and used in ancient times for racing and war
galleon: large sailing ship with three or four masts used in trade and war in the 15th to 18th centuries
stagecoach: covered vehicle pulled by horses that carried passengers and goods on regular routes
cart: open vehicle with two or four wheels and pulled by an animal

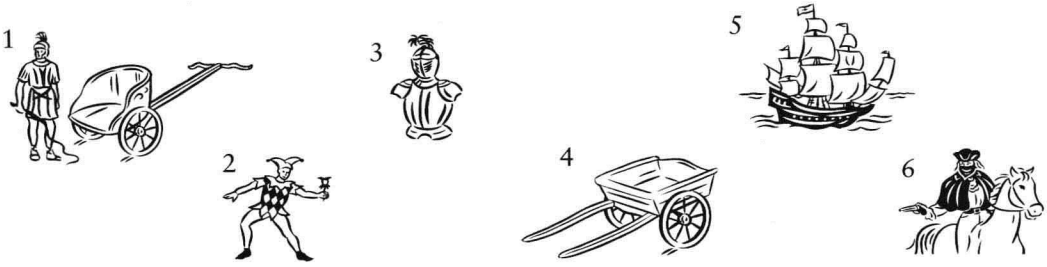
People

serf: person working on the land who legally belongs to his master
jester: person who entertained people in the Middle Ages with jokes
minstrel: person who entertained people in the Middle Ages with music and poetry
highwayman: man on horseback who robbed travellers on roads

练习

44.1 参看 A，从中选择 6 个你特别想掌握的黑体表达式，写一段你熟知的国家历史的短文，用上这些表达。

44.2 下图体现的是 B 中哪个单词？



44.3 以下是一些 B 中的词汇以比喻的方式运用在现代语境中。读这些句子，回答关于划线部分的问题。B 中的词汇的本来意义会帮助你理解其比喻含义。

1 The princess swept into the room <u>like a galleon in full sail</u>.
Was the princess (a) small and awkward or (b) large and stately?
2 Offering him the job before the interview is rather like <u>putting the cart before the horse</u>.
Is this doing things in (a) the right order or (b) the wrong order?
3 He's a very reserved person and you'll probably find it hard to penetrate his <u>armour</u>.
Is the person described likely to be (a) thick-skinned or (b) self-contained and retiring?
4 The company was quite <u>feudal</u> in its organisation.
Was the company (a) hierarchical or (b) democratic?
5 The reasons why I would never take such a job are <u>legion</u>.
Does the speaker have (a) a few or (b) many reasons?
6 The Chancellor is a kind of <u>modern highwayman</u> with his road tax.
Does the speaker (a) approve or (b) disapprove of the Chancellor's tax?
7 There has recently been <u>a renaissance of interest</u> in the harp.
Has interest (a) increased or (b) decreased?
8 The party is urging a return to <u>Victorian values</u>.
Is the party in favour of (a) hard work or (b) more women in power?

44.4 回答关于你们国家的历史问题。

1 Has anyone ever had absolute power in your country?
2 Has anyone ever fallen from power in a dramatic way?
3 Has anyone ever tried to usurp power?
4 Which of the words describing historical periods in B could be used about your country?
5 Did soldiers in your country wear armour and, if so, what was it like?
6 Which of the transport words in B would be most useful in talking about the history of your country? Give reasons for your answer.
7 Which of the people in B do you think you might have liked to be? Give reasons for your answer.

FOLLOW UP

在 History Channel 的网站 www.historychannel.com 有很多关于历史各个不同侧面的有趣文章。例如，网站链接可以帮你查到在你生日那天发生了什么历史事件，记下你见到的所有有用的新词汇。

45 贫困：富人与穷人

A 世界的贫困

DEFINING POVERTY **Absolute poverty** is defined according to an absolute minimum standard, often called the 'poverty line'. **Relative poverty** means that you are poor in relation to those around you. **Income poverty** ('less than a dollar a day', for example) means that you are poor if you have less money than the defined poverty line for your country. **Human poverty** takes into account other factors, such as life expectancy, infant **malnutrition**[1], **illiteracy**[2] and lack of food or clean water.

THE RICH In 1960, the 20% of the world's people who live in the richest countries had 30 times the income of the poorest 20%; now it is 82 times. The world's 225 richest people have a combined wealth of over $1 million million. Only four per cent of this wealth – $40 billion – would be enough for basic education and healthcare, adequate food, and safe water and **sanitation**[3] for all the world's people.

- the 15 richest people have assets that exceed the total **Gross Domestic Product (GDP)**[4] of sub-Saharan Africa.

AIDING THE POOR The UN has set the target for overseas aid at 0.7% of a country's **GNP**[5]. Only the Netherlands and Sweden currently meet this target and the US aid budget is the lowest of all. Overall, the average aid provided by richer countries is 0.22% of GNP. If it had stayed at its 1992 level of 0.33%, it would today be $24 billion more than it is.

The majority of aid is not spent on direct **poverty alleviation**[6]. Some is 'tied' to trade deals, or **debt servicing**[7]. In 1997, debt-service payments from sub-Saharan Africa amounted to 80% of aid. Only 24.3% of overseas aid goes to the poorest countries.

1 ill health caused by inadequate food
2 inability to read or write
3 systems for taking dirty water and waste from homes to ensure good hygiene
4 the total value of all the goods and services produced in a country in one year, excluding income received from abroad
5 Gross National Product is GDP plus money earned from abroad by companies based in that country
6 reducing the level of poverty
7 paying back money owed on loans

B 其他关于贫困的词汇和表达式

A number of artists who only became famous after their deaths spent their lifetimes in **penury.** [the state of being extremely poor]

It's a very poor country – over 60% of the population live **on** (or below) **the breadline.** [having the level of income of an extremely poor person]

The charity's main aim is to improve healthcare in **impoverished** areas of the world. [poor, without much money to live on]

Everywhere in the city you see **destitute** people living in shop doorways or under bridges. [without money, food, home or possessions]

Unfortunately the number of **deprived** children in the world is growing, even in so-called rich countries. [not having the things necessary for a pleasant life – food, home, money]

When we were first married we were **living from hand to mouth,** so it's nice to be able to spend a bit more now. [having just enough money to live without suffering]

Ever since I lost my job, **money has been tight.** [there has not been much money]

练习

45.1 下列陈述是否反映了 A 中的观点？标出每个句子是正确的 (*True*) 还是错误的 (*False*)。如果这个句子是错误的，请改正。

1 Income poverty takes health factors into account as well as money.
2 If the 225 richest people in the world each gave up 4% of their wealth, there would be no poverty problems in the world.
3 15 people each have wealth that is worth more than the GDP of sub-Saharan Africa.
4 The US gives 0.7% of its GNP to overseas aid.
5 The proportion of GNP given as overseas aid is increasing.
6 More than three quarters of aid is used to pay back previous loans from richer countries.
7 Just over a quarter of overseas aid actually goes to the poorest countries.

45.2 选择框中的词完成下列句子。

absolute	alleviation	Domestic	malnutrition
relative	sanitation	servicing	National

1 The figure for a country's Gross _____ Product will be larger than that for its Gross _____ Product.
2 In countries where food is scarce, _____ is inevitably a major problem.
3 Using overseas aid for debt _____ does not directly help any people who are suffering through poverty.
4 The amount of money earned by someone suffering from _____ poverty will be greater in a rich area than in a poor area, whereas _____ poverty does not take account of a person's immediate environment.
5 The Child Poverty Action Group does all it can for the _____ of poverty among children in the United Kingdom.
6 Temporary refugee camps usually have rather poor _____ facilities.

45.3 连接惯用搭配，它们都在 A 中使用过。

1	poverty	poverty
2	life	deal
3	overseas	servicing
4	minimum	aid
5	debt	standard
6	infant	expectancy
7	trade	line
8	income	malnutrition

45.4 选择最适合的词完成句子。

1 A person who sleeps in a cardboard box on the street and begs for money can best be described as impoverished/destitute.
2 Without my husband's income, we were very much living from hand to mouth/foot.
3 When we were children, money was always small/tight.
4 Even children with rich parents can be deprived/destitute in terms of love and affection.
5 An increasing number of people live below the penury/breadline.

45.5 你的国家是否也存在贫困问题？如果有，就此写一段短文。

46 英国政治

A

这段文章出自一位敏锐的英国政治社会评论家 Anthony Sampson 之手，文中使用的许多词汇和表达式在谈及或写到政治问题时十分有用。

Behind the public debates of parliament, the hidden pressures on government influence **legislation**[1] much more than speeches. Growing numbers of Members of Parliament (MPs) are themselves well-paid to represent commercial or special interests, sometimes more assiduously than their own **constituents**[2]. But the most powerful **lobbies**[3], like the big **corporations**[4] or the **Institute of Directors**[5], do not bother much about Members: they can go straight to **ministers**[6] and **civil servants**[7]. [...] **Lobbyists**[8] reach their annual climax when the **Chancellor of the Exchequer**[9] is preparing his **annual budget**[10] and receives **petitions**[11] from business interests pressing for **tax concessions**[12].

1 law-making (person = a **legislator**; verb = **legislate**)
2 people who elected one MP (as a group = **constituency**)
3 interest groups who try to influence MPs (verb = **lobby**)
4 large companies (adjective = **corporate**)
5 organisation of top business people
6 MPs with top responsibilities, e.g. for health, education
7 people employed in government departments (the Civil Service)
8 people who lobby (see note 3)
9 finance minister (in the UK)
10 yearly financial plan (of tax rates, etc.)
11 formal requests often signed by lots of people
12 reductions in taxes (verb = **concede**)

B

在下文中，Anthony Sampson 对比了各种不同类型的游说团体。

The interests of **producers**[1] – **centralised**[2], **close-knit**[3] and **well-funded**[4] – inevitably win over the **consumers**[5], who are scattered and **fragmented**[6], and the most powerful pressures of all, like the road-and-car lobby, change the face of the country through backstairs pressures which are concealed from any public debate. Gradually non-commercial lobbies have also become much better organised, like **Friends of the Earth**[7] or the **Child Poverty Action Group**[8], some with hundreds of thousands of **paid-up members**[9]. Others relentlessly lobby Members of Parliament with mass-produced letters and **deputations**[10] to intimidate and encircle them. [...] They have done much to **counter**[11] big-business pressures with the help of effective publicity; but they cannot take account of **grievances**[12] of the individual, who can only **appeal to**[13] his own Member of Parliament.

1 manufacturers; a person or business that makes something (note words from same root – **product, productive, mass-produced,** etc.)
2 concentrated in one central organisation (noun = **centralisation**)
3 with close ties to each other
4 with plenty of financial support
5 people who use/buy products
6 separate; not centralised
7 large environmental organisation
8 large organisation helping children
9 people who have paid their membership fees, i.e. committed members
10 people sent to speak for a group
11 oppose
12 complaints about unfair treatment
13 request support from

练习

46.1 下列关于左页文章的陈述是正确的还是错误的？

1 Parliamentary debates are the main influence on legislation.
2 Some MPs do more for big business than for their constituents.
3 The most powerful business organisations approach ministers directly.
4 Business is influential partly because it is well-organised and has money.
5 The public is well-informed about all the different lobbies.
6 Non-commercial organisations are getting better at influencing MPs.
7 The individual can do nothing if he or she has a grievance.

46.2 阅读左页的文章，找出以下词汇（每条至少找 3 个）：

1 nouns denoting people (Text A)
2 adjectives that can be used to describe social organisations (Text B)
3 verbs that can have a strong political association (Text B)

46.3 从文中找出与以下单词同词源的词汇。

1 commerce	3 constituency	5 consumption	7 legislate
2 mass-produced	4 petitioner	6 pressurise	8 representative

46.4 将 46.3 中的词汇与以下释义对应起来。

1 person standing for the interests of a group
2 person signing a formal request
3 made in large quantities
4 to make laws
5 area represented by one MP
6 to try to force someone to do something
7 amount purchased, used or eaten
8 all the activities associated with business

46.5 根据文章解释以下词汇的意思，并列出含有这些词汇的典型短语（每词至少列一个）。

Text A: influence assiduously a climax press for
Text B: close-knit backstairs relentlessly intimidate encircle

46.6 A 或 B 中哪个词符合以下斜体的释义？用这个词填空，完成句子。

EXAMPLE *polite* His behaviour was ..civil.., but not particularly friendly.

1 *place where customers stand to buy things in a shop or drinks in a bar.*
Customers are requested to queue at the other end of the .....
2 *the entrance hall of a house/building* Let's meet in the hotel ..... at 8 p.m.
3 *be attractive to someone* That kind of music doesn't ..... to me at all.
4 *vicar* Jo married a ..... and had lots of work to do helping in his parish.
5 *not criminal* Divorce cases are heard in ..... courts.
6 *round piece in a game* Each player takes it in turn to move his or her .....
around the board.

46.7 根据你国家的情况，回答以下政治方面的问题。

1 What processes lead to legislation in your country?
2 What is the role of debate in government in your country?
3 How powerful are (a) big-business and (b) non-commercial lobbies in your country?

FOLLOW UP 通过访问以下网站找出更多政治方面的词汇：英国网站 www.number-10.gov.uk；美国网站 www.firstgov.gov，www.whitehouse.gov。

47 法律用语

A 法律用语中的动词

to abrogate a law/treaty: to bring a law/treaty to an official end
to bend the law/rules: to break the law/rules in a way that is considered not to be harmful
to contravene a law: to break a law
to impeach a president/governor: to make a formal statement saying that a person in public office has committed a serious offence
to infringe someone's rights: to prevent a person doing what they are legally allowed to do
to lodge an appeal: to make an official appeal
to uphold/overturn a verdict: to say that a previous decision was correct/incorrect
to pervert the course of justice: to put obstacles in the way of justice being done
to quash a decision/conviction: to change a previous official decision/conviction
to set a precedent: to establish a decision which must, in English law, be taken into account in future decisions
to award/grant custody to: to give one parent or adult the main responsibility for a child, especially after separation or divorce
to annul a marriage/agreement/law: to declare that it no longer exists and never existed

B 罪行

罪行	释义	动词	罪犯
discrimination	unfair treatment on grounds of sex, race or nationality	discriminate (against)	
embezzlement	stealing money that is in your care or belongs to an organisation that you work for	embezzle	embezzler
harassment	making a person feel anxious and unhappy (sometimes for sexual reasons, sometimes to get, say, a debt repaid)	harass	
insider trading/dealing	illegal buying and selling of shares by someone who has specialist knowledge of a company	do/practise insider dealing/trading	insider trader/dealer
joyriding	driving around for enjoyment in a car you have stolen	joyride	joyrider
money laundering	moving money obtained illegally so that its origin cannot be traced	launder money	money launderer
perjury	lying when under oath	commit perjury	perjurer
trespass	go onto someone else's land without permission	trespass	trespasser

C 法律用语中的形容词

Matters relating to, say, divorce are of course dealt with in a **civil** court rather than a criminal court. More serious criminal offences are said to be **indictable** /ɪn'daɪtəbl/, i.e. they are tried by indictment /ɪn'daɪtmənt/ in a higher level of court, while **summary** offences are less serious and can be tried in a lower level of court. If a worker feels that his or her **statutory** rights have been infringed, then he or she may take the case to a tribunal, where an arbitrator has **discretionary** powers to rule on the dispute. The arbitrator's decision is **binding** on both sides – they have to abide by his or her decision.

练习

47.1 使用 A 中的适当动词填空，注意使用正确的形式。

1 Presidents Nixon and Clinton of the USA were both _____.
2 The prisoner decided to _____ an appeal against the court's decision.
3 The appeal court _____ the verdict of the lower court and the prisoner was released.
4 In English law any previous legal decision _____ a precedent for future decisions.
5 Judges almost always _____ custody to the mother rather than the father.
6 I'm not asking you to break the rules, just to _____ them a little.
7 You _____ my legal rights by not allowing me to vote.
8 Witnesses charged with perjury are accused of _____ the course of justice.
9 The marriage was _____ because the man had never properly divorced his first wife.
10 The Supreme Court _____ the murder conviction and the man was freed.

47.2 以下的人可能被控告 B 中的什么罪行？

1 A camper who spent a night on a farmer's land without asking permission.
2 A businessman who diverted funds from the account of the company he worked for into his own personal account.
3 Two boys who hot-wired a car and drove it around town before abandoning it. [to hot-wire means to start without using a key]
4 A witness who gave false evidence in court.

47.3 回答关于 C 中形容词的问题。

1 If someone sues you because they tripped on the stairs in your house, would the case be heard in a criminal or a civil court?
2 Would murder be an indictable or a summary offence?
3 If a contract is binding what does that mean for the signatories, i.e. the people who signed it?
4 How could a fine or other punishment be described if a magistrate is free to decide whether to award it or not?

47.4 与以下词汇对应的名词是什么？如需要可使用词典。

From these verbs – abrogate contravene impeach infringe pervert
From these adjectives – indictable discretionary statutory

47.5 用 47.4 中写出的名词填空，完成句子。

1 The _____ is read out to the accused at the beginning of a trial.
2 The magistrates can choose the most appropriate penalty at their own _____.
3 Some people consider _____ of others' rights as being as serious a crime as theft.
4 Many rules relating to employment are set by _____.
5 The trial was criticised by many as a _____ of justice.

在网站 www.leeds.ac.uk/law/hamlyn/toc.htm 找出关于英国法律的更多知识。记下最少 10 个有用的法律词汇和表达式。

48 战争与和平

A 战争态度的转变

One area in which great changes occurred in the twentieth century is in the public attitude to war and peace. The vocabulary in which war is spoken about has ceased to be one of courage, **patriotism**[1] and pride, and has instead become one of failure or of unimaginable disaster. The 'War Office' has in general become the 'Ministry of Defence'; the greatest destructive weapons ever invented have become '**deterrents**'[2]. Most people went out of the century with a view of the military 'virtues', of the place of war in a civilised society, fundamentally different from that of the nineteenth century and earlier.

The inventor of dynamite at the end of the nineteenth century believed that his invention would **outlaw**[3] war, since the devastation it could produce would make any major outbreak destructive beyond imagination. After **1918**[4] the same view was held about **aerial warfare**[5]. My childhood was dominated by the conviction that a major war would end up wiping out the cities of the industrial world. Since **1945**[6], the possibility of **nuclear annihilation**[7] has seemed to make war between the **great powers**[8] an act of collective suicide. These factors alone have contributed to a **revulsion against**[9] large-scale military operations among thinking people in all nations – though the world is unquestionably still full of national, ethnic and political **causes**[10] whose supporters see a resort to bullets and bombs as the only means of **gaining their ends**[11].

New Internationalist 1999

1 loyalty to your own country
2 ways of discouraging people from doing something because of the negative results
3 make war illegal or impossible
4 end of the First World War
5 fighting a war using aeroplanes
6 end of the Second World War
7 total destruction by nuclear weapons
8 most important political powers (used about the USA and the Soviet Union from the 1940s to 1990s)
9 feeling of total disgust towards
10 movements, organisations
11 achieving their aims

B 关于战争 / 和平的其他词汇和表达式

to wage war: to fight a war
hostilities: acts of war **hostilities begin / break out / end / cease**
to besiege: to attack a place by surrounding it (noun = **siege**)
to ambush: to attack unexpectedly from secret positions (noun = **ambush**)
a truce: an agreement during a war to stop fighting for a time
a ceasefire: agreement between two armies or groups to stop fighting
to rout: to defeat totally (noun = **rout**)
peacekeeping troops: neutral soldiers engaged in keeping the peace in a divided society
an international observer: outside, neutral person or body
a campaign: planned group of military activities to **plan/organise/launch a campaign**
an incendiary device: bomb They may be **placed / set off / thrown.**
germ/biological warfare: using germs to cause disease among enemy soldiers or crops

C 用战争作比喻

The government **is waging war on** drunken driving.
Paparazzi **are besieging** the Princess's home.
A major advertising **campaign** was planned to launch the new cosmetics range.
The Brazilian football team **routed** all the others in the World Cup.
The companies **are battling to** win market supremacy.
We have **a major fight** on our hands if we are to save the company from bankruptcy.
It's time to **rally the troops** and get them to do some overtime. [call together people/workers]

练习

48.1 回答以下关于 A 中文章的问题。

1 How had people's view of the place of war in civilised society changed by the year 2000?
2 The inventor of dynamite was the Swedish scientist Alfred Nobel, who also founded the Nobel prizes. How does the text help to explain why he made one of those prizes a Peace Prize?
3 What twentieth-century changes in the nature of warfare does the text mention?
4 What is the connection between these changes and the general attitude to war?
5 What kind of people do not share this general attitude to war?

48.2 根据 A 中的词汇完成表格。

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
	deterrent	
	warfare	
outlaw		
	power	
		nuclear
	revulsion	
	annihilation	
	cause	

48.3 下列 A 中使用的名词还有其他的含义，并能用于不同的语境。写出含有这些词的不同表达式，要分别体现出它在 A 文中的含义和在其他语境中的含义。如需要可使用词典。

EXAMPLE ends – *to gain your ends; The ashtray was full of cigarette ends.*

1 area	3 society	5 outbreak	7 act
2 operations	4 cause	6 resort	8 means

48.4 使用 B 中有关战争的 8 个词语造句。

48.5 从框中选词完成句子。

ambush **truce** **bomb** **explode** **siege**

1 I heard Nick _____ with laughter when he saw Tom trying to dance.
2 Jane decided to _____ Sam on his way out of the office and invite him to have a drink with her on his way home.
3 The winning football team have been under _____ from photographers.
4 Surely we've been arguing for long enough. Let's call a _____.
5 If we _____ along the motorway we'll be there in under an hour.

FOLLOW UP 登录网址 www.un.org/peace，看联合国是怎样履行其维护和平的职责的。记录见到的有用词汇。

49 经济与财政

A 国际援助、债务及发展

在1999年网上的公开问答阶段，负责英国国际发展政策及活动事务的大臣是Clare Short，他回答了来自津巴布韦首都哈拉雷的某个提问。

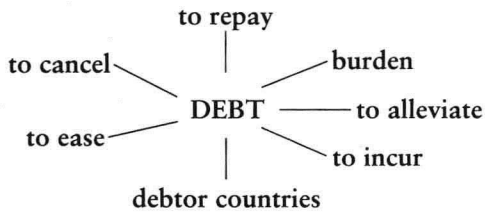
QUESTION: Are the UK and Europe tired of trying to **encourage real and lasting development projects** in Africa?

ANSWER: It may surprise you to learn that there are many **encouraging signs** in Africa. Over the last three years, 31 African countries **achieved economic growth** of more than 3% per year. Foreign direct investment, although still too small, has been rising. Africa's share in world trade has shown signs of **recovering from its long decline**. Some countries, such as Mozambique, Côte d'Ivoire, Uganda and Mauritius, have done much better than this.

But some 250 million people in Africa still live in **deep poverty*** and we must do better. With other development agencies we are committed to supporting those African governments which are **following policies** to **reduce poverty** and **improve access to** better health, education and clean water.

* **abject poverty**与之同义，也是一个典型搭配。

关于债务的词汇：



Development grants are often given to poor regions. [money to help economic development]

Sustainable development is the most important goal for most countries. [development that does not destroy the economy/the environment, etc.]

B 贸易合作

Free trade agreements often cause disputes between countries, especially when one country thinks the other is engaged in **restrictive practices**[1]. Occasionally, **trade wars** erupt, and **sanctions**[2] or **embargoes**[3] are **imposed** on countries, and may not be **lifted** for long periods. On the other hand European countries closely related economically and enjoying good relations have entered into **monetary union** and have a **single currency**.

[1] the placing of unfair restrictions, e.g. limiting imports

[2] restrictions on what a country may import/export

[3] total prohibitions on importing/exporting certain goods

C 经济困境与消极影响

If an economy is badly affected by war, we may refer to it as a **war-torn** economy. Economies in a bad state are often referred to as **ailing** economies.

Devaluation/revaluation of the currency may be necessary. [reduction/increase in value against other currencies]

Economies may **go into recession** and not **come out of / emerge from recession** for several years. A country may suffer from a **slump in prices** for its goods [serious fall/collapse in prices]. **Fiscal measures** [measures concerning taxes, etc.] may be used to **boost the economy** [give the economy a lift] when it is in recession.

练习

49.1 试着回想 A 中粗体标出的搭配，填空完成下列句子。

1 Development is important, but it should be _____ development, not the kind that destroys the environment and social structure.
2 The government is _____ a policy of giving aid only where it is used to _____ poverty.
3 There have been some _____ signs that development aid is working in many countries.
4 Millions of people still live in _____ poverty. (Give two answers.)
5 The economy has _____ from its decline and is now doing well.
6 The struggle to _____ economic growth in developing countries is a constant one.
7 It is important to encourage _____ development projects, not just short-term ones.
8 The goal should be to improve _____ to better health and education for the poor.

49.2 使用左页中更适当的语句替换划线部分，改写以下关于国际债务的句子。

1 Over a period of five years, the country got huge debts which it could not pay back.
2 Countries in debt are completely at the mercy of the rich nations.
3 The weight of debt is so great in some countries that their economies are collapsing.
4 Richer countries could do a lot to make the debt of poor countries less heavy (give two answers), and indeed, in some cases, could forget the debt altogether.

49.3 词汇测试

1 What kind of war can break out between countries concerning imports and exports?
2 Which two verbs are used with *sanctions* and *embargoes* to mean (a) 'placing' and (b) 'removing'?
3 What is the name for activities which make free trade difficult or impossible between countries?
4 What kind of union is it when two or more countries decide to share a single currency?
5 What do we call sums of money given to poor regions to assist development?
6 What can we call an economy that is devastated by war?
7 What adjective beginning with the letter 'a' can be used to describe an economy in a bad state?

FOLLOW UP 如果你能登录互联网，搜索一下 ***international aid***，看你可以找到多少相关的英文文章。如果你不能上网，可以在任何英文报纸的财经版面上找找看。

50 个人财务：平衡收支

A 现金、支票、信用卡等

I **was broke/skint** at the end of last month. [had no money left; broke = informal, skint = very informal]
I'm rolling in it this month; I got a cheque for £3,000 for some work I did. [informal: have a lot of money]
It's difficult **to make ends meet** sometimes with three children and only one parent working. [to survive financially]
Things are a bit tight at the moment. [informal: my finances are not good]
I was **strapped for cash** and had to borrow money from my parents. [informal: needed cash and had very little]
She gave me a cheque for what she owed me but it **bounced.** [the bank refused to pay it]
Who shall I **make** this cheque **out to**? [What name shall I put on it?]
Shall we **put/stick** this meal **on** my credit card? Then we can forget it. (informal)
Could you **charge** it **to** my credit card please? (formal)
The **APR** for this credit card is 23%, that's two per cent lower than my other card. [**a**nnual **p**ercentage **r**ate of interest]
My card **expires** 05/04. [is not valid after]
Credit card fraud has increased in recent years. [illegal use of someone's card or account]

A: Is this a credit card or a **charge card**? [card where you must pay back the whole debt each month]
B: Actually it's neither. It's a **store card.** [credit card issued by a store/shop for that store]

B 储蓄、退休金等

以下剪报中的黑体词汇涉及长期个人财务状况。

Victims of last year's rail crash will receive **lump sum**[1] compensation payments following a High Court decision today.

A **golden handshake**[2] of one million pounds was paid to the boss of one of Britain's biggest companies today.

Mr Carslow had taken out an **endowment**[3] ten years earlier to pay for his son's education.

The thieves stole Mr and Mrs Freal's **life-savings**[4], which they kept under their bed in a metal box.

People with well-managed **share portfolios**[5] have done better than individuals who buy stocks and shares privately.

1 single, large payment
2 large payment to someone on leaving a job
3 combined insurance and savings plan that pays out after a fixed period
4 money saved over many years
5 combination of stocks and shares of different kinds

练习

50.1 使用左页中的词汇完成句子。

1 This is a credit card. If you want one that you have to pay off each month, then you should get yourself _____.
2 She never used her card on 4th September. But someone did and bought hundreds of pounds of goods. It was a case of _____.
3 I haven't got enough cash to pay for this meal, but they take credit cards; shall I just _____?
4 You'll take a cheque, will you? Good. Who should I _____?
5 He wrote me a cheque, but he had no money in his account so it _____.
6 I'm sorry, I can't lend you anything at all. I'm absolutely _____. (Give two answers.)
7 I couldn't really afford it as I was a bit _____.
8 I have to be very careful how I spend my money; right now things are a _____.

50.2 看这些与个人财务有关的新词语。将它们与下方适合的定义对应起来。如需要可使用词典。

excess　loan shark　pension plan　premium　mortgage　health cover

1 The amount you pay each month or year for an insurance policy.
2 A person who lends money at extremely high interest rates to people in financial difficulty.
3 Money you borrow to buy a house or flat.
4 Money you have to pay up to a certain level if you make an insurance claim.
5 Insurance you pay against illness.
6 A scheme to provide you with an income when you retire.

50.3 完成句子。

1 She got a huge golden _____ when she left the company.
2 My old aunt Jessie is _____ in it. Every time I go to see her she gives me £100.
3 My father got a _____ sum when he retired, so he bought a weekend cottage.
4 She put her _____ -savings into an Internet company and lost everything when it collapsed.
5 The bank tried to persuade me to put my money into a share _____, with shares at different levels of risk, but all managed as one package.
6 Most students find it difficult to make _____ _____ and have to take evening or weekend jobs.

50.4 根据你自己的情况回答问题。

1 Look in your wallet or purse. What different types of cards do you carry?
2 Give the date on which one of your cards expires.
3 What kinds of store cards do you own? Which ones would you like to own?
4 Approximately what is the current APR on your credit card?

FOLLOW UP 去一家银行，观察它提供什么服务（可以拿些宣传页）。测试一下你自己是否能用英语说出银行的所有服务。

51 媒体：印刷品

A 报刊常见内容

"One thing I always read in the paper is the **obituaries**[1]; it's so interesting to read about the lives of well-known people. I also usually read the **leader**[2] (or **editorial**); it helps me form my opinion on things. Although national newspapers give you all the important news, I find that if you just want to sell your car or something, the **classified ads**[3] in a local paper is the best place. But at the weekend I just love the Sunday papers. Most British Sunday papers have **supplements**[4] with articles on travel, food and fashion and so on, and that keeps me occupied for hours. Last week there was a **feature**[5] on new technology in one of them; it was fascinating. My teenage daughter prefers magazines, especially the **agony columns**[6]. I just can't imagine writing to an **agony aunt**[7]. It amazes me how people are prepared to discuss their most intimate problems publicly."

1 descriptions of the lives of famous people who have just died
2 an article giving the newspaper editor's opinion
3 pages of advertisements in different categories
4 separate magazines included with the newspaper
5 an article or set of articles devoted to a particular topic
6 sections in a paper or magazine that deal with readers' private emotional problems
7 person, typically a woman, who answers letters in the agony column

B 一些印刷品类型

名称	释义	例句
pamphlet	small book with a soft cover, dealing with a specific topic, often political	The Conservative Party published a **pamphlet** on the future of private education.
leaflet	single sheet or folded sheets of paper giving information about something	I picked up a **leaflet** about the museum when I was in town.
brochure	small, thin book like a magazine, which gives information, often about travel, or a company, etc.	Do you have any **brochures** about Caribbean holidays?
prospectus	small, thin book like a magazine, which gives information about a school, college or university, or a company	Before you choose a university, you should send away for some **prospectuses**.
flyer	single sheet giving information about some event, special offer, etc., often given out in the street	I was given a **flyer** about a new nightclub which is opening next month.
booklet	small thin book with a soft cover, often giving information about something	The tourist office has a free **booklet** of local walks.
manual	book of detailed instructions how to use something	This computer **manual** is impossible to understand!

练习

51.1 记忆测试，不要看左页文字。哪些词具有以下含义？

1 the small advertisements in different categories found in newspapers
2 a person you write to at a magazine to discuss intimate emotional problems
3 the section of a newspaper which has tributes to people who have just died
4 an article in a newspaper which gives the editor's opinion
5 a separate magazine that comes free with a newspaper
6 an article or set of articles devoted to a special theme

51.2 用 B 中适合的词填空，完成句子。

1 I've decided to do my own car maintenance, so I've bought the ..... for my particular model.
2 Someone was giving out ..... in the town centre today about a demonstration that's going to take place on Saturday.
3 I love looking through holiday ..... and dreaming about flying off to exotic places.
4 I never read political .....; they're so boring.
5 This ..... gives the opening times for the art gallery.
6 I've got this really useful ..... with details of all the local sights.
7 I've read the ..... and I like that university; I think I'll apply.

51.3 将以下 8 个词分成两组，4 个一组；一组与书籍有关，一组与杂志有关。如需要可使用词典。

spine　jacket　subscription　foreword　issue　binder　edition　quarterly

51.4 根据上下文推测句中黑体部分的意思。

1 There's a new autobiography of the footballer Micky Rawlings, but it was written by a **ghost writer**.
a) someone who didn't have Rawlings' permission　b) someone who wrote it on his behalf　c) Rawlings wrote it but he used a different name
2 We've decided to go into **desktop publishing** for our sports club's newsletter.
a) published by a school or college　b) published only on the Internet
c) published using a home computer to design it
3 This book is a **facsimile** of an original edition published in 1693.
a) an exact reproduction in every detail　b) a modernised edition　c) a copy made on a fax/photocopying machine

51.5 以下句中黑体的表达式是左页中未涉及的，指报纸、手册、说明书等印刷品体现内容的方式。将其与右栏印刷品类型对应起来。如需要可使用词典。

1 It **lists** all the requirements for entry.
2 It **exposes** serious problems in the industry.
3 It **draws attention to** the fundamental issues.
4 It **gives you the lowdown on** accommodation.
5 It's **packed with** useful tips.
6 It contains a lot of **small print**.

a) a political pamphlet on poverty
b) a guarantee leaflet with a new camera
c) a university prospectus
d) a newspaper article
e) a tourist brochure
f) a booklet about buying a house

52 媒体：互联网及电子邮件

A 对互联网的赞成与反对

以下是互联网的一些的优缺点。

pros	*cons*
e-mail, **instant messaging**[1], **chat rooms**[2], **newsgroups**[3]	**ISP**[9] charges can be high for heavy users
e-commerce[4] (e.g. Internet banking, travel booking)	**downloading**[10] and **uploading**[11] times can be slow
ability to send files as **attachments**[5]	**spam**[12] can be annoying
fun of just **browsing**[6] and **surfing the Web**[7]	**cookies**[13] track your activities on the Web
ability to transmit **graphic images**[8] and sound files	many sites contain pornography and other **offensive material**[14]

1 a kind of e-mail where both people are online at the same time
2 an online conversation between a group of people on topics chosen by them, where you can enter or leave the 'room' at any time
3 a website where people with shared interests can get news and information
4 all kinds of business done on the Internet
5 files you send at the same time as e-mail messages
6 looking at different websites, with no particular goal
7 moving from one website or one web page to another, usually looking for something
8 technical term for pictures, icons, diagrams, etc.
9 (pronounced I-S-P) Internet Service Provider: a company that offers users access to the Internet and services such as news, e-mail, shopping sites, etc., usually for a monthly fee
10 bringing files to your computer from the Internet
11 sending files from your computer to the Internet or to another Internet user
12 unwanted advertisements and other material sent to you by e-mail from companies
13 a kind of program that is sent from the Internet to your computer, often without your knowledge, which can follow and record what you do, which websites you visit, etc.
14 material such as pornography, or extreme political views, or material that encourages hate and violence against people

B 电子邮件与网上交流

I've **bookmarked** the CNN home page as I use it regularly to get the latest news. [put it in a list of websites I can access immediately]
If you **subscribe to** newsgroups, you often get hundreds of messages. [become a member of]
Some ISPs allow you to **screen out** unwanted mail. [prevent from reaching you]
Our **server** [central computer that distributes e-mail and other services to a group of users] at work was **down** [not working] yesterday so I didn't get your message till today.
Someone **hacked into** our company server and destroyed all our files. [accessed it illegally]
Do you have good **anti-virus software**? It's worth updating it frequently. [protection against computer viruses]
She must have changed her e-mail address – the e-mail I sent her **bounced**. [came back to me]
That file you sent me as an attachment was unreadable. The text was completely **garbled**. [just a series of meaningless letters and numbers]

练习

52.1 将左边的词汇和右边的释义对应起来。

1 attachment	Internet site where people with common interests can e-mail each other online
2 cookie	unwanted web pages (e.g. advertisements) sent to you via the Internet
3 spam	company that gives you access to the Internet and offers news pages, shopping, etc.
4 chat room	program sent to your computer from the Internet, used to follow your activities
5 ISP	file sent at the same time as an e-mail message

52.2 某些正反义词在互联网和计算机语言中存在，某些不存在。在表格中标示出来。

word	*opposite*	*exists*	*doesn't exist*
delete	undelete		
download	upload		
update	downdate		
inbox	outbox		
online	offline		
install	uninstall		

52.3 用上面表格中适当的词填空，完成句子。括号中给出了释义。

1 I sent a photo of my house by e-mail to my friend in Canada, but it took ages to ..... (transfer from here to there) and I spent 20 minutes ..... (connected to the Internet).
2 I've had your message in my ..... (a place where unread e-mails are stored) for two days but haven't had time to read it yet.
3 I had a lot of trouble trying to ..... (add to the programs already on my computer) that new software I bought.
4 How do I ..... (restore something accidentally rubbed out) on this computer?
5 I write my e-mails ..... (while disconnected from the Internet) and then connect to send them.

52.4 以下表达式选自计算机和网络服务的杂志文章及广告，用你自己的话说出黑体词汇的意思。

1 A new law has given **e-signatures** the same legal status as handwritten ones.
2 **E-learning** will become more and more common as an alternative to traditional learning.
3 We have **e-enabled** everything you need to study on the Internet.
4 **E-books** are beginning to seriously compete with traditional books.
5 The **dotcom** economy has attracted hundreds of new businesses hoping to make a fortune.

FOLLOW UP

确定你会读出网站地址。例如，BBC 新闻的登录网址 http://news.bbc.co.uk/，要读成：*H-T-T-P, colon, double-slash, news-dot-BBC-dot-co-dot-UK, forward-slash*。注意 co 读 /kəʊ/，org 和 com 通常读 /ɔːg/ 和 /kɒm/。

53 广告

请看下列说明及例句。

A Advertisers like language that suggests their product is of *especially high quality.*

Buy our latest CD player – many **innovative** features. [original and interesting]
The design of our beds is **unsurpassed.** [the best there is]
Our cars **leave other cars standing.** [are much better than other cars]
Use our exam courses – they will **put/leave other candidates in the shade.** [make candidates from other courses seem insignificant]

B Advertisers like language that suggests *value for money.*

Rock-bottom prices in our sale. [extremely low]
Prices **slashed!** [dramatically reduced]
Bargains galore! [a huge number of products on sale at ridiculously low prices]

C Advertisers like language that suggests *luxury and comfort.*

Pamper yourself with our new perfume. [treat yourself to something luxurious]
Indulge yourself with the best. [allow yourself something enjoyable]
Enjoy a **sumptuous** meal in **opulent** surroundings. [Both adjectives mean rich and special: sumptuous collocates most strongly with words relating to food and furnishings, and opulent with words relating to lifestyle.]
Live **in the lap of luxury** for two weeks. [in a very luxurious way]

D Advertisers like language that suggests *scientific backing* for their product.

Vacuum cleaner **scientifically designed** to help you exercise as you use it.
Health drink medically **proven** to boost energy levels. [shown by research]
All our computers are **state-of-the-art.** [use the very latest technology]

E Advertisers like language that suggests their products *make us more attractive.*

Our ties will make you **stand out in the crowd.** [be noticed]
Our new lipsticks are **tantalisingly** appealing. [temptingly]
Have **fetching** feet and **alluring** ankles in our summer sandals. [both adjectives mean attractive]

F Advertisers often use rhyme and **alliteration.** [repetition of a sound]

Women's World – Wonderfully welcome every Wednesday.

It's much less fuss to catch the bus.

G 以下是现代生活中一些常见的广告种类。

magazine and newspaper advertisements/adverts; classified ads; TV commercials; posters; **billboards** [very large boards used for advertising]; **flyers** [sheets of printed information advertising something]; **trailers** [brief excerpts from a film, TV or radio programme which are used to advertise it]; sports sponsorship; banners; **sky-writing** [words written in the sky using smoke from a plane]; **sandwich boards** [advertising posters hung at the back and front of a person who then walks around a busy area]; brochures; carrier bags; logos on clothing and other products.

In addition, personalities often use TV interviews to **plug** [advertise] a new book or film.

练习

53.1 参看左页 A–F。填空完成句子，每空填一个词。

1 Enjoy a weekend in the _____ of luxury.
2 Don't just follow the herd – take the chance to stand out in the _____ .
3 Don't miss the _____ bottom prices in our special May Day sale.
4 For the best in state-of-the _____ equipment, come to Jones and Sons.
5 Why not pamper yourself this Christmas _____ our new foam bath?
6 Treat yourself _____ a special taste experience.
7 Our cosmetics _____ all others in the shade.
8 You'll find bargains _____ in our new discount superstore.

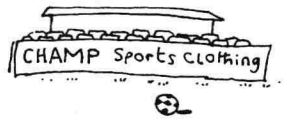
53.2 以下是其他一些广告中的典型用语。它们属于 A–F 的哪一类？其中某些可能不止适于一个类别。

1 colossal discounts
2 fit for a king
3 eye-catchingly elegant
4 go on – spoil yourself
5 developed by a team of international experts
6 we outshine the best of the rest
7 flatteringly fashionable
8 outstanding value

53.3 看左页中的 G。以下图画属于哪种广告？

1

2

3


4

5

6

7

8

53.4 看这则广告的内容。对其中的广告用语你有什么评价？

Radiance renewed

VITATONIC deep skin refresher

VITATONIC is a remarkable new cream which will nourish your skin so effectively that it becomes as soft and smooth as a child's. A special blend of natural herbs and life-giving oils, it will dramatically revitalise the texture of your skin, restoring the freshness and glow of youth. Massage in with your fingertips morning and evening and you will soon be enjoying compliments on your complexion.

53.5 为唇膏，汽车或学校等写一则广告。试着运用 A–F 中的所有语言特色，并使用本单元新学的词汇。

54 新闻：采集与发布

A 新闻采集

JOURNALISTS gather news in a number of different ways. They may get stories from **pressure groups**[1] which want to **air their views**[2] in public. They **seek publicity**[3] for their opinions and may hold **press conferences**[4] or may **issue a statement / press release**[5]. A person who especially wishes to attract news attention will try to include a **sound bite**[6] in what they say.
It is particularly hard for journalists to get material in the **silly season**[7].

Journalists also get stories by **tapping useful sources**[8] and by **monitoring**[9] international news agencies like Reuters. The more important a story is, the more **column inches**[10] it will be given in the newspaper. Journalists of different political persuasions often **put their own gloss/ spin on a story**[11] and some journalists gather stories by **muck-raking**[12].

1 people trying to influence what other people think about a particular issue
2 express their opinions
3 want to reach a wider audience
4 meetings to give information to and answer questions from the press
5 give a formal announcement to the press
6 short memorable sentence or phrase that will be repeated in news bulletins and articles
7 time of year, summer in the UK, when there is not much happening and trivial stories end up on the front page
8 making use of people or organisations which regularly provide news
9 regularly checking
10 space
11 present a story in a particular way
12 collecting scandal (informal and disapproving)

B 新闻发布

A **rag** is an informal word for a newspaper and it suggests that it is not of very high quality. The **gutter press** is a disapproving term used about the kind of newspapers and magazines that are more interested in crime and sex than serious news. A **glossy** is an expensive magazine printed on good quality paper.

Journalists produce **copy**, which has to be ready for a **deadline**. When everything is ready the newspaper **goes to press**. A very important story that comes in after going to press may find its way into a **stop press** column. A very new newspaper or story can be said to be **hot off the press**.

A story that is only to be found in one newspaper is an **exclusive**. A **scoop** is a story discovered and published by one newspaper before all the others. A major story can be said to **hit the headlines** on the day it is published. At that time the **story breaks** or becomes public knowledge. If it is an important story it will **receive a lot of coverage** or space in the press. A newspaper may be taken to court for **libel** or **defamation of character** if it publishes an untrue story that harms a person's reputation. If you are doing research into a news event, you may want to get hold of some previous issues of newspapers, or **back copies**, and you may wish to make a folder of **cuttings** from the papers about the event. ■

练习

54.1 将以下 A 中使用的词汇搭配连接起来。

1 air	groups
2 issue	conference
3 muck	bite
4 press	season
5 pressure	raking
6 silly	sources
7 sound	a statement
8 tap	your views

54.2 使用 B 中的词填空。

I started my career as a journalist working as a reporter on the local ..... (1) in my home town. The first thing I had to do was to take over the role of agony aunt. This was quite difficult for an eighteen-year-old boy straight out of school! Still, I managed to produce enough ..... (2) and in time for my first ..... (3). When that first column of mine ..... (4) to press, I felt extremely relieved and was so proud that I stayed up all night so that I could get half a dozen copies ..... (5) off the press for all the members of my family! I still have a copy of that first article of mine in a folder where I keep ..... (6) of all the work that I am especially proud of.

54.3 回答关于 B 中文章的问题。

1 Would you write to a chief editor asking for a job on 'his rag'? Why / Why not?
2 What do you think about newspapers if you refer to them as the gutter press?
3 What is it very important for journalists not to miss?
4 Can you give an example of a famous fashion glossy?
5 What two words might describe the kind of story that a journalist dreams of getting?
6 What two expressions refer to the moment of publication of a big story?
7 Which two crimes are mentioned in the text and what do they consist of?
8 What might a film star keep in her scrapbook of press cuttings?

54.4 使用括号里的词改写句子，保持句意不变。

1 Every newspaper inevitably gives its own particular view of events. (SPIN)
2 I have to find some articles from some previous editions of *The Times*. (BACK)
3 Read all about the royal divorce! Only just published. (HOT)
4 The floods took up more space in the papers than any other story this week. (COLUMN)
5 Politicians are always ready and willing to give their opinions to the press. (AIR)
6 The story about the scandal surrounding her uncle broke on her wedding day. (HIT)
7 Any newspaper does all it can to prevent being sued for libel. (CHARACTER)
8 Muck-raking is a characteristic activity of an inferior kind of newspaper. (PRESS)

FOLLOW UP 以下是两家英国主要的全国性报纸的网站，使用其搜索工具搜索任何你感兴趣的主题文章：
The Times www.thetimes.co.uk *The Guardian* www.guardianunlimited.co.uk

55 健康与疾病 I

A 相关短语动词及动词与介词的搭配。

I'm **fighting off** a cold at the moment. [trying to get rid of]
Marge isn't in today; she's **gone down with** flu. [has caught, usually a non-serious illness]
I won't be going today. I've **come down with** a dreadful cold. [with *I* we *say come down* not *go down*]
I had a virus last week, but **I got over it** quite quickly. [got better/recovered]
My sister's **recovering from** a major operation. [getting better: used for more serious illnesses]
Harry **suffers from** hay fever and sneezes a lot if he is near grass or flowers. [used for more long-term problems]
He **died of/from** lung cancer. [*Not*: He ~~died with~~ lung cancer.]

B 保健制度

In Britain, **healthcare**[1] is paid for through taxes and **national insurance**[2] payments taken directly from wages and salaries. The government decides how much will be spent on the **National Health Service**[3], but a lot of people feel they do not spend enough. Hospital treatment and visits to a **family doctor** (or **GP**)[4] at a **surgery**[5] or **clinic**[6] are free, but there is a **prescription charge**[7]. Dentists and opticians charge fees. Private healthcare is available and a large number of insurance schemes exist to enable people to '**go private**'[8].

[1] general expression for all of the services offered by hospitals, clinics, dentists, opticians, etc.
[2] tax paid by most adults which covers the costs of healthcare for everyone
[3] British name for the service that covers hospitals, clinics, dentists, etc.
[4] doctor who looks after people's general heath: GP means *general practitioner*
[5] small centre with just two or three doctors
[6] large centre with several doctors and kinds of services
[7] charge for the medication the doctor prescribes, which you pay at a pharmacy
[8] choose private healthcare

C 严重疾病与健康问题

以下有一些表示严重疾病的词汇，用下划线标出了重音。在学习较长的单词和短语时，要了解其重音模式，最好标出重音。

diabetes: disease where the body does not properly absorb sugar and starch
bronchitis: inflammation in the breathing system, causing you to cough
heart disease: serious illness connected with the heart which can lead to a heart attack
skin cancer / lung cancer / breast cancer: harmful tumours in those areas
TB (or **tuberculosis**): infectious disease in the lungs
cholera: an intestinal disease that can be caused by bad drinking water
hepatitis: inflammation of the liver
typhoid: fever, with red spots on the chest and abdomen
heart attack/failure: when the heart fails

练习

55.1 下列每组词汇中哪一个的重音 (stress) 与其他不同？如果有左页中没有出现过的词，你又无法确定，可以查词典。

EXAMPLE **tab**lets **med**icine pre**scrip**tion (answer: prescription; stress on second syllable)

1 diabetes bronchitis cholera
2 heart attack sore throat lung cancer
3 hepatitis typhoid tuberculosis
4 illness disease sickness
5 consultant doctor surgeon
6 hospital ambulance transfusion
7 heart disease surgery TB

55.2 根据所表达是正面意义 (positive meaning) 还是负面意义 (negative meaning)，将以下与健康和疾病有关的日常短语动词和表达式分成两组。如需要可使用词典。

be poorly	feel a bit under the weather	be over the worst	fight off
be on the mend	be back on one's feet again	get over	come down with

使用以上词语填空。

EXAMPLE [Nurse to visitor in a hospital] 'I'm sorry, Mr Pickering is rather poorly today and we're not allowing visitors.'

1 [Someone speaking to a colleague just returned to work after an illness] 'Hello, Frank, good to see you _____.'
2 [Person ringing their place of work] 'Jo, I won't be in today, I've _____ a cold.'
3 [Person in hospital, just beginning to get better, talking to a visitor] 'Oh, I'm OK. I'm _____ now. I still feel bad, but I should be out within a week or so.'
4 [Parent to a child with a cold] 'Don't worry, darling. Everyone has a cold now and then. You'll _____ it.'
5 [Someone to their partner, who is worried about them] 'Don't worry. It's nothing serious. I'm just feeling _____, that's all.'
6 [Someone ringing a workmate] 'I'm trying to _____ the flu, but nothing seems to help. I don't think I'll be in work tomorrow.'
7 Hilary was quite ill last week, but she's _____ now and should be back at work next week.

55.3 以下搭配是否适当？改正不适当的搭配。

1 Her mother died with skin cancer.
2 Is there a prescription price in your country?
3 In Britain, national security is a separate tax from income tax.
4 Healthcare is the biggest item in the nation's budget.
5 Are there insurance societies for private healthcare in your country?
6 Private dentists charge very high fees.
7 She suffers of a severe allergy and can't be in a smoky room.

56 健康与疾病 2

A 轻微疾病及其谈论方式

注意 **hurt** 与 **ache** 不同：

My arm **hurts** where I banged it against the car door. [gives pain caused by an injury]
My wrists **ache** from too much typing at the computer.

固定表达 **(the usual) aches and pains** 常用来指不太重要的小问题。

A: How've you been keeping recently, Mona?
B: Oh fine, you know, just the usual **aches and pains.** (~~Just the usual pains and aches~~)

固定表达 **cuts and bruises** 指小伤痛。

A: I hear you fell off your bicycle. Are you all right?
B: Yeah, fine, just a few **cuts and bruises,** nothing serious. (~~Just a few bruises and cuts~~)

其他一些身体上的不适：

My hand is **stinging** since I touched that plant. [sudden, burning pain]
My head is **throbbing.** [beating with pain]

I have a **stiff neck** from turning round to look at the computer screen all day. I'll have to move the monitor to a better position. [pain and difficulty in moving your neck round]
I feel a bit **dizzy.** I think I should sit down. [a feeling that you are spinning round and can't balance]
She was a bit **feverish** this morning, so I told her to stay in bed. [with a high temperature]
I had a terrible **nauseous** feeling after taking the medicine, but it passed. [/ˈnɔːsiəs/ feeling that you want to vomit]
He was **trembling** all over; I knew it must be something serious. [shaking]
My nose is all **bunged up** today with this horrible cold. [blocked]

其他表示“不舒服，但不严重”的非正式表达：

You look a bit **off-colour** today. Are you all right?
I was feeling a bit **under the weather,** so I stayed home that day.
I'm just feeling a bit **out of sorts,** it's nothing to worry about. I'll be fine tomorrow.

B 另类疗法

现今很多人更愿意选用另类的治疗方法（与传统西医不同的方法）。例如：

acupuncture /ˈækjʊpʌŋktʃə/

chiropractic /kaɪrəʊˈpræktɪk/

herbal medicine

homeopathy /həʊmiˈɒpəθi/: taking tiny amounts of natural substances to treat an illness
aromatherapy /ərəʊməˈθerəpi/: using aromatic oils and massage

练习

56.1 改正句中的错误。

1 She was feeling out of the weather and a bit fevering so she took the day off.
2 I felt really off my colour yesterday and my head was throwing, so I took a tablet.
3 I felt a bit off the sorts and seemed to have more pains and aches than usual.
4 My arms are hurting after carrying that heavy suitcase of yours.

56.2 使用 A 中的词或短语改写划线部分。

1 I was feeling quite <u>as if I had a high temperature</u>.
2 The drugs always gave her <u>a feeling that she wanted to vomit</u>.
3 I felt <u>as if my head was spinning</u> and went and lay down for an hour.
4 My nose was <u>blocked</u> so I got a spray from the chemist.
5 I got <u>a pain in my neck</u> from driving a long time in an awkward position.
6 Joanna was <u>shaking</u> and looked unwell, so I asked her if she needed help.

56.3 使用框中的词完成句子。如需要可使用词典。

dosage　prescription　allergic to　medication　symptoms　vaccinations　sick note

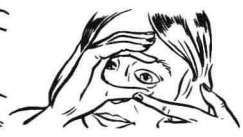
1 I can't take penicillin; I'm ..... it.
2 Before you take those pills, read the label to see what the correct ..... is.
3 I'm going abroad next month so I have to get the necessary ..... .
4 If you consult a new doctor you should tell him or her if you are already on any ..... .
5 Did the doctor give you a ..... ? Do you want me to take it to the chemist's for you?
6 I told the doctor my ..... , but I don't think she was listening.
7 The doctor gave me a ..... for my employer. I was off work for two weeks.

56.4 以下这些另类的治疗方法叫什么？

1 uses herbs and other natural plants
2 uses oils which smell nice and are rubbed into your body
3 uses needles to stick into specific parts of your body
4 uses tiny amounts of substances which cause the illness the doctor is trying to cure
5 manipulates your spine and bones to ease backache and other pains

56.5 下面有四幅图，是左页中未提及的卫生医疗方法。你能将图画和下方的标注对应起来吗？

1

2 

3

4

a) donate blood
b) have physiotherapy
c) get contact lenses
d) have a filling

57 健康与疾病 3

A 医疗信息宣传单

阅读这段关于头痛药的宣传单节选。

If your answer to any of the following questions is YES, then you should tell a doctor or pharmacist before taking these pills.

- **Are you pregnant or breastfeeding?**
- **Are you sensitive to any of the ingredients in these pills?**
- **Do you suffer from liver, kidney or heart problems?**
- **Do you suffer from haemophilia [problems with your blood not clotting[1] properly]?**
- **Are you taking any other medicines – particularly for blood pressure, anticoagulants for thinning the blood, antidepressants, cortico-steroids, anti-epileptic drugs?**
- **Are you asthmatic?**
- **Are you suffering from dehydration[2]?**
- **Do you suffer from or have you suffered from a stomach ulcer[3]?**

WARNING:
DO NOT EXCEED THE STATED DOSE

Medicines may cause unwanted side effects[4] in some people. If, after taking this medicine for the first time, you have an asthma attack or bronchiospasm (difficulty in breathing), gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (vomiting of blood or passing of dark, tarry stools[5]), stop taking these pills and consult a doctor or pharmacist.

1 forming a partly solid lump
2 not having enough water in your body
3 painful infected area on the skin or inside your body
4 unwanted effects in addition to the intended one
5 medical term for (formal) **excrement** or (informal, childish) **pooh**

B 用医疗作比喻

社会中的问题和不良状况以及生活中的其他问题常会被说得像疾病一样。请看下列说明及例句。

The word **symptom** is often used when talking about problems in society.
The current spate of car thefts is a **symptom** of a deeper underlying problem.
This behaviour is **symptomatic** of his general lack of self-confidence.

The causes of a problem can be **diagnosed** and the outlook for a situation can also be referred to as the **prognosis** in the same way as we talk about the prognosis of an illness [how experts expect it to develop].

以下是另外一些用医疗作比喻的例子：

an **ailing** organisation [one that has a lot of problems] The economy has been **ailing** for some time, but it is hoped that the new government will improve things.
a rash of burglaries [a number of similar things happening at the same time]
World Cup **fever** election **fever** [great excitement]
at **fever pitch** to reach **fever pitch** [a point of very high intensity]
With a week to go before Anne's wedding, preparations had reached **fever pitch.**
Experts in the history of the area take a rather **jaundiced** view of the likely success of the peace talks. [unenthusiastic or sceptical because of previous bad experiences]
to **carry the scars of / be scarred by** [be permanently affected by a negative experience]
I'm afraid that children will always **be scarred by** having experienced war at so young an age.

练习

57.1 完成构词表格。如需要可使用词典。

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
		pregnant
breastfeed		
		sensitive
clot		
	drug	
	dehydration	
	ulcer	
	effect	

57.2 用 B 中的比喻替换划线部分。可进行必要的改动。

1 Excitement grew extremely strong as the day of the final match dawned.
2 Unfortunately, a number of our investments are weak at the moment.
3 There has been a sudden large number of car thefts in our part of town.
4 Unfortunately, she is still affected in a negative way by her divorce.
5 Ralph's jealousy is a characteristic feature of a person with general low self-esteem.
6 What do you think the prospects are for the peace talks?

57.3 下框中的医疗词汇也可以用作比喻。用这些词填空，完成下面的段落。如需要可使用词典。

paralysed	ailing	fatal	rash
disease	prognosis	fever	contagious

The country has been ..... (1) by the latest rail strike, with no rail services at all running today. The railway service has been ..... (2) for some time, but if today's action is prolonged it may prove ..... (3) to the rail industry. The Minister for Transport commented, 'The country has been suffering from a ..... (4) of local strikes since the first one in Nortown last month. It was ..... (5) and one strike led to another. Things reached ..... (6) pitch last week and we can only hope that this ..... (7) will come to an end soon.' The minister's ..... (8) is that things will only start to improve once people appreciate the seriousness of the situation.

FOLLOW UP 访问英国 National Health Service 的网站：www.nhsdirect.nhs.uk，学习更多的医疗词汇。

58 饮食，运动与健身

A 胆固醇与健康

Cholesterol[1] only becomes a problem when you have too much of it and it starts to promote the production of a fatty **plaque**[2] that can clog the arteries. Interruption of blood flow to a main heart vessel can cause a heart attack; a blocked blood vessel on the way to the brain could cause a stroke.

Some say that cholesterol-rich foods such as eggs, shellfish and **offal**[3] should be banished from the diet, but these foods don't significantly raise cholesterol levels. The cholesterol in them is broken down quite efficiently and then **excreted**[4], so they are fine to eat in moderation.

Fibre[5] produces substances that help to clear the blood of bad cholesterol and acts as a '**buffer**'[6], so less fat is brought into contact with blood vessels and less is absorbed. Fibre also keeps bad cholesterol within the **gut**[7] from where it can be excreted.

1 fatty substance found in the body tissue and blood of all animals
2 unwanted substance that forms on the surface of the arteries
3 organs from inside animals which are eaten as food (brains, heart, kidneys, liver)
4 got rid of from the body
5 substance in food that travels through the body as waste, helping digestion
6 something (or someone) that helps protect from harm
7 tubes that carry food from the stomach

B 跑步运动与卡路里

Running, or swift walking, uses the major muscle groups, making it the most efficient form of **cardiovascular**[1] exercise. It has been shown to have a positive effect on blood fats by reducing cholesterol levels. It also lowers blood pressure and helps **diabetics**[2] by improving **glucose**[3] tolerance and reducing **insulin**[4] resistance.

Running is a very efficient way to burn calories. Converting your weight into **pounds**[5] and then multiplying the result by 75 per cent will give you the amount you burn per mile. The average is about 500 calories for every three miles. If you did this three times a week, you'd lose $\frac{1}{2}$ lb a week, 2 lb a month or 24 lb a year.

This all-round form of exercise is used in the treatment of mental illness and depression, because it is thought to raise levels of the **mood enhancer**[6], serotonin.

1 affecting the heart and blood circulation
2,3,4 people suffering from diabetes, an illness in which the body cannot cope with **glucose** [sugar] because it does not produce enough **insulin** [hormone that controls the level of sugar in the body]
5 measure of weight, 1 pound (lb) = 454 grams
6 hormone that makes you feel happier

C 运动健身用于比喻

I **scored an own goal** when I told my boss it had only taken me a day to write the report. Now she wants me to write several a week. [made things worse rather than better]
My boss always seems to be **moving the goalposts**, which makes it very difficult to know what he wants. [changing the rules]
The new EU laws aim to provide a **level playing field** for all member states. [fair situation]
He's too young to be **in the running** for such a job. [seriously considered]
The two main parties in the election are still **neck and neck** in the opinion polls. [level with each other and equally likely to win]
Politicians often **skate around** a subject. [don't talk directly about]
The students all **sailed through** their exams. [passed very easily]

练习

58.1 回答关于 A 中文章的问题。

1 What two health problems may be caused by too much cholesterol?
2 Plaque can also form on teeth. Do you try to encourage or prevent this?
3 What do eggs, shellfish and offal have in common?
4 What sorts of food contain fibre?
5 Why is fibre useful?

58.2 回答关于 B 中文章的问题。

1 For what three conditions might doctors recommend running as a form of exercise?
2 How far on average does someone have to run to use up 500 calories?
3 In what way does this vary from person to person?
4 What mental health problem is also improved by running?
5 Why does running help with this problem?

58.3 参看 A、B 中的词汇，写出以下划线词汇的反义词。

1 can <u>unblock</u> the arteries
2 glucose <u>intolerance</u>
3 to <u>lower</u> serotonin levels
4 a mood <u>depressant</u>
5 <u>gentle</u> walking
6 <u>gain</u> 2 lbs a week

58.4 C 中的比喻都出自哪种运动？

58.5 运用 C 中的比喻改写句子。

1 Sarah passed her exams without any difficulty at all.
2 I wish he'd get directly to the point.
3 I've been told that they are seriously considering me for the job of supervisor.
4 Although he meant it as a compliment, Rick didn't improve his chances with Helen when he told her she looked as if she had put on some weight.
5 The situation is hardly fair when 18-year-olds take the same exam as 15-year-olds.
6 It's hard to know what to do when the regulations seem to be constantly changing.

58.6

以下选自 A、B 文中的单词还可以用于与饮食 / 健身不同的语境中。用它们造句，体现其在不同语境中的用法。如需要可使用词典。

1 interruption
2 banish
3 efficiently
4 buffer
5 vessels
6 tolerance
7 resistance
8 convert
9 burn
10 depression

58.7 写出 5 条关于饮食和健身的建议。在每句中最少使用一个本单元学习的词汇。

FOLLOW UP 在杂志中找一篇主题为饮食与健身的文章。阅读并写一篇摘要。

59 工业化

A 进程与实施

表达式	释义	反义词	释义
heavy industry	e.g. steel works, shipbuilding	**light industry**	e.g. manufacturing car parts, TV sets
manufacturing industry	making things; e.g. consumer goods	**service industry**	serving people; e.g. tourism, banking
high-technology (informal: **high-tech**)	involving computers; e.g. software industry	**low-technology** (informal: **low-tech**)	involving little or no computer technology
privatisation	e.g. selling off state rail-ways to private companies	**nationalisation** or **state ownership**	when industry is owned by the government

Many big industries are run as **public–private partnerships.** [partly state-owned, partly owned by private industries or businesses]
The car industry receives huge **subsidies** from the government. [money/grants which enable it to stay in profit]
Foreign companies are often given **sweeteners** by the government to persuade them to open factories in poor or underdeveloped areas. [money/grants or tax benefits to encourage them to open a factory or business]
The government tries to encourage **inward investment.** [investment from foreign companies]

B 工业化实践

例句	释义
Most of the factory workers are **on piecework** which puts them under great stress.	they are only paid for the amount they produce
Child labour is a serious problem in some developing countries.	the employment of children to do adult jobs
In many countries, the right to **trade union representation** has only come after long struggles.	the right to have a union that negotiates wages and conditions
Many cheap electrical goods are produced in **sweatshops** in poorer countries.	factories where people work very long hours for low wages
The company became a **lame duck** and collapsed after five years.	weak business that loses money
The **big multinationals**[1] often close factories as a **cost-cutting exercise**[2] and **relocate**[3] and **switch production**[4] to countries where labour and costs are cheaper.	1 big companies with operations in many different countries 2 effort to reduce their costs 3 move the company's offices to a different place 4 move the centre of manufacturing to a different place, often where labour is cheaper
Industries cannot grow successfully if there is too much **red tape**.	bureaucracy, i.e. government rules and regulations
Retraining and reskilling are necessary when an economy is modernised.	training people for new jobs and teaching them new skills for things they have not done before

练习

59.1 从 A 表中选择适合的词汇替换划线部分。

1 The economy cannot depend only on things like restaurants and hotels. We need to encourage industries that make things we can sell.
2 In this area there are a lot of industries that use computers and things, while in the north, they depend more on industries that don't use such up-to-date technology.
3 The idea that everything should be owned by the government is not very popular any longer, and selling industries off is the typical pattern all over the world now.
4 Industry with big factories producing things like steel and so on has declined, and now we're more dependent on industry that makes things like bicycles and furniture.

59.2 写出含义如下的词汇或表达式。

1 a payment or tax benefit to a company to persuade it to open a factory somewhere
2 a combination of state ownership and private ownership
3 payments or grants from the government which enable loss-making industries to continue
4 investment in a country by foreign companies
5 a weak industry that is losing money and cannot be rescued
6 bureaucracy and rules and regulations that restrict industry
7 an economy that depends on factories producing large quantities of cheap goods based on long hours and low wages
8 to change the location where goods are produced (two expressions)

59.3

框中是另外一些与工业问题有关的表达式。确定你了解它们的含义，并用它们填空，完成以下句子。如需要可使用词典。

black market　copyright infringement　industrial piracy　industrial espionage
money laundering

1 _____ is a serious problem in many parts of the world, with factories producing illegal copies of top brand names.
2 It was a serious case of _____. The designs for the new aircraft were photographed illegally and sold to a rival company.
3 _____ is a problem for people who make a living writing books. Illegal editions mean that the author receives no payment.
4 _____ is a huge international problem, as police and banks try to trace money from the illegal drugs trade and terrorism.
5 There is a big _____ in the importation of untaxed luxury cars in some countries.

59.4 写一篇 100–150 字的短文，描述你们国家的工业模式。描述劳动力状况、工会权利、最低工资、跨国公司的地位，等等。尽可能多地使用左页中的词汇。

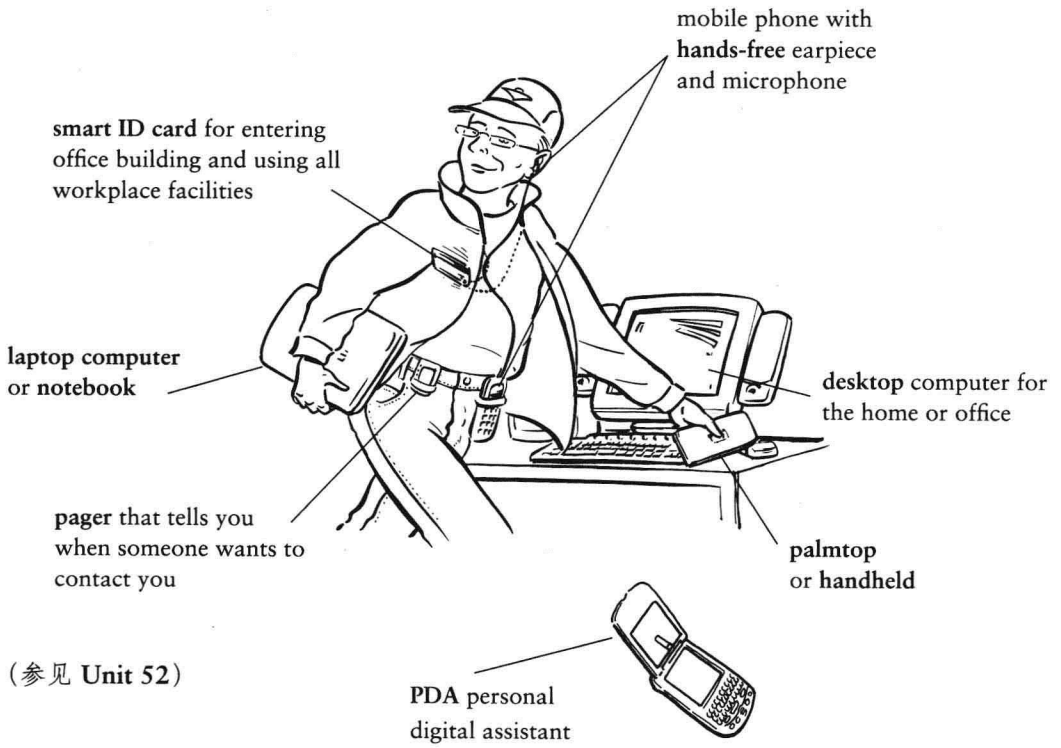
60 科学技术及其影响

A 科技发展影响日常生活

技术种类	应用范畴	相关例句
digital technology	digital photography, video and sound recording; digital broadcasting	The sound quality of a **digital** tape recorder is superior to that of an **analogue** [non-digital] one.
satellite communications	satellite navigation systems; mobile phones	She has an in-car **GPS** [global positioning system] navigation system, so she never loses her way.
biotechnology	genetic modification of plants	Biotechnology companies are experimenting with new, **disease-resistant** crops for farmers. [with a high level of protection against diseases]
artificial intelligence (AI)	automatic translation; identification systems	**AI** scientists are hoping to create computers that will be more and more like the human brain.
ergonomics	efficient design of human environments	This car has **ergonomically designed** seats; they're very comfortable on long drives. [designed to give maximum comfort and efficiency]

B 新时代的技术达人：**The New Millennium Techie***

[* person who loves acquiring all the new technology]



（参见 **Unit 52**）

练习

60.1 哪种电脑适用于以下句子？

1 I've got all my friends' addresses on my _____. I can just pop it into my shirt pocket; it's so convenient.
2 I've bought a new _____. It's about the size of an A4 sheet of paper and it only weighs 3 kilos.
3 _____ computers are small and light but the screen and keyboard are not very big and can be awkward to use.
4 I can't imagine not having a _____ computer at home; I've got so used to it. It's like another piece of furniture now.

60.2

以下还有一些与电脑有关的词汇，有些在左页中没有出现过。使用这些词汇填空，完成句子。如需要可使用词典。

computer nerd	analogue	thumbnail	icon
screensaver	trackpad	techie	footprint

1 There are some good pictures of the Olympic Games on that sports website. You can look at _____ pictures and then click on them to see the full-size version.
2 My younger brother's a real _____. He never goes out, and all he ever thinks about is computers, computers, computers.
3 I'm a bit of a _____ really; I love getting the latest mobile phone or the newest digital camera.
4 _____ video cameras cannot match the versatility and quality of digital cameras.
5 He has a really cool _____ which is a picture of planets, comets, stars and things all rushing towards you.
6 This new printer's got a smaller _____ than the one I had before, which is good, since my desk is not very big.
7 Just click on that _____ there to open the program.
8 I don't really like this _____ on my laptop; I'd prefer a proper mouse.

60.3 参看左页 A 部分，你认为哪种技术符合下列描述？

1 a round the world yachtsman/woman trying to establish his/her exact position
2 a designer creating a new type of computer keyboard which would be more efficient
3 a scientist producing a new type of wheat which does not need to be sprayed against insects
4 a camera that does not use film
5 a computer that could make decisions for itself

FOLLOW UP 电脑语言和专用术语的变化非常迅速。阅读报刊上的电脑广告，或者访问著名的软硬件生产商的网站，并记下所有的新词汇及其用法，这样你才能与时俱进。

61 未来展望

A 科技

以下技术可能在未来进一步发展。

smart buildings	computer-controlled buildings where things like lighting, heating, security, etc. are completely automatic; the adjective **smart** can be used for anything that is fully automatic, making its own decisions (e.g. a watch, a credit card, a camera, dishwasher, cooker)
virtual reality	computer-generated experiences that feel like the real thing; the adjective **virtual** can be used for any experience you can have without leaving your computer (e.g. a **virtual university/supermarket**)
interactive TV	TV set where you can choose exactly what to watch and when, and which can also be used as a computer for the Internet, etc.; the adjective **interactive** can be used for anything where the communication between you and the machine is two-way (e.g. **interactive video**: you do not just watch it, you can also send your own pictures)
interplanetary travel	travel to planets in outer space
e-commerce	doing business via the Internet

B 环境与自然

A **doomsday scenario** for the environment sees a world choked with pollution where many plants and animals have become extinct. [the worst possible prediction] Traffic in cities may become **gridlocked.** [unable to move at all]
Genetic modification may be used to change fruit and vegetables so that they grow better. [changing genes] However, many people object to the idea of **genetically modified** (or **GM**) **food.** [food created by changing the genes of the ingredients]
Genetic engineering [making artificial changes to the genetic structure of organisms] and **gene therapy** [changing genes in order to prevent disease or disability] will be used to eradicate diseases, thanks to our knowledge of **the human genome** [the 'map' or index of all the genes in a human being].
Designer babies may be possible. [babies whose genetic characteristics are artificially created]
Cloning of animals, and even human beings, may become common. [making a genetically identical copy]

C 社会与人

The breakdown of the traditional family structure has already occurred in some countries. In future, the **nuclear family**[1] may no longer be the main type of family unit, and more loosely defined relationships will develop. Communications and trade will be **globalised**[2]. Globalisation will also affect our relationships, how we mix and work with other people, and the world will become a **global village**[3]. We may even make contact with **extraterrestrial beings**[4]. The **gulf**[5] between rich and poor nations will widen if we do not do something about it.

[1] family with father, mother and one or two children
[2] cover the whole world
[3] a single community covering the whole world
[4] creatures from other planets
[5] gap/difference

练习

61.1 连接适当的搭配。

1 gridlocked	reality
2 genetic	village
3 human	traffic
4 virtual	genome
5 global	modification

61.2 下列描述指什么？

1 food which has been grown by interfering with plant genes
2 an identity card that holds every possible kind of personal information about you
3 the experience of near-reality you can get with certain computer programs
4 an exact genetic copy of something
5 creatures from other planets
6 the process of altering human and animal genes
7 the process of treating defective genes to get rid of diseases
8 a baby whose genetic features have been chosen by its parents

61.3 使用左页中的表达式改写划线部分。

1 The worst possible prediction for human society is that we will destroy ourselves with nuclear weapons.
2 Travelling to other planets may become normal in the coming centuries.
3 Doing business via a computer will become more and more normal.
4 The team of scientists is doing research into the index of all the genes in a human being.

61.4 左页中的哪些词或短语与下列句子有关？

1 These tomatoes will stay fresh for several months.
2 A typical family is often said to consist of husband, wife and 2.4 children.
3 This sheep is identical in absolutely every respect to the sheep standing next to it.
4 Doctors will be able to cure most diseases within the next one hundred years.
5 The world is becoming a very small place in terms of economics and communication.
6 Soon you'll be able to decide what you watch and when you watch it on TV.

61.5 以下几种观点中只有一个是错误的。你能猜出是哪个吗？

1 A Canadian businessman is developing a way of breaking up and melting Arctic icebergs so that he can sell very pure mineral water.
2 Russian scientists want to put a vast mirror into orbit that will be half as bright as the moon, to light up dark parts of the earth (e.g. Siberia in the winter).
3 Small, low-lying islands in Florida will be raised on huge metal stilts to protect them from rising sea-levels due to global warming.
4 Computer scientists are developing fully-functioning computers that can be worn on the wrist like a watch.

61.6 以 *My vision of the future* 为题，写一篇 100–150 词的短文。从科技、环境和社会方面对未来进行思考。

62 空间：宽展与局促

A 占据广大空间的事物

词汇	示例
extensive	Edinburgh has **extensive** traffic-free routes. The building contains **extensive** educational facilities.
spacious	a **spacious** garden　The city of Washington is **spacious** and green.
roomy	a **roomy** car　The house was **roomy**.
rambling	a large, **rambling** building　a **rambling** family mansion

其他表示占据广大空间的词和短语：

I like Canada because I love **wide open spaces.** [large areas without buildings or trees]
Little white cottages **were scattered** across the landscape. [covered a wide area]
The problem with this university is that the buildings are rather **spread out** and it takes a long time to get from one place to another. [not close to one another]

B 空间不足或占地局促的事物

词汇	示例
cramped	**cramped** hotel rooms　living in small, **cramped** apartments
poky (informal)	two **poky** little rooms　a **poky** little flat
congested	tanker traffic on the **congested** waterway the **congested** streets (full of traffic, people, etc.)
compact	a tiny, **compact** refrigerator　a **compact**, low, white villa

C 其他词汇和表达式

I saw her at the carnival, but I couldn't get to her because I was **hemmed in** by the crowds. [surrounded by people and not able to move]
There **isn't enough room to swing a cat** in his flat. [informal: the flat is very small]
We were **packed in like sardines** on the bus. [informal: too many people in a small space]
The government offices are an absolute **labyrinth.** [/ˈlæbərɪnθ/ vast and complex]
Do you suffer from **claustrophobia?** [/klɔːstrəˈfəʊbiə/ fear of confined spaces] My brother's the opposite; he suffers from **agoraphobia.** [/ægərəˈfəʊbiə/ fear of open spaces]

在下列对话中，B复述了A的话，注意标黑体的动词。

A: There were 16 of us in a minibus that seated 10, and it was a long journey.
B: Yes, we were all **crammed into** that tiny space for over five hours!

A: There's not much room, is there? Can I sit between you and Mark?
B: Yes, you can **squeeze in** between us.

A: We felt as if we were in prison in that youth hostel, didn't we?
B: Yes, we all felt as if we'd been **incarcerated** for some terrible crime!

A: Shall I put all those old papers into this rubbish bag?
B: Yes, just **stuff** them all **in** and we'll take it away later.

练习

62.1 根据左页 A、B 中的典型语境，选择最适合的词填空。

compact　cramped　spacious　poky　extensive　roomy

1 Me live in that _____ little flat! Not on your life!
2 I'd prefer a _____ car on a long journey.
3 This camera is nice and _____ ; you can hide it in your pocket and not look like a tourist.
4 Her mother lived in a rather _____ apartment near the park.
5 The city centre is beautifully _____ with many wide open squares.
6 The capital city has a(n) _____ underground railway network.

62.2 A-Z 怎样出售房屋？假设你是房地产经纪人，正在写一份待售房屋的说明。判断使用划线部分的哪个词最能说服别人买下这栋房子。如果不能确定，可以查词典。

Kingsmead House, Letchwood.

The property is rambling/spacious/a labyrinth, with a cramped/compact/poky garden, and is situated only ten minutes away from the bustling/congested/crowded town centre. There

are excessive/extensive/expensive leisure facilities nearby. Shops, banks, restaurants and other services are located in the pleasantly designed neighbourhood. Viewing by appointment. Offers in the region of £220,000.

Ref 023DW446

62.3 使用括号中的词改写句子。

1 The kitchen is so small you can hardly move in it. (CAT)
2 I feel dizzy when I'm in small, crowded spaces. (SUFFER FROM)
3 I couldn't get out of my space in the office car park the other day. (HEMMED)
4 Holidays in Australia are great if you love vast landscapes without any towns. (OPEN)
5 I hate the London Underground during rush hour. Everyone is pressing against one another in the trains. (SARDINES)
6 I dropped a glass and tiny pieces went all over the floor. (SCATTER)
7 The buildings in the holiday complex cover a wide area. (SPREAD)
8 The train was very full but I just managed to get on before the doors closed. (SQUEEZE)

62.4 使用左页 B、C 中的词汇改写句子。

1 Hundreds of people spent years as prisoners in the cells of this dark, damp castle.
2 I quickly put a few clothes and a couple of books in a rucksack and set off at once.
3 She has an irrational fear of open spaces.
4 We'll all have to try and fit into my little car; Larry hasn't got his with him today.
5 I always get a terrible feeling of being trapped in a small space when I'm in a lift.
6 I don't think we should try and fit everything into one suitcase. Let's take two.

FOLLOW UP 如果条件允许，阅读一些英文报纸或互联网上出售 / 出租房屋的说明，注意其中用来描述宽敞或局促空间的词汇，或者阅读英文游记中对建筑物和景观的描述。

63 时间：次序与经历

A 与时间有关的口语表达

We only meet **once in a blue moon.** [very infrequently]
He's spent **all his born days** in the village. [all his life]
I'll be with you **in a mo / in a sec / in a tick / in less than no time / in a jiffy.** [very soon; **mo** and **sec** are short for 'moment' and 'second']
Joe's been working here **for yonks / for donkey's years / since the year dot.** [for a long time]
We can talk about this **till the cows come home / till hell freezes over** but I'm not going to change my mind. [forever]
Are you sure he gave you the book **for keeps?** [to keep forever]
He turned up just **in the nick of time** – he very nearly missed the train. [only just in time]
He was a famous athlete but now he's **over the hill / past it.** [too old]
She was a child film star but was already a **has-been** by the age of twenty. [person who is no longer famous]
Sue did her homework **in a flash / at a rate of knots.** [very quickly]

B 表示“时间的度过”的形容词

形容词	释义	搭配
fleeting	brief or quick	glimpse/visit/smile/moment/appearance
transient	lasting for only a short time (formal)	effect/population/feeling/pleasure
persistent	lasting for a long time or hard to stop or get rid of	cough/problems/rumour/smell/ accusations/critic/offender/failure/gossip
inexorable	continuing without hope of being stopped (formal)	rise/slide/decline/pressure/advance of time
incipient	just beginning (formal)	frustration/rage/illness/rebellion/wrinkles
pristine	unchanged from its original condition (formal)	condition/beach/image
protracted	lasting for a long time or made to last longer (formal)	negotiations/discussions/argument
lingering	taking a long time to leave or disappear	perfume/kiss/smile

C 以时间为主题的名言

Time is like a river made up of the things which happen, and its current is strong; no sooner does anything appear than it is carried away, and another comes in its place, and will be carried away too. (*Marcus Aurelius*)

The illimitable, silent, never-resting thing called Time, rolling, rushing on, swift, silent, like an all-embracing ocean-tide, on which we and all the Universe swim like exhalations, like apparitions which are, and then are not. (*Thomas Carlyle*)

There is no past, present or future. Using tenses to divide time is like making chalk marks on water. (*Janet Frame*)

Time is a great teacher but unfortunately it kills all its pupils. (*Hector Berlioz*)

练习

63.1 将词汇按正确顺序排列，组成句子。

1 since / They've / same / living / the / house / year / the / been / in / dot
2 airport / the / the / time / to / of / We / nick / just / got / in
3 to / keeps / Sarah / it / John / for / gave
4 no / we / time / in / Together / get / less / can / done / it / than
5 never / all / He's / his / been / than / nearest / born / town / further / days / in / the
6 nick / We / hospital / got / in / to / time / the / of / the

63.2 你最可能用 B 中的哪个形容词描述以下内容？

1 a scent that remains in the room after its wearer has left
2 a feeling of joy that is short lived
3 criticism that seems to go on and on
4 a headache that is beginning
5 sheets that are beautifully clean and starched
6 the never-ending ageing process – you can't stop its progress
7 a grin that lasts only for a moment
8 an investigation that takes a long time to complete

63.3 连接适当的搭配。

1 lingering	beach
2 fleeting	population
3 incipient	kiss
4 inexorable	smell
5 persistent	peace negotiations
6 pristine	appearance
7 protracted	wrinkles
8 transient	advance of time

63.4 列出 C 中提到的所有与水有关的词语。

63.5 使用简单直白的非比喻语言解释每条名言的意思。然后说明为什么这些名言要比简单的说明更生动。

63.6 用括号中的词改写句子，保持句意不变。

1 Jo's worked in the same office since the year dot. (DONKEY'S)
2 We'll be ready to leave in a mo. (LESS)
3 Most of the members of the band may be in their fifties but they're certainly not past it. (HILL)
4 You can argue with him till hell freezes over, but he'll never see sense. (COWS)
5 My grandmother's lived all her life in the same house. (BORN)
6 Kit promised he'd get here at a rate of knots and he kept his word. (FLASH)

63.7 回答问题。

1 Would you like to work for the same company for donkey's years?
2 What could you personally happily do till the cows come home?
3 Do you think it's a good thing to spend all your born days in one place?
4 Can you think of one thing that you do once in a blue moon?
5 What sorts of things do you do at a rate of knots and what sorts of things do you do **at a snail's pace** [very slowly]?

64 动作：踱步与漫步的细微差别

A

动词	移动方式	原因
limp	uneven	one leg hurts
hobble	awkward	shoes too tight, feet hurt
stagger	unsteady	drunk, ill
stumble	nearly falling	uneven surface
lurch	sudden or irregular	drunk, ill, walking on moving ship, etc.
tiptoe	quiet and on toes	not to be heard
amble	easy, gentle	pleasure or relaxation, no special aim
stride	long steps	purposeful
strut	proud, chest held out	to look important
tramp	firm, heavy steps	walking for a long time
trample	pressing repeatedly with feet	often wishing to destroy
stamp	pushing foot down heavily	anger, or just heavy-footed
trudge	heavy, slow, with difficulty	tired
chase	quickly	wanting to catch something or someone

B

以上许多单词也可以用于比喻。

The maths lesson **limped** to a conclusion and everyone thankfully left the room.
Tony's business **staggered** on for a few years and then finally collapsed.
Jane did **staggeringly** well in her exams. [amazingly]
The government has **lurched** from one economic crisis to the next.
Maria **takes** everything that life throws at her **in her stride**. [takes ... calmly]
Parents and teachers should try not to **trample** on children's dreams.
If the Campbells don't pay their bill this week, you'll have to **chase** them.
Although the economy seemed to be **stumbling** last year, it has made a perfect recovery now.

C

表示水的运动的词汇也适用于人。

Crowds of tourists **flowed** across the square all day long.
As soon as the school doors opened, children **spilled** out into the playground.
People **streamed** into the lecture hall and soon there was standing room only.
People have been **pouring** into the exhibition all day.
A **trickle** of people had already appeared outside and by midday a crowd had gathered.
We **meandered** round the town, window-shopping to our hearts' content.
Refugees have been **flooding** across the border since the start of the war.

D

以下是一些常与 **taking (a) step(s)** 合用的形容词，常有比喻意义。

backward　big　critical　decisive　first　giant
major　significant　unprecedented [never having happened before]

练习

64.1 下列句中表示“走”的动词使用不正确。参看 A，判断应使用哪个动词更适合？

1 The tramp strutted wearily homeward, his shoulders hunched in the rain.
2 The mother trudged across the bedroom, doing her best not to wake the baby.
3 Those tight shoes with their ridiculously high heels are making her amble.
4 Ever since he had an accident last year, he has stamped a bit.
5 The drunken men strode unsteadily out of the pub at closing time.
6 Please try not to stumble on the daisies – they look so pretty in the grass.
7 The little dog tramped after the postman and caught his trouser leg in his teeth.
8 The sea was so rough that even the sailors were tiptoeing around the decks.

64.2 回答下列关于 B 中句子的问题。

1 How successful and enjoyable was the maths lesson?
2 Did Tony's business come to a sudden end?
3 Did people expect Jane to do so well in her exams?
4 Did the government seem to take each crisis smoothly and in its stride?
5 What kind of person do you think Maria is?
6 What do parents and teachers do to children's dreams, if they trample on them?
7 How exactly might this person chase the Campbells?

64.3 看 C 的例句中与水的运动有关的动词，这些词在句中体现了人是以怎样的方式移动的？

64.4 使用 C 中与水的运动有关的词造句，体现它的原义。

64.5 用任意适当的形式将下列句子补充完整。

1 Rudi took his first steps towards becoming a doctor today when he .....
2 ..... was a very significant step for humankind.
3 Yesterday the British government took the unprecedented step of .....
4 It was a big step for me to .....
5 I think you took a backward step when you .....
6 The business took a critical step today when it .....

64.6 以下还有一些表示移动的动词，如左页 A 那样将此表补充完整。如需要可使用词典。

verb	*type of movement*	*reason for type of movement*
file		
saunter		
sidle		
glide		
mill around		

64.7 下面的人可能会做练习 64.6 中的哪个动词表示的动作？

1 graceful dancers
2 guests at a cocktail party
3 schoolchildren going into class
4 someone who is irritatingly anxious to make you like them
5 tourists exploring in a relaxed way

65 行为：礼仪举止与肢体语言

A 礼仪举止

When I was a child, gentlemen used to raise their hats to female acquaintances on the street and I was taught to **mind my Ps and Qs**[1] and to give up my seat for my '**elders and betters**'[2] on the bus. Now I am grown-up, no one either raises their hat to me or offers me a seat on a crowded bus. It's as if **courtesy**[3] itself is now a thing of the past! Some might call it **prim** or **starchy**[4] to hanker after an old-fashioned code of **etiquette**[5], but things must somehow have been pleasanter when people tried to behave in a **gentlemanly** or **ladylike**[6] way. I don't believe that people observed the **social graces**[7] just because they were anxious about doing **the done thing**[8]; it was more a matter of being considerate to others and **oiling the wheels of**[9] social interaction. So, let's stop being **offhand**[10] with each other and **stand on ceremony**[11] just a little bit more.

1 make an effort to be polite
2 people older than you
3 politeness (adjective = **courteous**)
4 very formal and correct; without humour (other words for this are **strait-laced** and **prissy**)
5 formal rules of behaviour
6 polite in a rather formal way
7 polite behaviour
8 informal phrase for 'socially acceptable behaviour' (opposite = **not the done thing**)
9 making easier
10 casual, slightly rude
11 insist on formal behaviour

B 肢体语言

研究表明，我们在交流中使用的肢体语言之多超乎想象。以下是一些通过肢体语言表达情绪的例子。

动词	表示	释义
flutter your eyelashes	flirting	used of female behaviour towards a man
raise your or others' eyebrows	surprise or shock (either showing or causing)	either a person or behaviour can raise eyebrows
twitch	nervousness	repeated small movements with part of the body
flinch	pain or fear	sudden small movement
squirm	embarrassment or nervousness	move from side to side on your chair in an awkward way
smirk	self-satisfaction	smile (negative associations)
beam	happiness	broad smile (positive associations)
sniff at something	disapproval	you also sniff when you have a runny nose
snort	disgust or great amusement	make an explosive sound by forcing air quickly up or down the nose
titter	nervousness or embarrassment	small laugh

练习

65.1 下框中的形容词选自左页 A 部分，将它们按照褒义 (*positive*) 和贬义 (*negative*) 分成两组。

prissy　　offhand　　gentlemanly　　ladylike　　starchy　　strait-laced

65.2 连接适当的搭配。

1 code	graces
2 elders	thing
3 give up	on ceremony
4 mind	the wheels
5 oil	your seat
6 social	and betters
7 stand	your Ps and Qs
8 the done	of etiquette

65.3 参看 B 并回答以下问题。

1 *Priscilla fluttered her eyelashes at Rob.* Why might she do this?
2 *Joe was twitching all evening.* Do you think he was relaxed?
3 *Jane sniffed at every comment I made at the meeting.* How did Jane feel about my comments?
4 *Jack flinched when I touched his arm.* Why do you think he flinched?
5 *The children's language on the bus raised a few of the other passengers' eyebrows.* What must the children's language have been like?
6 *Look at the photo. Meg's smirking and Tanya's beaming.* Who does the speaker think looks nicer – Meg or Tanya?
7 *There was an occasional titter at the comedian's jokes.* Do you think the comedian was pleased at how his jokes were received?

65.4 选出划线部分中最适合的词，完成句子。

1 Willy sniffed/snorted with laughter all through the play.
2 Whenever I'm tired or nervous, my eyelid starts to twitch/flinch.
3 Sit still and don't squirm/smirk like that.
4 Who's Mary fluttering her eyebrows/eyelashes at now?
5 The dentist stopped drilling as soon as he felt me flinch/snort.
6 Please don't titter/sniff – here's a box of tissues!

65.5 以下还有一些与行为举止有关的词。每组中的共同点是什么？如需要可使用词典。

1 snigger, chortle, guffaw, giggle
2 glower, scowl, frown, glare
3 gawp, ogle, scan, leer
4 whimper, sniffle, sob your heart out, grizzle

FOLLOW UP

在网址 www.bartleby.com/95/ 上中找出更多描述社交礼仪和行为规范的内容。记下你找到的所有有趣的词条。

66 声音：从噪声到无声

A 表示无声的形容词及其搭配

词汇	释义	例句
silent	without noise or not talking; used for people and things that are perhaps unexpectedly or surprisingly quiet	They asked him several questions but he remained **silent**. The house was completely **silent**. Note also: **silent films/movies** [films made before sound was introduced]
quiet	without much noise or activity, or not talking much	It's very **quiet** here at night. [no noise] I had a **quiet** day at the office. [not much activity] My father was a **quiet** man. [didn't speak a lot]
noiseless	without noise; usually used as an adverb in formal or literary style	He closed the door **noiselessly** behind him. [with no sound at all]
soundless	without sound; usually used as an adverb in formal or literary style to indicate an unexpected lack of sound	The object vanished **soundlessly** into the night sky. Was it an alien spacecraft?

B 表示特殊声响的不太常见的动词

The door **slammed** in the strong wind. [closed with a loud bang]
My bike wheel is **squeaking**. I'll have to put some oil on it. [high, irritating noise]
We could hear the disco music **pounding** through the walls. [dull, beating sound]
The old wooden door **creaked** as I opened it. [noise of friction of wood and/or metal]
The sausages **sizzled** in the frying pan and smelt delicious. [sound made by frying]
A shot **rang out** and the bird fell from the sky. [typically used for the sound of a gunshot]
From our cottage, we could hear the waves **crashing** on the beach in the distance. [loud, heavy noise, typically used for waves]
He always **hoots/toots** his horn to let us know he's arrived. [sound made by a car horn]
In Rio you can hear police car sirens **wailing** all night. [making a rising and falling sound]
She **hammered** at the door but nobody answered. [knocked very loudly and repeatedly]

C 一些形容噪声 / 无声的表达式

There was an **eerie** silence in the old church. [rather scary]
The noise of the aircraft engines was **deafening**. [extremely and painfully loud]
He has one of those **grating** voices that gets on my nerves. [unpleasant, irritating]
She let out a **piercing** scream and fled as fast as she could. [high noise that hurts the ears]
Molly has a very **high-pitched** voice; it can be a bit irritating at times. [a constantly high level]

D 一些表示声响 / 安静的固定说法

Everyone was so shocked and silent **you could have heard a pin drop.** [there was total silence]
Hey you kids! Be quiet! **I can't hear myself think!** [said when people are making too much noise]
I need **peace and quiet** after a busy day at work. [calm and quiet period, after a noisy time]
You're as **quiet as a mouse!** I didn't hear you arrive at all. [very quiet indeed]

练习

66.1 使用 *silent, quiet, noiseless, soundless* 的形容词或副词形式填空。除了 *silent* 外，其他词只使用一次。

1 He closed the jewel-encrusted box _____ and left the room without waking the two sleeping figures in the bed.
2 It's very difficult to find a _____ place to live nowadays, even in the countryside.
3 Charlie Chaplin's _____ films are as funny today as they were in the 1920s.
4 The great bird flapped its wings and rose _____ into the evening sky.
5 The women kept up a _____ protest in front of the laboratories.

66.2 用下框和括号中的词造句，使之能放在下列各句之前，并保持句意连贯，如示例。

~~slam~~ pound creak crash sizzle ring out toot squeak wail

EXAMPLE (door) *The door slammed loudly.*
The wind must have blown it shut.

1 (shot) _____
Somebody was firing at the birds on the lake.
2 (door) _____
It was very old, made of oak and difficult to open.
3 (music, walls) _____
It was as if the musicians were playing in our bedroom.
4 (chicken, frying pan) _____
The sound and the smell made me even more hungry.
5 (rusty door hinges) _____
I think they need some oil.
6 (horn) _____
I looked out of the window and saw her car parked outside.
7 (waves) _____
It was wonderful to be so near the sea.
8 (police sirens) _____
There must have been an accident, or perhaps a robbery.

66.3 哪个形容词可以描述以下内容？（已给出其中的一个字母。）

1 An extremely loud noise, e.g. very loud music f_____
2 A strange, almost scary silence r_____
3 A high noise that hurts your ears c_____
4 A harsh, irritating kind of voice g_____
5 A voice that always sounds very high p_____

66.4 完成句子。

1 It was so quiet you could have _____.
2 I've had some noisy, hectic days with all those kids, now I'm looking forward to some _____.
3 Turn that music down! I can't _____.
4 I don't even notice that Jack is in the flat sometimes. He's _____.

67 重量与密度

A *heavy* 的同义词

以下是一些与 *heavy* 意义相似的形容词。注意其典型语境。

形容词	典型语境	示例
weighty	abstract and physical things; usually includes the idea of 'seriousness'	a **weighty** tome [large book] discuss **weighty** issues
unwieldy	abstract and physical things; usually includes the idea of 'difficult to handle'	**unwieldy** discussions an **unwieldy** object [e.g. a big box]
cumbersome	often used for machines and equipment that are difficult to handle; also used for systems, structures, etc.	a **cumbersome** weapon a **cumbersome** procedure
burdensome	usually used of abstract things	a **burdensome** duty
ponderous	usually used of abstract things, 'serious', but with more of a negative connotation	a **ponderous** tone of voice a **ponderous** thesis
lumbering	usually used of physical things; often suggesting 'heavy movement'	a **lumbering** truck **lumbering** reptiles

B 使用 *weigh* 的短语动词

I hate being **weighed down** with heavy suitcases when I travel. [carrying very heavy things]
She looked tired and **weighed down** with problems.
We'll have to **weigh up** the alternatives before deciding. [consider and compare]
She **weighed out** a kilo of nuts and put them in a bag. [weighed a quantity of loose goods]
I have to confess something to you. It's been **weighing on me** for ages. [troubling my mind]
The discussion was getting heated, and then Jean **weighed in** with some uncomfortable financial arguments. [added more points to the argument]

C 使物体密度增大 / 减小

You can put some flour in to **thicken** [make thicker] the soup, but you should **sift** it [shake it in a sieve to separate the grains] first, or it will go **lumpy** [have solid pieces in it].
The soup has been in the fridge so long it's all **congealed.** [become thick and solid]
This curry powder is years old. It has completely **solidified** in the packet. [become solid]
Do you have some white spirit? I need to **thin** this paint. [make thinner]
This fruit juice is very strong. I could **dilute it / water it down** a bit, if you like. [add water]
As the rush hour ended, the traffic began to **thin out.** [become less dense]
The hairdresser **thinned** my hair **out** and it feels much lighter now. [made it less thick]

D 与密度有关的形容词

The jungle was nearly **impenetrable,** so progress was slow. [impossible to move through]
The bomb shelter has an **impermeable** barrier that protects the occupants from radiation. [no liquid or gas can pass through]
This glue works even on **impervious** materials like glass and steel. [liquid cannot pass through]

练习

67.1 根据 A 中的典型语境，使用下框中的词填空，完成句子。

lumbering　cumbersome　weighty　unwieldy　burdensome　ponderous

1 It's a rather _____ system. I wish they would simplify it.
2 He gave a very _____ lecture on economic history that just bored everyone.
3 They spend hours drinking coffee and discussing _____ political matters.
4 A great _____ horse and cart was blocking the road, and no one could overtake it.
5 She had so many _____ obligations; her life was not her own.
6 The advancing troops were slowed down by their _____ old-fashioned equipment.

67.2 从 A 中选出可以与下列每组都能搭配的词填空。

1 _____
dinosaur
vehicle
goods train

3 _____
encyclopedia.
topic
issue

2 _____
fax machine
procedure
suitcase

4 _____
tone of voice
sermon
narrative

67.3 改正下列句中使用错误的含 *weigh* 的短语动词。

1 I weighed on a kilo of the flour and then added water to it.
2 He's very irritating. When you're trying to have a rational discussion, he always has to weigh through with his own selfish point of view.
3 I owe Gerry £150; it's been weighing over my mind for weeks. I must pay him.
4 We were weighed up with huge suitcases and bags, and the airport was terribly crowded; it was a nightmare.
5 I have to weigh in the various options before I decide which job to accept.

67.4 回答问题。

1 What does a hairdresser use *thinning-out* scissors for?
2 If there is dense fog, then it gets even denser, what verb could you use to describe the change?
3 What happens if you leave some coffee in the bottom of your cup for about a week?
4 What does 'Do not use undiluted' mean on the instructions on a bottle of medicine? What must you do before taking it?
5 What could you use a sieve for in cooking?
6 If someone is impervious to insults, is it easy to upset them by calling them stupid?
7 Is aluminium permeable or impermeable?
8 If someone says a book is 'impenetrable', what do they mean?
9 What do you think it means to say that someone's philosophy is 'rather lightweight'?
10 Which verb can be used to describe a situation where heavy traffic is becoming less?

68 颜色：范围与浓度

A 有关特殊颜色的词汇

pitch black: intensely black, used about darkness, night, etc. (**pitch** is an older word for tar)
jet black: intensely black, used about hair, eyes, etc. (**jet** is a black semi-precious stone)
scarlet: brilliant red, the colour of traditional British letter boxes
crimson: strong deep red
shocking pink: an extremely bright pink
ginger: orangy red, used about hair and cats
navy: dark blue, used about clothes, not eyes
turquoise: greenish blue, used about fabrics, paint, sea, etc. but not usually eyes
beige: a light creamy brown
mousy: a light not very interesting brown, used only about hair
chestnut: a deep reddish brown, used about hair and horses
auburn: a red-brown colour, usually used about hair

B 谈及颜色时使用的词

Red, blue and yellow are **primary colours**, by mixing them together you can make other colours. **Pastel colours** are pale shades of colour – pink, **mauve** [pale purple] and pale yellow, for example. **Strong colours** are the opposite of pastels. **Vivid colours** are strong, bright colours like scarlet or turquoise. **Fluorescent** colours are very bright colours which seem to glow in the dark. **Electric** blues or greens are extremely bright blues or greens. If white has a **tinge of** green, there is a very slight shade of green in it. If something is **monochrome**, it uses only one (or shades of one) colour, e.g. black, white and grey. The suffixes **-y** and **-ish** show that a colour is partly present, e.g. **bluey green, reddish brown.**

C 颜色的比喻

blue = depression (to **feel blue**); pornographic or indecently referring to sex (**blue movie, blue joke**); physical or unskilled (**blue-collar workers**)

red = anger (to **see red** = to be very angry); danger (**red alert**, a **red flag**); special importance (The royal visitor was given **red carpet** treatment. The day we met will always be **a red-letter day** for me.); left-wing in politics (**red point of view**)

green = nausea (to **look green**; People who are seasick often **turn/go green** and sometimes vomit.); envy (She turned **green with envy** when she saw her friend's diamond engagement ring.); care for the environment (**green tourism**; the **Green Party**)

black = depressing or without hope (a **black future**); anger (to look **as black as thunder**); illegality or incorrectness (**black market, black sheep of the family, black mark**). During the war people bought many goods on the **black market.** If I don't finish this report in time, that'll be another **black mark** against my name.
My brother was the **black sheep** of the family and left home at seventeen.

grey = lack of clarity (a **grey area**); brains (**grey matter, grey cells**)

white = purity (**white as snow, whiter than white**); being pale (She was afraid and went **white as a sheet**; a **white knuckle** [terrifying] ride at a theme park); office workers (**white-collar workers**)

练习

68.1 参看 A，回答问题。

1 Which four of these colours can be used to describe hair?
2 Which three of these colours might be used to describe an animal?
3 Which of the shades of red would you be most likely to use about the sky at sunset?
4 Which four of these colours are the most vivid?
5 Which of the blue and brown colours are used about shoes?
6 What colour is the traditional London bus?
7 Would you prefer to have mousy hair or auburn hair? Why?
8 When you are outside at night and you can't see, how can you describe the darkness?

68.2 参看 C，将左边的描述与右边的回应对应起来。

1 That child looks a bit green.	No, they make me feel sick.
2 He's always in a blue mood these days.	Yes, it's not at all clear what we should do.
3 That TV programme always makes him see red.	Yes, but they need qualifications.
4 It's a bit of a grey area, isn't it?	I think he's going to be sick.
5 They seem to be trying to blacken his name.	Yes, they want to do their bit for the environment.
6 Do you like white knuckle rides?	Yes, he can't stand the presenter.
7 White-collar workers earn more.	Yes, ever since his wife left him.
8 They're going to vote for the Greens.	I wonder what they've got against him?

68.3 使用英语学习词典查询以下表示颜色的词。记下示例中任何有用的新的表达式。

black　white　red　blue　yellow　green

68.4

广告商常使用有联想意义的新颖词汇来表示颜色。看下框中的词并回答问题。如需要可使用词典。

magnolia	strawberry	violet	ruby	emerald
burgundy	forget-me-not	jade	amber	cornflower
poppy	sapphire	turquoise	lime	coral

1 Which of the words in the box refer to precious or semi-precious stones?
2 Which of the words in the box refer to flowers?
3 Which of the words in the box refer to food or drink?
4 Which of the words in the box would be used to describe pastel shades?
5 Divide the words in the box into the basic colours that they refer to:
pink/red　*blue*　*green*　*other* (specify colour)
6 Which two of the precious stone words are most likely to be used to describe the sea?
7 Which two of the flowers words is a romantic novelist most likely to use to describe his heroine's eyes?
8 Which of the words are (a) purplish red (b) creamy white and (c) yellowy orange?

68.5 从本单元选出 10 个你特别想学的词语，用它们造句。

69 速度

A 加速

动词 **race, dash, tear** 表示迅速去某处（步行或用其他交通方式）。
I **dashed/raced/tore** to the station just making it in time for the last train.

动词 **nip, pop, zip, dart, whizz** 也表示迅速的移动，但主要用于短途。
I **nipped/popped/zipped/darted/whizzed** into the post office to buy some stamps and came out only to see my bus disappearing into the distance.

动词 **bolt** 也表示短途的迅速移动，但含有逃离某事物的附加意味。
The frightened horse **bolted** across the field.

动词 **career** 表示某物在快速移动，并已失控。
The car skidded and **careered** down a bank.
The company seems to be **careering** into financial ruin.

动词 **scamper, scurry, scuttle** 表示快速地小步移动，通常指很多小动物一起。
As we went into the dark shed, we saw mice **scampering** away and spiders **scurrying** into corners. Cockroaches **scuttled** into a crack in the floor.

speed up, accelerate 强调速度正在增加。**accelerate** 只用于交通，而 **speed up** 还可以指步行，两个动词都可以用来比喻。
We'd better **speed up** if we're going to get there on time.
The growth of the company has **accelerated** since it started exporting.

B 快速上升 / 下降

动词 **plunge, plummet** 表示速度，同时也意味着向下的运动。
He put on a lifejacket and **plunged** into the icy water.

注意它们主要用于比喻的用法。
When export sales began to decline, our hopes of business success **plummeted**. After the death of his father, he was **plunged** into despair.

soar, rocket 表示向上的运动，注意它们主要用于比喻用法，常与价格、股票等金融业务有关。
When export sales **rocketed** our hopes of success **soared**.

soar 主要用于鸟的动作，当它形容人的情感时含有幸福和无拘无束的意味。
My heart **soared** when I heard that he was coming home.

表示金融业务时 **soar** 和 **rocket** 的反义词是 **slump** 和 **tumble** 两词都有快速下降的含义。
Shares **slumped** on the stock market yesterday with telecommunication companies **tumbling** most dramatically of all.

C 减速

crawl 和 **creep** 是两个不及物动词，强调很慢的动作，常用作比喻。
Prices have been **creeping** up since May. It was rush hour and the traffic was **crawling**.

totter 也指很慢的动作，但还有强调不平稳的意思。
Mary **tottered** down the road laden with parcels and bags.

sidle 指焦急、紧张的走步。
Sam **sidled up to** the boss's desk and coughed to attract his attention.

dawdle 指并无必要地磨磨蹭蹭。
Don't **dawdle** on the way home.

练习

69.1 回答问题。

1 Would you be more likely to dash to the shops if you had plenty of time or if you were in a hurry?
2 If a car accelerates, does it speed up or slow down?
3 If you stop to look in shop windows, are you scampering or dawdling?
4 If traffic is said to be crawling, is it moving freely or is there a traffic jam?
5 If you plan to sell some shares, would you prefer their price to rocket or to tumble?
6 If a woman is wearing particularly high heels, is she more likely to scurry or to totter?
7 If a car slips on ice, is it more likely to be said to career or to dart across the road?
8 Who do you think is feeling more confident – a person who races up to greet you or someone who sidles up to greet you?
9 If you are thinking of buying your first flat, would you prefer the price of accommodation to be creeping up or to be soaring?
10 We sometimes say that people bolt their food. Does this mean that they eat fast or slowly?

69.2 你是否愿意在报纸上读到以下标题？（Pleased or not pleased?）

1 **Taxes rocket in new budget**
2 Shares plunge in uncertainty over US presidency
3 **Economy totters on the brink**
4 **Hopes soar for more Olympic medals**
5 **Profits plummet**
6 **Jobless figures creep up**

69.3 选择最合适的动词。

1 When the car suddenly swerved to avoid hitting the dog, it _____ out of control and crashed into a tree.
a) popped b) bolted c) careered d) dashed
2 When she switched the bathroom light on she was horrified to catch a glimpse of cockroaches _____ away into cracks in the tiles.
a) plummeting b) scuttling c) creeping d) nipping
3 I'm going to _____ into town in my lunch hour. Can I get you anything?
a) bolt b) plunge c) totter d) nip
4 If you don't _____, you'll miss the bus and be late for school.
a) accelerate b) rocket c) speed up d) crawl
5 Meena's spirits _____ when she learnt that she had won first prize.
a) plunged b) soared c) zipped d) tore
6 When the boy saw the fierce dog, he _____ into the house.
a) darted b) careered c) tottered d) bolted
7 I'm just going to _____ to the letter box to post these letters.
a) scurry b) totter c) plunge d) pop
8 Richard _____ into the house, trying hard not to wake his parents.
a) soared b) crept c) scampered d) accelerated

69.4 你是否注意到 *race*, *dash*, *tear*, *nip*, *zip*, *pop*, *dart*, *bolt* 等词的形式？你能说出为什么这些词的形式能与它的意义协调吗？

70 原因与结果

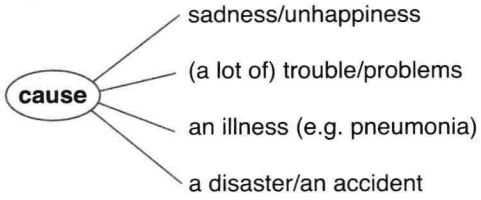
A 表示原因的动词及其搭配

注意以下典型搭配，掌握此类动词的区别。

cause 常与负面结果和情形搭配。

The new computer system has **caused** us a lot of problems.

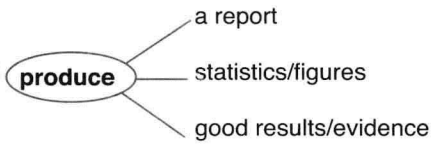
His stomach cancer was **caused** by exposure to atomic radiation.



produce 是中性词，显示较具体的结果，用在正式的语境中。

Scientists can **produce** statistics and figures that can prove almost anything.

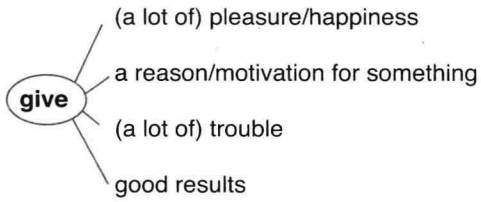
In low light conditions, a fast film will **produce** the best photographs.



cause 常用于负面情形，而 *give* 既可用于正面，也可用于负面，它没有 *cause* 正式。

Our dog has **given** us a lot of pleasure over the years.

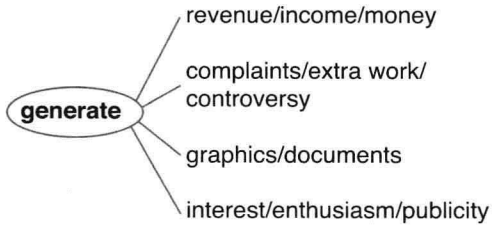
This car is **giving** me so much trouble, I'm going to get rid of it.



generate 常用于人们被迫做更多的事，也可用在计算机语境中。有时它有很强的消极意味。它一般用于正式文体。

It's going to be difficult to **generate** sufficient interest in the project.

The government will have to **generate** the extra funds somehow or other.



总之，*cause* 和 *give* 常用于不以人的意志为转移的事情：

The hurricane **caused** terrible damage.

produce 和 *generate* 常意味着或多或少有人干预：

His presentation **generated** a lot of interest in the project.

B 其他表示原因的动词

The news **provoked** a feeling of despair in everyone.

The events in the north **precipitated / sparked off** a political crisis. [quickly/suddenly caused]

The invention of the car has **brought about** great changes in our lives. [gradually produced]

Your action has **resulted in** a formal complaint from a member of the public. [produced]

练习

70.1 从左页选择最适合的动词填空。正确答案可能不止一个。

1 The decision by the government to relax the regulations has _____ a lot of investment in the poorer regions.
2 We need to _____ a list of names and addresses by six o'clock tonight.
3 Her death was _____ by a sign falling from a shop front in the heavy winds.
4 The Governor's remarks almost _____ a full-scale war between the two regions.
5 His stupidity _____ in none of us being able to get home that night.
6 Your letters have _____ me so much pleasure. Please don't stop writing them.
7 The book _____ a lot of anger amongst female readers.
8 I don't necessarily want to _____ a crisis, but I have some bad news to tell you all.

70.2 以下表示原因的动词未在左页出现，用词典查询这些词，并用这些词造句，体现出它们的含义。

incite　　prompt　　induce　　breed

70.3 改写句子，用框中相关的更为正式的表达式替换下列句中的 *because of*。正确答案可能不止一个。

thanks to　　as a result of　　owing to　　due to　　as a consequence of

1 Because of the crash on the motorway, all traffic is being severely delayed.
2 We got there in time, because of your advice.
3 My computer crashed, because of which I lost all the data.
4 Because of one bad decision after another, he's lost all his money.
5 The flight was cancelled because of bad weather.

70.4 用左页中的词或短语（或练习中出现的新词汇）将下面左右两栏中的事项连接起来，如示例。

EXAMPLE　Scientists **have produced** statistics showing a direct link between smoking and cancer.

1 scientists	stunning images and graphics
2 the higher taxes	statistics showing a direct link between smoking and cancer
3 icy roads	the breakup of his marriage
4 a brave bank assistant	endless problems and involved me in a lot of expense
5 my old car	two robbers were in jail last night
6 this software	riots in three cities
7 jealousy	a number of serious accidents this week

70.5 思考下列问题。

Think of something in your life which has...

1 caused you a lot of problems.
2 given you a lot of happiness.
3 provoked a feeling of anger in you.
4 resulted in embarrassment for you.

71 类比与对比

A 谈论相似的事物

关键词	搭配	释义
affinity	I often feel there is a cultural **affinity between** London **and** New York. I **felt an affinity with** the writer as I read this novel.	closeness; feeling that different things/people have much in common
akin	Their music is more **akin to** that of the Beatles than to the Spice Girls.	similar in spirit/feel
analogy	To **use** a sporting **analogy**, middle-age is like half-time at a football match.	see similarities that help us understand something
correspond	The picture this news article paints **does not correspond to** the truth.	is not equal to/does not match
equate	It's a mistake to **equate** the price of something **with** its true value.	consider as the same
tantamount	She knew that to apologise would be **tantamount to** admitting she had failed.	the equivalent of (normally used in negative contexts)
interchangeable	The goals of the two sides in the war have become almost **interchangeable**.	so similar that they could be exchanged one for the other
indistinguishable	Mrs Burton's shop was **indistinguishable from** all the others in the street.	so similar you cannot see the difference

B 谈论区别：含 *di-* 的形容词

形容词	语境/说明	例句
diverse	used of different types of something	The **diverse** ethnic groups living in Malaysia give the country its cultural richness.
disparate	used of different types within a group, but emphasises separation and difference	The **disparate** regions of Spain all have unique customs and cultures.
dissimilar	very often used with *not*	This house is not **dissimilar** to the one I was born in.
divergent	often used of contrasting opinions or ideas	They have widely **divergent** opinions.
distinct	used to describe differences where one might be deceived by similarities	The Swedish and Norwegian languages are quite **distinct** from one another, even though they look similar when written.
discrete	different and separate, not overlapping	There are several **discrete** categories of verbs in English.

练习

71.1 以下单词中有一个所跟的介词与其他不同。是哪个词，它的介词是什么？

akin　correspond　dissimilar　distinct　tantamount

现在用以上单词及其介词填空，完成句子。

1 The state of Maine in the USA is not _____ parts of Scandinavia. They both have lakes and forests.
2 To pretend I didn't want to be with her would be _____ telling a lie.
3 What you say _____ what I've heard too. I am sure it's correct.
4 His life story is more _____ a novel by Charles Dickens than a James Bond film.
5 The culture of the north of the country is quite _____ that of the south, and it's a mistake to think they are the same.

71.2 填空。

1 There is a close affinity _____ Singapore _____ Hong Kong: both are crowded, vibrant cities existing in a confined space.
2 I just cannot feel any affinity _____ his poetry; it's too dark and cruel.
3 This version of her essay is indistinguishable _____ the first version. I can't see any changes.
4 It would be a great mistake to equate his shyness _____ coldness or unfriendliness.

71.3 你能记住 B 中几个以 *di-* 开头表示区别的词？你能完成下列填空吗？

1 disp_____　3 diss_____　5 div_____
2 div_____　4 dist_____　6 disc_____

71.4 圈出正确的用词，每个词只能用一次。

1 Japanese and Korean culture are quite diverse/distinct, even though, to the outsider, they often appear similar.
2 The way they weave carpets in this region is not dissimilar/divergent to the way they are made in neighbouring countries.
3 English verbs do not always fit very easily into dissimilar/discrete categories. For instance, is the verb *used to* an ordinary verb or a modal verb like *would*?
4 Seen from the widely disparate/divergent viewpoints of left and right, the problem either originates in too much freedom or in too much state control.
5 It would be very difficult to unite the disparate/discrete tribes and ethnic groups to form one coherent political force.
6 Her CD collection contains quite a divergent/diverse selection of music, with everything from classical to heavy metal.

72 困难 / 困境 / 障碍

A 表示困难的名词

相对较小的困难: **a snag　a hitch　a setback　a glitch**
glitch 常指某种技术上的困难，其他词可泛指困难。

比较严重的困难：
stumbling block 对行动或协议的阻碍。
pitfall 是意想不到的困难，常用复数。
obstacle 是对进程的阻碍，具有字面和比喻上的双重意义。
impediment 是对自由的行动、进程或活动（移动）的阻碍。
dilemma 指两难之间难以选择，进退不得。
an **ordeal** 指艰难、令人痛苦或疲惫的惨痛经历。

表示困难的较正式用词: **adversity　hardship　affliction　tribulation**

B 表示困难的形容词

形容词	释义	搭配
abstruse	difficult to understand	theory, argument, philosopher
arduous	difficult, tiring, needing much effort	climb, task, journey
complex	difficult to understand as it has many parts	issue, problem, theory, process
convoluted	unreasonably long and hard to follow	explanation, sentences, theory
gruelling	extremely tiring and difficult	journey, work, match, expedition
insufferable	difficult to bear as it is annoying or uncomfortable	behaviour, heat, boredom, pain
obstructive	causing deliberate difficulties	person, measure
stiff	difficult to beat	opposition, competition
tough	difficult to deal with or do	time, job, climate, decision
traumatic	shocking and upsetting	experience, past, childhood
wayward	changeable, selfish and/or hard to control	behaviour, child, person

C 表达困难的口语

Oh dear, more homework! **What a pain! / What a drag!** [What a nuisance!]
What's eating him? / What's got into him? / What's bugging him? / What's (up) with him? [What's the matter with him?]
I can't face the **hassle** of moving house again. [situation causing trouble or difficulty]
My daughter keeps **hassling** me for a new bike. [pestering, asking again and again]
to slog (your guts out) / to grind / to graft / to flog yourself to death [to work hard]
in a fix / in a spot / in a hole / up against it / up to one's neck [in a difficult situation]
The company's in a **sticky/tricky** situation now the workers are going to strike. [difficult]
I think I'm **off the hook / in the clear / out of the wood(s)** now. [freed from a difficult situation]

练习

72.1 选用框中合适的词完成句子。可能会用到复数形式。

dilemma	glitch	hardship	impediment
ordeal	pitfall	snag	stumbling block

1 Jane is caught in a terrible _____ – should she go abroad with the man she loves or take the promotion she has at last been offered at work?
2 At first there were some _____ with the software, but it's OK now.
3 Women in wartime also have to face a great deal of _____.
4 The hostage is writing a book about his six-month _____.
5 The proposal is very good. The only _____ is that it is a little expensive.
6 Ian used to have a speech _____ but he's overcome it and is now an actor.
7 The leaflet gives new businesses information about typical _____ to avoid.
8 Negotiations were going well until the issue of sick pay became a major _____.

72.2 你会使用 B 中哪个形容词描述下列内容？

1 a pupil who deliberately makes it hard for his teacher to continue with the lesson
2 opposition in an election that has very strong arguments and public support
3 an accident which affects the victim psychologically
4 a book that deals with very difficult ideas without simplifying them
5 a child who is very disobedient and self-willed
6 pain that is almost impossible to put up with
7 a speech that is very difficult to follow because the line of argument is very complex
8 an exhausting Arctic expedition

72.3 使用 C 中的词汇填空，完成对话。

A: What's got _____ (1) you, Paul? You look really fed up!
B: Oh, I don't know. I've been slogging my _____ (2) out at work and it's all getting too much. My wife says I should leave rather than go on flogging myself to _____ (3). But I really can't face the _____ (4) of looking for something else at the moment.
A: What a _____ (5)! I'm also in a bit of a _____ (6).
B: Why? What's up _____ (7) you then?
A: I'm in a _____ (8) situation at home. My landlord's threatening to put the rent up. It's so difficult to find anywhere else to live. Still, at least my Italian exam is over.
B: Great! How did that go?
A: Not bad. It's a great relief it's over. I hope you soon get through all your work and begin to feel off the _____ (9) soon.
B: Thanks. I think I'll feel out of the _____ (10) when this project is over.

72.4 回答问题。

1 When have you been in a dilemma? What were the choices that were facing you?
2 Give an example of a project you were involved in that suffered a setback.
3 Can you name someone who has triumphed over adversity? Explain your answer.
4 What obstacles have you had to overcome in your life so far?

73 语气：表达事实 / 观点 / 意愿

A

以下是一些常用的含有情态动词的表达。

I must admit/confess/say that I didn't enjoy the film.
You want me to lend you £1,000! **You must be joking!**
You **must have been frightened/worried/nervous/happy, etc.** when you heard the news!
Don't look so miserable – **it may/might (well) never happen!**
What, may/might I ask, was the point of throwing your pen on the floor like that?
I was just glancing out of the window when **who should I see but** the boss.

A: Why are you so gloomy? The interview didn't go that badly. **You still might** get the job!
B: **I should be so lucky!** [That is not likely!] All the other candidates were better qualified.

Don't worry about spilling the wine. **Accidents will happen!** [accidents are inevitable]
The car **won't start.** What can I do?
That'll be John making that noise. He always plays his music very loud.

B

以下是一些表达可能性的方式。

The odds are he'll get the job. [it is likely that]
The odds are against her passing the exam. [it is unlikely that]
They **are bound to** get married in the end. [almost certain to]
He's **likely to** call round this evening.
It's **probable/likely/certain/inevitable** that they'll come and visit us at the weekend.
In all probability we'll get the job finished on time.
The chances are small that people will be living on the moon in the next decade.
There's every likelihood that the price of petrol will rise soon.

C

以下是一些表达建议的方式。

If I were in your shoes / in the same boat, I'd ... [if I were in the same situation]
Let me give you a tip/hint/suggestion/some pointers.
I hope you'll take this in the spirit in which it is intended, but you really should have checked the boat first.

It would be advisable/sensible/expedient/advantageous/prudent/wise to ... [formal]

D

以下是一些表达（缺乏）责任的方式。

It is **essential** that you (should) take strong footwear with you.
Wearing a safety helmet is **obligatory** in this area.
The road was blocked. We **had no option** but to turn back.
It is **compulsory** to put the lights out by ten o'clock.
We **have an obligation to** preserve the school's good name.
Some courses are **optional** but Maths and English are **compulsory.**

E

以下是一些表达意图做某事的方式。

I am **determined/anxious/eager/resolved** to do whatever I can to help.
He **wishes/desires/yearns/longs** to return home.
She has **ambitions/aspirations** to become Prime Minister.

练习

73.1 参看 A，将左边的描述与右边的回应对应起来。

1 Are you going clubbing tonight?	Shall I have a look at it?
2 I've just handed in my notice.	They must be very happy.
3 The car won't start.	You must have been terrified.
4 You might find buried treasure.	It'll be the Patels.
5 I'm afraid I've broken a cup.	What, may I ask, was the point of that?
6 Jane and Joe have just had twins.	I should be so lucky!
7 Someone's at the door.	You must be joking! I'm much too old.
8 I only just managed to escape.	Don't worry. Accidents will happen.

73.2 用括号里的词改写句子。

EXAMPLE Sandra'll probably get the job. (likelihood) *In all likelihood Sandra'll get the job.*

1 You must put on a life jacket. (OBLIGATORY)
2 I expect that Harry'll take over his father's job. (ODDS)
3 You should apologise to him at once. (SHOES)
4 You must do what the police officer says. (OPTION)
5 I'm sure they'll settle down eventually. (BOUND)

73.3 你的朋友明天要参加一个重要的求职面试。用你自己的话补全以下建议。

1 If I were .....
2 I hope you'll take this in the spirit in which it is intended .....
3 Let me give you one .....
4 It would be sensible .....
5 It would be wise to .....

73.4 使用括号中的词写出 4 条学校的校规。

1 (essential) .....
2 (compulsory) .....
3 (optional) .....
4 (obligatory) .....

73.5 使用括号中词的正确形式完成句子。

1 Jill caused her parents a lot of ..... when she was a teenager. (ANXIOUS)
2 The town council expressed their ..... to do what they could to help ease the traffic problems in the city. (DETERMINE)
3 The poem is about the poet's ..... for his lost innocence. (YEARN)
4 Did you make any New Year's ..... this year? (RESOLVE)
5 Her Majesty is ..... that you attend her in the throne room immediately. (DESIRE)
6 Her ..... to please is very touching. (EAGER)
7 She would have enjoyed her year abroad more had it not been for her ..... for her boyfriend at home. (LONG)
8 There's no point in talking about what you might do if you went on a trip around the world. It's just ..... thinking. (WISH)

74 数字：数据统计与数量评估

A 某些令人意外的数字

- 3,000 = **recorded sightings**[1] of UFOs by military and civilian pilots
- 200,000,000 = the number of people who could be **sustained**[2] by the food eaten by the world's **rodents**[3] each year
- 450,000 = plastic containers flung into the world's seas every day
- $97,000,000 = hourly world **expenditure**[4] on military activity
- 4 = **factor**[5] by which nitrogenous fertiliser use increased between 1960 and 1981 in the USA
- 102 = the average **IQ**[6] of 7–8 year olds who were breast-fed
- 92 = the average IQ of 7–8 year olds who were not breast-fed
- 177 = estimated world population increase **per**[7] minute

1 times seen that have been officially written down
2 kept alive or supported
3 small animals including rats, mice, squirrels
4 spending
5 number by which another number or quantity is multiplied; here fertiliser use **quadrupled** (= ×4)
6 intelligence quotient (measure of intelligence; average IQ = 100)
7 for each (used when expressing rates, prices or measurements)

B 描述数据

When the different amounts were added up, the **aggregate** was £600,000. [total]
I've **aggregated** all the figures. [added up all the different amounts]
The Chancellor said the July rise in inflation was only a **blip**. [temporary change]
The spectrum is a **continuum** of colour from red to violet. [something that changes gradually or in very slight stages, without distinct divisions]
There seems to be a **correlation between** mathematical and musical ability. [connection between facts or things which cause or affect each other]
For some reason the July figures have **deviated** from the norm. [moved away from the standard or accepted pattern]
There's a **discrepancy between** our figures and yours. [difference between two things that should be the same]
Share prices have been **erratic** this last month. [not regular and often changing suddenly]
The company's figures were found to be **flawed** and the accountant was fired. [inaccurate]
Sales **fluctuate** from day to day. [go up and down]
There's been a five-**fold** increase in exam enrolments. [multiplied by the stated number]
The teacher said that the quality of her students' work was **in inverse proportion to** its quantity – the shorter the essay the better. [in opposite proportion to]
Our data is **inconsistent with** yours. [not in agreement with]
Interest rates **seesawed** all year. [went up and down]

C 评估数量

Let me give you a **ballpark figure**[1] of how much money we expect to make this year. If I **tot everything up**[2], we begin to **run into six figures**[3]. There are a lot of **variables**[4] and our **projected figures**[5] may not be all that accurate. So I've **erred on the side of caution**[6] and I've **rounded things down**[7] rather than up in order to give you a **conservative**[8] estimate.

1 guess believed to be accurate
2 add everything up (less formal)
3 get a figure over 100,000
4 different factors that may change
5 planned figures
6 been cautious
7 make, say, 2.5 into 2 rather than 3
8 cautious

练习

74.1 从 A 中选择词汇完成句子。

1 Another _____ of an Unidentified Flying Object was reported last night.
2 _____ are small mammals with long, sharp front teeth.
3 Sales didn't double or even triple last year, they _____.
4 Some psychologists believe that tests which claim to measure a person's intelligence _____ are not a test of true intelligence.
5 Most countries' _____ on the army is higher than that on schools.
6 There are said to be 554 people _____ car in India.
7 His salary was not enough to _____ his wife and five children.
8 Expenditure on disposable nappies is greater by a _____ of seven per average British woman than per average Spanish woman.

74.2 用括号中的词改写句子，保持句意不变。

1 The two reports of the accident appear to be inconsistent. (DISCREPANCY)
2 The value of the shares has quadrupled. (-FOLD)
3 There seems to be a negative correlation between job satisfaction and educational achievement. (INVERSE)
4 The water levels didn't go up and down as much as we'd expected last year. (FLUCTUATE)
5 I don't need to know all the individual figures – just give me the total. (AGGREGATE)
6 His moods change – one minute he's happy, the next he's depressed. (ERRATIC)

74.3 回答问题。

1 If you give someone a ballpark figure, is it (a) precise or (b) rough?
2 If you round up 68.7, does it become (a) 69 or (b) 68?
3 If you want to give a conservative estimate when forecasting profits, would you prefer to (a) underestimate or (b) overestimate your figures?
4 If your weekly wage (in dollars) has just run into four figures, how much do you earn?
5 If you tot up all the numbers between 1 and 10, what do you get?
6 Name two variables that might affect a soft drinks company's projected profits.

74.4 完成下表。阴影部分不填。

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
deviate		
	discrepancy	
		flawed
		inverse
		inconsistent
err		

FOLLOW UP 如果你对数学感兴趣，可以访问这个以数学内容为主的网站内的一些链接：www.cut-the-knot.com/content.html，比如你可以在 games and puzzles 版块找到 Tower of Hanoi 游戏。

75 允许与禁止

A 允许 / 同意某事发生：动词

以下动词都很正式，大都选自报纸。注意标黑体的介词。

动词	释义	例句
accede	accept, but often associated with an initial unwillingness to accept something or give permission	The Prime Minister has **acceded to** demands to release secret documents about the recent war.
acquiesce /ækwi'es/	permit something to happen, but often associated with a degree of secrecy or conspiracy	The Foreign Minister **acquiesced in** the plan to restrict imports from certain countries.
assent	agree to something, often associated with plans, proposals, ideas, etc.	Britain has **assented to** a proposal to enlarge the European Union.
authorise	give official permission	The university has **authorised** the use of dictionaries during language examinations.
condone	approve or allow something which most people consider to be wrong	The judge **condoned** the use of reasonable force by the police officers who arrested the man.
countenance	consider giving assent or permission, often used in negative contexts	No government would ever **countenance** abolishing taxes altogether.
endorse	give official approval to something	The cabinet has **endorsed** a proposal to change the way universities are funded and managed.

B 允许：短语表达式

The committee have been **given carte blanche** to investigate the problem and come up with a solution. [/kɑ:t'blɑ:nʃ/ formal: complete freedom to do whatever they think necessary]

The City Council has **given the go-ahead** for the new car park. [informal: given permission for the building to start] *Or:* The City Council has **given the green light** to the new car park.

C 禁止 / 反对：动词

动词	释义	例句
bar	officially exclude; forbid someone access to something	Three students were **barred from** using the library because they had damaged books.
clamp down	use one's full power to prevent or limit something	The government has decided to **clamp down** on illegal immigration.
outlaw	make something illegal	Parliament has passed a bill **outlawing** the use of mobile phones while driving.
veto /'vi:təʊ/	use one's official power to forbid	The president has **vetoed** the plan to open membership of the club to the public.

练习

75.1 使用表示括号中含义的适当动词填空。正确答案可能不止一个。

1 The committee were in favour of the proposal but the president _____ it. (used his/her official power to forbid it)
2 I would never _____ the use of capital punishment, no matter how serious the crime. (approve or refuse to condemn)
3 The newspaper revealed that the Prime Minister had _____ in the secret decision to sell arms to the dictator. (agreed to it, without openly admitting it)
4 The new bill going through Parliament will _____ the use of unlicensed drugs by doctors. (make illegal)
5 The school governors have _____ the use of detention after lessons as a punishment for bad behaviour. (used their official power to permit)
6 She has been _____ from lectures because she disrupted one last term. (forbidden to enter/attend)
7 The President finally had to _____ to demands for his resignation. (agree after being initially unwilling)
8 The police have announced that they are to begin to _____ down on motorists who exceed the speed limit near schools. (take serious action to reduce the number of)

75.2 词汇测试。

1 One expression on the opposite page has French words in it. Which expression is it and what does it mean?
2 Which permitting expression reminds you of traffic lights and why?
3 Which word in A is also a formal noun which means 'the expression on your face'?
4 Which expression connected with permission is formed using the word 'ahead'?

75.3 以下标题含有其他与允许 / 禁止有关的词汇和表达式，并未在左页出现过。将标题与下面的新闻剪报对应起来。如需要可使用词典。

1 **GOVERNMENT TO LIFT EMBARGO ON COMPUTER IMPORTS**

2 **■ RAILWAY FRANCHISE EXTENDED FOR FIVE YEARS**

3 **POLICE TO ADOPT ZERO-TOLERANCE OF FOOTBALL HOOLIGANISM**

4 NEW TRADE SANCTIONS ANNOUNCED

a The company will be allowed to run services through to 2009, provided all conditions ...

b The hope is that firms will benefit from less severe competition in domestic markets if imports are subject to ...

c **... at present, chips and processors must be home-produced or else ...**

d ... anyone using threatening behaviour will be liable to immediate arrest ...

76 抱怨与抗议

A

以下是一些很有用的表示抱怨的方式。

注意抱怨的程度和是否正式取决于说话者的重音及语调。下列“中性”中的表达会听起来更为正式——如果说话者用特别的语调和重音强调的话。

非正式: Look here! I've just about had enough of ...
Honestly! You can't possibly do that!
For goodness sake! I'm fed up with ...
You've got to do something about ...

中性: It just won't do!
I wish you would(n't) ...
Something will have to be done about ...
I'm not at all satisfied about ...

正式: I wish to complain in the strongest terms about ...
I take great exception to ...
I really must object to ...
This is most unsatisfactory.

B

下面是一些表示抱怨、反对和抗议的动词与名词。

动词	释义	名词
complain (about)	express dissatisfaction or annoyance	complaint
protest (about) /prəˈtest/	strongly express complaint, disapproval or disagreement	protest /ˈprəʊtest/
object (to)	be against something or someone	objection
remonstrate (against)	formal: complain to someone or about something	remonstrance
find fault (with)	criticise or complain about even small mistakes	fault-finding
grumble (about)	complain in a quiet but angry way	grumble
gripe (about)	informal: to complain continuously	gripe
grouse (about)	informal: to complain, usually often	grouse
whinge (about)	informal: complain persistently	whinge, whingeing

C

英式英语人士通常用比较委婉的方式表示不满或抗议。

委婉说法:	**真实意图:**
It's **a bit** chilly in here.	I wish you'd close the window.
Your son **would be well advised to** work a bit harder.	Your son is very lazy.
Your work **would benefit from** some proofreading.	Your work is extremely careless.
Her appearance **is not her highest priority**.	She's scruffy.
The children **tend to be** a bit noisy.	You can't hear yourself speak.

TIP 阅读报纸的“读者来信”版面，收集更多表示抱怨的语句例子。这些来信往往是反对以往文章的观点或对当前时事表示不满的。

练习

76.1 下列陈述有的非常正式，有的非常不正式，各是哪些？如何将其转换为相反的语气？

1 Look here! I've just about had enough of your rudeness!
2 I am writing to remonstrate against some injustices in your regulations.
3 You've got to do something about the state of your desk.
4 I wish to protest in the strongest possible terms about the awful facilities at the station.
5 You can't possibly go out in that dress!
6 This behaviour is most unsatisfactory!

76.2 完成句子，每空只填一个词。

1 What's Janet whingeing _____ now?
2 We _____ great exception to the proposed plans.
3 Mr Sim objected _____ our parking our caravan in front of his house.
4 He's always writing letters to the newspaper finding fault _____ something or other.
5 Something will have to be _____ about traffic problems in the city.
6 I wish people _____ smoke in restaurants.
7 This standard of work just won't _____ !
8 You would be _____ advised to start looking for another job.

76.3 你会怎样抱怨以下状况？

1 You are complaining to your flatmate about your noisy neighbours.
2 You're complaining in a fairly neutral way to your neighbours about the noise they make.
3 You're writing to the local newspaper about the problem of noise in the neighbourhood.
4 You're complaining to your boss about new and longer working hours.
5 You're complaining to your friend about having to work longer hours.
6 You're writing an official letter of complaint to the top level of management about having to work longer hours.

76.4 参看左页 C，下列说法的真实意图是什么？

1 (walking into a room) 'It's a bit stuffy in here!'
2 (on a school report) 'Jack tends to complete his work rather too quickly.'
3 (in a reference letter) 'Punctuality is not Simon's highest priority.'
4 (at a work appraisal) 'You'd be well advised to re-assess your long-term plans.'
5 (commenting on a room) 'It would benefit from a lick of paint.'
6 (coming into a room) 'The TV seems to be a bit loud.'

76.5 参看左页 C，英语人士会如何委婉表达对下列情况的不满？

1 A head teacher would prefer her staff to come to school dressed more formally.
2 A hotel guest is commenting to another guest about the smallness of the portions in the restaurant.
3 A passenger on a train wants to tell the ticket inspector that the trains are overcrowded.
4 A wife wants to tell her husband that he should take more exercise.

77 道歉 / 原谅 / 和解

A 道歉与借口：搭配

形容词搭配	名词
sincere, heartfelt	apology
good, perfect, lame, flimsy, weak	excuse
cast-iron, convincing, perfect, phoney	alibi
flimsy, false	pretext

He offered his most **heartfelt apology** for having offended everyone. [most sincere apology]
It was a rather **lame excuse**, and nobody really believed it. [weak excuse]
The police questioned her about the murder, but she had a **cast-iron alibi**: she had spent the whole day teaching at the local primary school. [firm reason why she was innocent]
He got an interview with her on the rather **flimsy pretext** of being interested in her research. [weak and not very believable pretext]

B 在法律语境中表达道歉 / 遗憾 / 原谅

As he was pronounced guilty of murder, Jesse Smith showed no **remorse**[1] whatsoever. He was sentenced to the electric chair. All three of his companions who were on trial with him were **acquitted**[2] of the crime and walked out of the courtroom free. Smith later **repented**[3] whilst in prison awaiting his execution. He was due to be executed at dawn on the 23rd of May, but he got a last-minute **reprieve**[4] from the Minister of Justice.

1 feeling of guilt or regret
2 declared not guilty
3 said he was sorry and asked for forgiveness
4 official order stopping or delaying punishment

其他例句：
The President issued a **posthumous pardon** for all the innocent men and women. [official forgiveness after someone's death for crimes they were unjustly convicted for]
The Committee of Inquiry **exonerated** the Minister from all responsibility for the disaster. [declared someone to be free of blame]

C 在军事语境中表达和解

协议类型	释义/例句
armistice	agreement to stop war while peace discussions take place The generals from the opposing armies **declared/signed an armistice**.
truce	declaration (not necessarily written) that fighting will stop for a period The terrorists declared a Christmas **truce**.
accord	agreement not to fight, or to work together peacefully The two sides in the civil war **signed a peace accord**.
treaty	written agreement between countries agreeing to end a war or not fight The two nations signed a **peace treaty** in 1996.

练习

77.1 用适当的形容词填空。正确答案可能不止一个。

1 She had a _____ excuse for not mowing the lawn: she was allergic to grass.
2 I thought he gave rather a _____ excuse and I'm not convinced at all.
3 He got into the concert on the somewhat _____ pretext of wanting to help the disabled people in the front row.
4 The police had to let her go free, since she had a _____ alibi.
5 I want to offer you all my most _____ apology for the trouble I've caused.

77.2 以下名人的话中应使用框中哪个单词（以适当的形式）？

forgive　apology　excuse　repent

1 'Several _____ are always less convincing than one.' (*Aldous Huxley*, English novelist, 1894–1963)
2 'How pleasant it is, at the end of the day, no follies to have to _____; But reflect on the past, and be able to say, that my time has been properly spent.' *Anne Taylor*, English writer of children's books, 1782–1866)
3 'We read that we ought to _____ our enemies but we do not read that we ought to _____ our friends.' (*Cosimo de Medici*, Italian statesman, 1389–1464)
4 'It is a good rule in life never to _____. The right sort of people do not want _____ and the wrong sort take a mean advantage of them.' (*P.G. Wodehouse*, English writer, 1881–1975)

77.3 改正句中的错误。

1 The President granted him a repentance just an hour before he was due to be executed.
2 He was exonerated of murder in 1984, but two years later was convicted of armed robbery in the same courtroom.
3 She showed a complete lack of reprieve for her evil deeds and just laughed when the judge sentenced her.
4 The Public Inquiry pardoned him from all blame for the accident at the factory.
5 Most Christians believe that if you remorse your bad deeds just before you die, God will forgive you.
6 Ten years after his death, John Wilson was given a humorous pardon by the government when another man confessed to the crime he had been hanged for.

77.4 使用左页 C 中的词语改写句中划线部分，并用适当的动词填空。如需要可使用词典。

1 The two armies _____ a period without fighting during the religious holiday.
2 Both governments _____ to the terms of the document ending the war permanently and it was signed on 15th August, 1954.
3 The long-standing agreement to work together between the government and the unions is in danger of _____.
4 The generals _____ the agreement to end fighting while peace terms were worked out at midday on 25th February, 1968.

78 称赞与表扬

A 表达赞美与表扬的惯用搭配

The boss would get better results if he **paid** his staff **compliments** occasionally.
He asked us what we thought of his suit, but he was really only **fishing for compliments.**
Take it as a compliment that he feels relaxed enough to fall asleep at your dinner party!
a **back-handed compliment** 是指表面上说得好听，其实是在挖苦，如：
That dress makes you look quite slim.
a **double-edged compliment**含有正反两方面的含义，但赞扬者没有丝毫挖苦的含义，如：
He **paid** me the **double-edged compliment** of saying my driving was pretty good for a beginner.

短语**give praise to**是用来赞美神的；形容人或行为值得赞扬则用**praiseworthy**；表扬某人则用**praise for**。
其他常见搭配有：**widely/highly praised　praised to the skies　to sing someone's/something's praises　to shower/heap praise on someone/something**
to damn someone with faint praise 表示赞扬毫不起劲，实际上给人一种负面的感觉。

B 其他表示赞扬的方式

表达式	释义	例句
pay tribute to	praise (formal)	At the memorial service I **paid tribute to** his kindness.
give someone a standing ovation	stand up and clap loudly for a long time	At the end of the concert, the audience **gave** the young pianist **a standing ovation**.
extol the virtues/ benefits of	praise highly (formal)	I'm fed up of listening to her **extolling the virtues of** her private tennis coach.
be the toast of	be admired for some recent achievement	A few months ago hardly anyone had heard of her but now **she's the toast of** Hollywood.
pat someone on the back / give someone a pat on the back	praise, often children	My teacher **patted me on the back / gave me a pat on the back** for my good marks in the maths test.
earn/win plaudits	get positive comments (formal)	The exhibition **earned plaudits** from all the major reviewers.
laud*	praise highly in official situations (formal)	The Prime Minister has **lauded** the new peace initiative.

* 相关形容词为 **laudable**（用于行为）及 **laudatory**（用于评述）。

下列绝大部分非正式的表达都含有为了自己的利益恭维别人的意味。
to flatter　to make up to　to crawl　to suck up to　to lick someone's boots
Someone who behaves like this can be called **smarmy, slimy** or **a crawler** (all informal); or (more formal) **servile** or **obsequious.**

注意：**flatter**也可以用于积极含义：
That dress **flatters** her figure. [makes her figure look better than it really is]
名词 **flattery** 常用在 "**Flattery will get you nowhere!** [insincere praise will not achieve anything]" 这一表达中。

练习

78.1 参看 A，填空完成句子，每空只填一词。

1 A: Do you like my new hairstyle? B: Don't _____ for compliments.
2 At the meeting everyone was _____ your praises.
3 He's not very good at _____ people compliments.
4 Mr Biggs is always praising his own pupils _____ the skies.
5 It may sound a bit double-edged but I think you should _____ what he says _____ a compliment.
6 He never knows what to say when fans _____ praise on him.
7 I didn't enjoy the film but it has been very _____ praised by the critics.
8 Look at this reference. It's really _____ the candidate with faint praise.

78.2 参看 B 中表格，将下面每句的开头和结尾连起来。

1 The performers were given	tribute to his predecessor.
2 In the speech the new manager paid	a pat on the back for her drawings.
3 They're always extolling	the toast of the tennis world.
4 Matt's design earned him	a standing ovation.
5 The teacher gave Becky	the virtues of living in the country.
6 The new young Czech player was	the highest plaudits from the judges.

78.3 参看 B 表格下面的词汇。用 4 种方式分别改写下列句子。指出其中哪些是正式的，哪些是非正式的，哪些是中性的。

1 He's always sucking up to the boss. 2 I wish she wasn't so smarmy.

78.4 完成表格。阴影部分不填。

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
compliment		
praise		
congratulate		
laud		
flatter		
crawl		
smarm		

78.5 从 78.4 的表格中选择词汇完成句子。

1 I've got some _____ tickets for tonight's concert. Would you like to come?
2 Simon has got a bit of a reputation as a _____ when he's around women.
3 After winning the prize he received many _____ notes from friends.
4 Her actions were foolish but her motives were _____.
5 I'd like to offer you my _____ on your silver wedding anniversary!
6 There's no point saying how good I am. _____ will get you nowhere!
7 Whilst we cannot but _____ the skill of their actions we must express a certain disapproval of the risks they took.

79 承诺与打赌

A 承诺

If you **promise someone the earth/moon,** you promise them a great deal. It is usually implied that such a promise is unrealistic.

The afternoon **promises** to be interesting! [the speaker expects it will be interesting]
promise 也可表示大有希望的未来前景：
The child already shows great **promise** as a violinist.
She's a **promising** artist although her style is still rather immature.

an **oath** 指正式的承诺，或指咒骂。
In court, witnesses are **put on/under oath** when they have to swear to tell the truth.
to **swear**指做出庄严的承诺，或是指使用了**swear words / bad language.** [taboo expressions]

注意 **swear** 常用在非正式的口语中，有如下表达：
I **could have sworn** I left my purse on the table. [was absolutely certain]
I think she lives on Rose Street but I **couldn't swear to** it. [am not totally sure]
My mother **swears by** these vitamin pills. [uses them and thinks they are wonderful]

to **pledge** (**a pledge**) 表示承诺某事，常是有关友谊或金钱的。
On the last day of term we all **pledged** eternal friendship.

to **vow** (**a vow**) 是下定坚强的决心或答应做某事：He **vowed** to discover who had killed his father. The couple **exchanged vows** in the marriage ceremony.
vow 与 **pledge** 两词常在书面语中比在口语中常用。

New Year's resolutions are special promises **to turn over a new leaf** [to change one's behaviour for the better] at the beginning of a new year. **Resolutions** and **vows,** like **promises** or **pledges,** can be **made, kept** or **broken.**

B 打赌

to **bet** (**a bet**) 是把钱花在未知的事物上冒险，希望赢得更多的钱，比如在西方，人们会花（输）掉很多钱在赌马上。在打赌上花的钱叫 **stake**，**stake** 也可用作动词：
You can **stake** a sum of money on something happening.
比**bet**更为正式的词是 **wager**：She put a **wager** of £10 on a horse.
两个词都有引申的含义：I'd **wager** that he will come to a bad end.

有很多与打赌有关的口语表达。
Your best bet would be to look for a part-time job. [the best decision or choice]
You think Stuart'll win? **Don't bet on it!** [I think what you've just said is unlikely to happen.]
My granny enjoys **having a flutter** on the horses. [having a small bet]
I'd **put money / my life on** Jack getting the job. [I'm sure that Jack will get the job.]

C 关于承诺的誓言 / 名言

I swear by Almighty God that the evidence I shall give in court today shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth. (*in court of law*)

... to have and to hold from this day forward, for better for worse, for richer for poorer, in sickness and in health; to love and to cherish, till death us do part. (*part of Church of England wedding vows*)

Promises and piecrusts are made to be broken, they say. (*Jonathan Swift*, Irish writer, 1667–1745)

练习

79.1 以下每组句子中哪个更加正式？

1 a) Ricky promised to love her always.
  b) Ricky pledged to love her always.
2 a) Tom swore he would take revenge.
  b) Tom vowed he would take revenge.
3 a) Lou wagered a lot of money on the result of the elections.
  b) Lou bet a lot of money on the result of the elections.
4 a) Lina made a resolution at New Year to give up smoking.
  b) Lina made a vow at New Year to give up smoking.

79.2 填空完成句子，每空一词。

1 He _____ her the moon but they ended up in a tiny flat in the dingiest part of town.
2 In an English court of law you can opt to swear the _____ on the Bible if you wish.
3 You can choose yourselves what topics you want to concentrate on for the exam, of course, but I think your _____ bet would be to focus on Shakespeare and the Romantic poets. They always come up!
4 Dad's not a real gambler, but he does like to have the occasional _____ on the horses.
5 Rob has certainly _____ his promise to love his wife in sickness and in health as he nursed her devotedly through the years of her cancer.
6 Sue's bound to pass her driving test first time. I'd put my _____ on it!

79.3 使用括号中的词改写句子，保持句意不变。

1 I think you should see a doctor. (BET)
2 My mother takes these herbal teas and believes they are wonderful. (SWEARS)
3 John's been rather lazy with his homework but he has promised to try harder next year. (LEAF)
4 I was sure I locked the door when I went out. (SWORN)
5 The new production of the play sounds as if it will be most unusual. (PROMISES)
6 I'm sure that the Democratic Party will win the next election. (MONEY)
7 Do you ever bet on the horses? (FLUTTER)
8 Her mother disliked the film because it contained so much bad language. (SWEAR)

79.4 回答问题。

1 Look at what people promise one another during a wedding service. What wedding vows do people make in your country? Can you translate them?
2 What point is Jonathan Swift making, in your opinion, and how is his use of language effective?
3 Mark Twain said, 'To promise not to do a thing is the surest way in the world to make a body want to go and do that very thing.' (*Mark Twain*, American novelist, 1835–1910) Do you agree with him?

80 回忆与遗憾

A

以下是一些人们回忆时常用的表达方式。

In the good old days ...
Schooldays are the best/happiest days of your life.
We used to have to make our own entertainment in those days.
Life wasn't as easy then.
We didn't have it as easy as young people today do.
Things aren't what they used to be.
They don't make bikes/songs/trains, etc., like they used to.

B

以下是其他一些实例。

A: It's great to see you again. It must be ten years since we were at school together! Do you **keep in touch with** any of our old teachers?
B: No, I wonder what happened to **whatsisname**? Er, I think he was called Mr Cain. I realise now how difficult things must have been for them, having to teach the likes of us! And **do you ever hear anything of** James?
A: No, I wonder whether he and Karen ever got married. And **whatever became of** Sal?
B: Mmm, and **I often wonder** what Sarah **ended up** doing. We did **have good times**, didn't we? **Do you remember how** we used to leave notes for each other in that hole in the wall?
A: Of course I do. **I'll never forget how** I used to look forward to checking what was there. I often wonder what would have happened if anyone else had looked in that hole and found our notes.
B: I must say that **what stands out in my mind** is the relative freedom we used to have.
A: Me too. When **I look back**, I appreciate how much things have changed.
B: Yes, though we probably see the past through **rose-tinted spectacles** rather than how it really was.

C

有时人们会对某个状况感到遗憾。以下是一些具体的表达方式。

I wish I'd known you were arriving today.
I wish I hadn't given up learning the piano.
It's disappointing that the exam results are so poor this year.
I'm disappointed in you.
I regret not spending more time with my aunt when she was ill.
He showed no sign of remorse for what he had done.

一些较为不正式的表达：
If only I hadn't spoken to her like that!
If I'd only known then what I know now.
If only we could have our time all over again!
It's a pity/shame we can't stay longer.
I'm sorry I forgot your birthday.
The team's behaviour was a disgrace.
He should never have done that – it's a scandal!

一些正式的（文学性的）表达：
I rue the day we ever met. [I regret very much that we ever met]
I lament the passing of time. [I feel sad that time passes]
I mourn my lost opportunities. [I feel sad about opportunities I had but did not take up]

练习

80.1 填空完成句子，每空一词。

1 Things aren't what they _____ to be.
2 Your _____ are the happiest days of your life.
3 We didn't _____ it as easy as young people do today.
4 Do you keep in _____ with anyone from school?
5 People often see the past through _____ spectacles.
6 I wonder what _____ of that man who used to live next to the post office?
7 I appreciate now how difficult life _____ have been for my grandparents.
8 What _____ out in my mind is how hard we had to work.

80.2 参看 C，将句子的开头和结尾连接起来。

1 I'm disappointed	my lost youth.
2 I rue the day	not apologising for what I said.
3 I feel a certain remorse	in my results.
4 I regret	I agreed to go into business with him.
5 I mourn	that we didn't make a go of it.
6 It's disappointing	for what I said to her.

80.3 以适当的方式完成句子。

1 Someone in an unhappy marriage may regret _____
2 They don't make _____ like they used to.
3 Things were much safer in the _____ days.
4 It's a shame you _____ Jill to the party. I wanted to meet her.
5 If only _____ I know now.
6 The boy _____ to the old lady like that. It was very rude of him.
7 I wonder _____ to those people who used to live next door to us?
8 I'll never _____ Susan looked on her wedding day.
9 I'm _____ I'm late.
10 It's a _____ to go now. I'd have liked to have a longer chat.

80.4 回答问题。

1 What did you use to do when you were a child that you no longer do?
2 What do you regret doing?
3 What will you never forget doing?
4 Do you keep in touch with any of the friends that you knew at primary school?
5 Do you know what happened to the people you were at school with?
6 What stands out in your mind when you think about your own childhood?
7 What do you feel remorse for?
8 What have you found disappointing?
9 What do poets often lament?

80.5 使用括号中的词以更为正式的语气改写句子。

1 I'm sorry that I didn't buy her a birthday present. (REGRET)
2 It's a shame that you won't play the piano for us. (DISAPPOINTED)
3 It's a pity that he is so unreliable. (WISH)
4 I wish we still had trams in our town. (LAMENT)
5 If only we were still young! (MOURN)

81 同意 / 分歧 / 妥协

A 同意：分享观点

动词 + 介词	释义	例句
tally with	match or agree with	Her complaints **tally with** the comments we have received from other people.
concur with	share/agree with an idea/ opinion	His opinion **concurs with** the general opinion of the experts on this matter.
be/find yourself in accord with	be in complete agreement with	The President **found himself in** full **accord with** the opposition.
coincide with	be the same as	Your views **coincide with** mine on the question of crime and punishment.
conform to	fit in with	His ideas do not **conform to** the general definition of civilisation.
approve of	think something is right or good	My parents **approve of** my choice of profession and support me fully.

注意：**to agree to differ** 表示各方仍保持着不同看法，但无必要就此继续争执。
We couldn't reach a consensus at the meeting, so we just **agreed to differ.**

B 政治 / 社会分歧

名词	释义	例句
dissent	opposition to the accepted way of thinking	There is a lot of **dissent** within the party on the issue.
discord	lack of agreement or harmony (suggests arguments and rows)	The political **discord** of the 1980s resulted in a five-year civil war.
rift	disagreement (with different groups/ factions forming)	The growing **rift** in the Democratic Party over defence policy is now public.
split	when a larger group breaks up into two or more smaller groups because they disagree about something	A major **split** in the Conservative Party resulted in several ministers resigning.
division	more abstract and formal than split (can be used countably or uncountably)	There is (a) major **division** in the Socialist Party over economic policy.

C 妥协

The two sides have **reached a compromise** with regard to the plan to build the new road across a nature reserve.
The Minister was not prepared to **compromise on** the issue of raising university fees.
The government **made** several **concessions to** the protesters. [accepted some of the demands of]
The management and the union **reached a settlement** and the strike ended. [reached a decision/agreement]
In this particular case we should **exercise** some **discretion.** [be sensitive, use our judgement]

练习

81.1 在表中填上常与以下动词搭配的介词，然后使用这些表达式（*agree with* 除外）填空，完成句子。每空只使用一个。

verb	*preposition*
agree	with
approve	
conform	
tally	
coincide	
concur	
compromise	
be in accord	

1 The list of principles _____ to the normal idea of what a set of rules should be trying to achieve.
2 My view _____ completely with yours. We think on exactly the same lines.
3 For once all the committee members _____ with one another.
4 Her latest statement simply does not _____ with her earlier ones. She is contradicting herself.
5 I _____ of all the changes suggested, and hope they can be made to work.
6 This plan is in _____ with the proposal made by the committee in 1998.
7 Even though I disagree, I'm willing to _____ on your proposal to increase our expenditure.

81.2 将报纸标题与下列内容节选对应起来。

1 **RIFT OVER PENSIONS POLICY GROWS**
2 **DISSENT MUST BE KEPT WITHIN LIMITS, MINISTER SAYS**
3 **PARTY SPLIT OVER TAX CUTS NO LONGER A SECRET**
4 **DIVISION IN EUROPE OVER RESPONSE TO AFRICAN CRISIS**
5 **RELIGIOUS DISCORD THREATENS SOCIAL HARMONY**

a) Approximately 50% of members think the proposals are wrong.
b) Intolerance is increasing and there have been isolated outbreaks of violence.
c) There is increasing pressure on the Minister to think again.
d) Several different approaches have emerged which could weaken unity.
e) To disagree is everyone's right, but a sense of responsibility is also important.

81.3 使用名词替换划线部分，改写句子。可进行其他必要的改动。

1 The President has <u>conceded</u> that the opposition party should be allowed a place on the committee.
2 I think one should always be as <u>discreet</u> as possible when it is a question of people's private lives.
3 The landowners <u>settled</u> their dispute with the authorities over the route of the road.
4 The negotiating team were able to <u>compromise</u> and put an end to the long strike.

FOLLOW UP 收听、收看英语广播、电视或阅读网站上的新闻，看在表述政治和其他状况时，有多少与同意及分歧有关的词汇。

82 学术写作 I

Unit 82 和 Unit 83 讲述的是常用于各学科学术写作的词汇。

A 表述论点及评价他人的著述

If you **advocate** something, you argue in favour of it: He **advocated** capital punishment.
If you **deduce** something, you reach a conclusion by thinking carefully about the known facts: Look at these sentences and see if you can **deduce** how the imperfect tense is used.
If you **infer** something, you reach a conclusion indirectly: From contemporary accounts of his research, we can **infer** that results were slower to come than he had anticipated.
If someone's work **complements** someone else's, it combines well with it so that each piece of work becomes more effective.
If someone's work **overlaps** with someone else's work, it partially covers the same material.

You might call someone's work: **empirical** [based on what is observed rather than theory] **ambiguous** [open to different interpretations] **coherent** [logically structured] **comprehensive** [covering all that is relevant] **authoritative** [thorough and expert]

B 谈论数据与进程

If figures or decisions are referred to as **arbitrary**, they are based on chance rather than a plan or any particular reason.
Figures that **deviate** from the norm are different from what is typical.
If statistics **distort** the picture, they give a false impression.
If you refer to the **incidence** of something (e.g. left-handedness), you are talking about how often it occurs in the population.
If something (e.g. the incidence of brown eyes) is **predominant**, it is the largest in number.
If things (e.g. stages in a process) happen **in sequence**, they happen in a particular order.
If you want to say that something happens in many places or with many people, you can say that it is **widespread**: **widespread outbreaks** of an illness, **widespread alarm**

C 学术语境中的用词与日常用词

学术用动词	日常用动词
append	add (at the end)
conceive	think up
contradict	go against
convene	meet
demonstrate	show
denote	be a sign of, stand for
negate	make useless, wipe out
perceive	see
reside	lie, live
trigger	cause
utilise	use

学术词汇	同义词（日常词汇）
the converse	the opposite
crucial	very important
likewise	similarly
notwithstanding	despite this
somewhat	rather
thereby	in this way
whereby	by which (method)

练习

82.1 A 中的哪 5 个动词适用于以下句子？

1 Although my brother and I are researching in similar areas, our work, fortunately, does not _____. It has, however, often been said that what I do _____ his work very well.
2 Look at the complete set of graphs and see if you can _____ the rules governing the data from them.
3 This article _____ a somewhat different approach to the problem than that which has been put forward by others in the field.
4 A great deal can be _____ about the artist's state of mind from the content and style of his later works.

82.2 A 中的哪 5 个形容词适用于描述以下事物？

1 a textbook written by the most highly regarded expert in the field
2 research based on a survey of the population
3 a poem which can be understood in two quite different ways
4 an argument which is well-expressed and easy to follow
5 a textbook which gives a broad overview of an entire discipline

82.3 回答问题，这些问题使用了 B 中的词汇。

1 If the incidence of asthma in children is increasing, what is actually going up: a) the seriousness of asthma attacks b) the number of asthmatic children
2 What are the next two numbers in the sequence *1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36*?
3 If the average mark of schoolchildren in a maths test was 68% and James's mark deviated most markedly from that average, what do we know about James's mark?
4 If a historian distorts the facts, does he present them a) accurately b) clearly c) in a misleading fashion?
5 If a sociologist chooses the subjects of her research in an arbitrary fashion, is she being careful to get people from an appropriate balance of backgrounds?

82.4 使用 C 中的词汇以更正式的学术文体改写句子。

1 We believe the information lies in archives that must not be opened until 2050.
2 He thought up his theory while still a young man.
3 Each of the signs in the phonetic alphabet stands for a sound rather than a letter.
4 This study went against what was previously held to be true and so started a great deal of discussion amongst specialists in the field.
5 Details of the experiment have been added at the end of the report for those who wish to see how we arrived at our data.

82.5 使用 C 中的词汇改写段落，使其更具学术性。

The study was initially **thought up** in order to validate a new method of enquiry **by which** genetic information could be **used** to predict disease. Our work **goes against** the findings of Hill (2001); indeed it would appear to **show** the **opposite** of what he claimed. We **see** our work as presenting a **rather** different view of the genetic factors which **cause** disease. **Despite this**, our work does not **wipe out** Hill's, as his studies served the **very important** purpose of devising symbols to **stand for** certain tendencies, **in this way** facilitating further research. We hope that Hill will **similarly** find our work to be valid and that when international researchers **meet** next April, they will concur that much of value **lies** in both our and Hill's studies. Our results are **added at the end**.

83 学术写作 2

A 解释 / 强调 / 举例说明

阅读下列报摘并注意黑体词所出现的语境。

The Prime Minister **reiterated**[1] his concern that the debate should not be dominated by personal attacks. He also asked ...

The recent events **underscore**[4] the need for a better understanding of the environmental impact of biotechnology. If this phase in the ...

Mr Burns' comments **epitomise**[2] the attitude of many parents nowadays. He seems to be in the ...

Several historians have **posited**[5] a connection between the decline of the Roman Empire and the eruption of a far distant volcano ...

It was a philosophy first **expounded**[3] by John Ruskin in the nineteenth century. If human ...

In an attempt to **account for**[6] the lack of interest, political analysts have looked at past voting patterns. On the basis of ...

[1] repeated, restated
[2] are a perfect example of
[3] developed, proposed
[4] emphasise
[5] suggested as a basic fact/principle
[6] explain, find the cause of

B 分类与包括

Japanese visitors **comprised/made up** 70% of the hotel's guests last year. [70% consisted of]
The course **is comprised of** two elements: reading and writing. [is composed of]
These two approaches can be **subsumed** under one heading. [brought together / united]
The book **embraces** a number of issues, from economic to religious ones. [covers/includes]
Her philosophy is difficult to **categorise**. [label as belonging to a particular type or class]

C 文章结构组织

用于组织论文架构顺序的词汇和表达式。

在文章中的功能	示例
beginning	I should like to **preface** /'prefɪs/ my argument with a true story.
mapping out the text	I shall **return** to this point later in my essay.
connecting points	This **brings me/us** to my next area of discussion, which is finance.
focusing	I should now like to **address** the question of the arms race.
ordering points	The arguments are presented in **ascending/descending order** of importance.
quoting/referring	The ideas of several writers will be **cited** in support of the argument. The text **alludes to** several themes that need closer examination.
including/excluding material	Discussion of the roots of the problem is **beyond the scope of** this essay. It is impossible to **deal with** all the issues in this short essay. There will only be space to **touch upon** the big question of political responsibility.
drawing conclusions	We are **forced to conclude** that unemployment will always be with us.

练习

83.1 看下列论文节选，用 A 中的词汇改善其文体风格，使划线部分更加正式。

1 The response from the public <u>really shows</u> us the importance of having a full investigation of the facts.
2 This view of the world was originally <u>laid out</u> by the Ancient Greek philosophers.
3 It is not easy to <u>find the reason</u> for the fall in population of these birds.
4 Economists have <u>said there might be</u> a link between exchange rates and a general lack of confidence in the European Union.
5 I should like to <u>say again</u> here that the issue is not one that can be easily resolved.
6 The recent events <u>are the best example of</u> the dilemma faced by politicians the world over.

83.2 使用括号中的动词改写句子，可进行其他必要的改动。

1 70% of the landmass is mountain ranges. (COMPRISE)
2 A wide variety of subjects are dealt with in the book. (EMBRACE)
3 I think these three sections can all come under one heading. (SUBSUME)
4 Poems are not easily amenable to being put into different types. (CATEGORISE)

83.3 在表中填出相应的名词。如需要可使用词典。

verb	*noun*
categorise	
preface	
allude to	
cite	
reiterate	
epitomise	

83.4 使用 C 中的词汇填空，表达括号中的意思。

1 I shall _____ to this issue later in this essay. (come back to)
2 The question of monetary union _____ us to our next topic: the idea of a federal Europe. (means we've arrived at)
3 Smith just _____ upon the subject of Internet policing but does not go into it in depth. (mentions only briefly)
4 I shall attempt to _____ the problem of censorship later in this discussion. (attend to, consider)
5 Psychological factors in learning foreign languages are _____ this essay. (outside of the topic area)
6 I shall discuss the poets in _____ order, that is to say I shall comment on the least important ones first.
7 In the final analysis, we are _____ that there is little hope of stamping out illegal drugs altogether. (have no choice but to believe)
8 This unit has attempted to _____ a range of useful vocabulary for formal writing. (give all the necessary information about)

84 书写：风格与样式

A 书写

If you're in a hurry, you can **scribble** a note to someone. [write quickly, without much care]
I'll just **jot down** (informal) / **make a note of** (more formal) your phone number before I forget it. [write something down to remember it]
I'll **copy out** the information on hotels for you. [copy in writing]
Some students **write down** everything the lecturer says. [copy in writing what is spoken]
She's **writing up** her dissertation at the moment, so she's very tired and stressed. [making a proper written text based on notes]
This isn't the final version; it's just a **first draft**. [first attempt at writing something]
She bought the **manuscript** of a famous poem at the sale. [original handwritten version]
She got so bored at the meeting she spent the whole time **doodling**. [drawing and writing irrelevant things on the paper in front of her]

B 打字、文字处理及印刷

I've finished my book. I'm sending the **typescript/manuscript** to the publisher tomorrow. [typed text]
I've done the text, but I want to **format** it properly before printing it. [create the page as it will appear when printed]
I usually **cut and paste** or **copy and paste** bits of material from my notes when I'm writing an essay, then link them all together. [move text from one place to another using a word processor]

These words are in a **shaded box**.

These words are in bold, *these are italicised / in italics.*

These words are in a different font size from the rest, and these are in a different typeface.

● This sentence has a **bullet** in front of it. ** This sentence has two **asterisks** in front of it.
This sentence **is indented.** [begins away from the normal margin]

"This sentence is in **double inverted commas / quotation marks.**" 'This one is in **single quotation marks / quotes.**'

Types of brackets: () **round** brackets < > **diamond/angle** brackets [ ] **square** brackets { } **chain/curly** brackets

CAPITALS or **UPPER CASE** (more technical) is the opposite of **small letters** or **lower case.**
This person has written her name in **block capitals:** MONICA FLATLEY

这是某本学术书籍的第一页。注意其结构和各个条目的名称。

English Grammar[1]**:**
A new method of classification[2]
Contents

Chapter 1	Verbs[3]	
1.1	Transitive verbs[4]	
1.2	Intransitive verbs	

[1] title
[2] subtitle
[3] chapter heading
[4] sub-heading (within a chapter)

练习

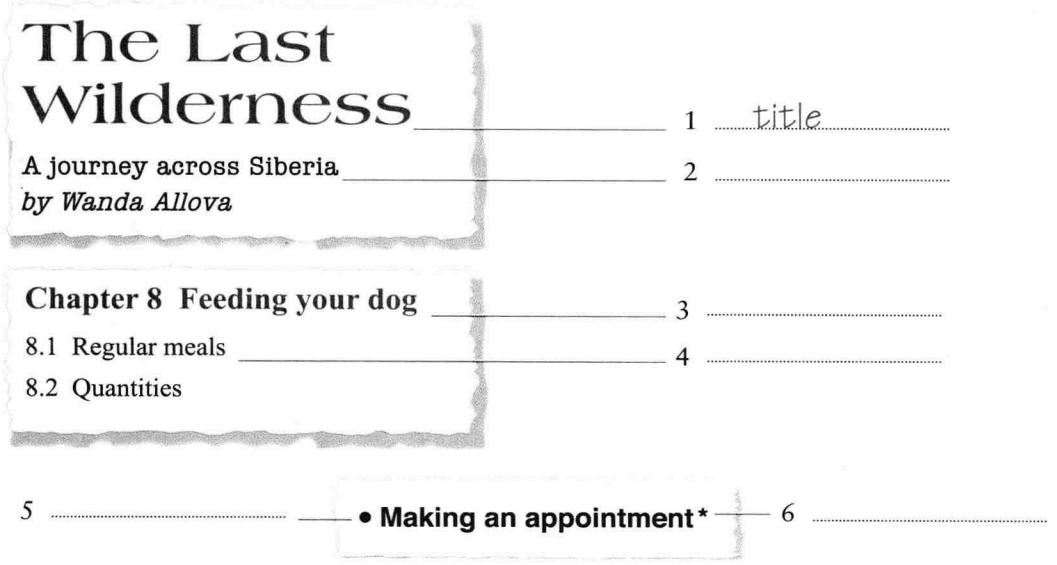
84.1 改正句中的错误。

1 Let me just jott in your e-mail address, or I'll forget it.
2 I'll just scramble a note for Jim to tell him where we've gone.
3 I spent the whole lesson just dawdling in the margin of my exercise book, I was so bored.
4 She's been writing down her PhD thesis for the last three months, that's why no one has seen her.
5 I'll send you a drift of the letter so you can suggest any changes before we send it.

84.2 圈出下列句子的正确描述

1	**I love the summer.**	upper case		bold		italics	
2	WILL YOU BE QUIET!	upper case		bold		italics	
3	*This is crazy.*	upper case		bold		italics	
4	Can you read this?	new typeface		new font size			
5	I've missed you	new typeface		new font size			
6	so i wrote to mr smith.	upper case		lower case		block capitals	
7	Name: ANNE TAYLOR	upper case		lower case		block capitals	
8	{See next page}	diamond	round	chain	square		
9	[Not suitable for children]	diamond	round	chain	square		
10	<johnjo@speedmail.com>	diamond	round	chain	square		

84.3 标示各条目名称，如示例。



84.4 填空完成句子。

1 Students may submit their essays in _____ or in handwriting.
2 With the computer, I can _____ the document before printing it, so that it looks professional. You can't really do that with an old-fashioned typewriter.
3 She works in the museum, conserving ancient _____.
4 I need to improve the paragraphing of my essay. I'll try to cut and _____ and move some sections around.

85 讲话的措词技巧

A 在即兴的谈话中，人们经常使用较笼统的词汇，例如 **thing** 或 **get**。以下是一些实际中的例子：

That's **one of the things** I want to talk to him about. [**thing** = subject]
Anne **has got a thing about** mice. [She either really likes or dislikes them.]
Don't **make such a big thing of it!** [Don't make so much fuss about it!]
There wasn't a thing we could do about it. [a thing = anything]
For one thing, I haven't got time. **For another thing,** I can't afford it. [Firstly ... Secondly ...]
The thing is, I have to get the essay in by tomorrow morning. [used to introduce a topic or provide an explanation]
As things are at present ... [As the situation is]

I don't **get** it. [understand]
We must **get** that parcel in the post today. [send]
She had big plans to travel the world but she just never **got it together.** [took positive action or organised herself]
Jill will **get things sorted out** today. [organise things so that the problem is solved]
I hope I can **get her to myself** this evening. [be alone with her]

B 当记不起某事物怎么说时，我们常用含义较模糊的词替代：

for objects: **thingy** **thingummy** **thingumajig** **thingumabob** **whatsit** **whatchamacallit** **whatnot**
for people: **whatsisname** (for a man) **whatsername** (for a woman) **whosit**

I can't find the **thingy** we use for crushing garlic.
Did you see **whatsisname** today?

C 某些量词在写作中很少使用，但在口语中很常见。例如下列表示“许多”的词组：

bags of **loads of** **masses of** **buckets of** **oodles of** **a load of** **a mass of** **umpteen**
I'll help you – I've got **bags of** time.
They can afford to go on exotic holidays as they've got **oodles of** money.
I've tried phoning her **umpteen** times but she never seems to be at home.

以下词组表示“少许”或“一些”： **a bit of** **a scrap of** **a touch of**

You've been sitting there all day but you haven't done **a scrap of** work.
Bill's got **a touch of** flu but he should be fine by next week.
I've got **a bit of** a headache.

D 以下一些谈话方式可使我们说的话不那么咄咄逼人，但潜在里可能会令对方不快。

It's not the most practical idea – and **I mean that in the nicest possible way.**
It's **not the most** practical/sensible/intelligent/appropriate thing you've ever done. [It's impractical / not very sensible / rather unintelligent / inappropriate.]
What a load of idiots – **present company excepted,** of course. [not including you or me]
I think a lot of the staff here, **myself included,** have not been working quite as hard as we should.
No offence intended, but I think you've misunderstood the basic problem.
If you don't mind my saying so, I think that you could have handled that better.
That's true up to a point, but I think it's basically giving a rather misleading picture.

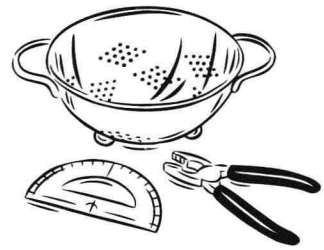
练习

85.1 参看 A，解释含 *thing* 和 *get* 的表达式在下列句子中的意思。

1 Don't make such a big thing about it. I'm only going for a few days.
2 Jorge has got a thing about Madonna. He plays her music all the time.
3 The thing is, I don't know when we'll get back.
4 Unless things change, we won't be able to get away for a holiday.
5 We've got a number of things to get through before lunchtime.
6 I don't get on with them very well. For one thing, we like different things. For another, I find them quite rude.
7 Did you get what the lecturer was saying? I didn't get a thing.
8 I hope we can get everything sorted out today. It's time we got it together!

85.2 下列句中说话者想要用的是哪个词？从框中选择。

colander	protractor	corkscrew
Leonardo DiCaprio	pliers	Leonard Nimoy



1 Where's the thingummy for opening wine bottles?
2 Look, isn't that whatsisname? The actor who was in *Titanic*.
3 I can't find the thingumabob for measuring angles.
4 Have you got a whatsit for pulling out nails?
5 Where's the thingy for draining potatoes?
6 The book is about Leonard whosit – the guy who was in that sci-fi series.

85.3 使用另外的模糊含义词汇改写 85.2 中的句子。

EXAMPLE *Where's the whatsit for opening wine bottles?*

85.4 参看 C，将下列句子改为更正式的语气。

1 There's no need to rush – we've got oodles of time.
2 I've asked her out umpteen times, but she's always got some excuse.
3 He hasn't done a scrap of useful work here since he first got the job.
4 I've got a load of papers I want to get rid of.
5 Pat asked masses of people to her get-together at the weekend.
6 Sue's got bags of energy – don't know where she gets it all from!

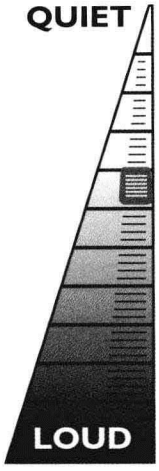
85.5 参看 D，然后填空。

This is a very boring party, present ..... (1) excepted, of course. No one, myself ..... (2), I suppose, seems to be making much of an effort to chat. No ..... (3) intended, but don't you think you could have dressed a bit more smartly? If you don't ..... (4) my saying so, I think you should have put on a bit of make-up. I mean that in the nicest ..... (5) way, of course!

85.6 使用英语学习词典查询 *thing* 和 *get*。记下你找到的任何新的有用表达式，并用它们造句。

86 讲话的方式与障碍

A 表述音量的动词：from quiet to loud



mumble 和 **mutter** 常有贬义：
Stop **mumbling**! I can't hear what you're saying.
He was **muttering** something under his breath, probably complaining, as usual.
murmur含义较为积极：They **murmured** their approval when he told them the plan.
without a murmur 表示没有任何反对、不满或评论：
They accepted it all **without a murmur**. I was surprised. Normally they complain.
raise one's voice 既可用于正面，也可用于负面：
You'll have to **raise your voice** a bit. She's a little hard of hearing. [speak louder]
'Don't you **raise your voice at** me!' [Do not speak in that loud, angry tone.]
shout, yell, scream, roar, shriek 后跟介词 **at**：Don't **shout at** me.
yell 常有紧急、愤怒、懊恼等意味；也用于周围有噪音时：He **yelled** at the children to stop messing around with his computer. 'Stay where you are!' he **yelled** above the noise of the traffic.
shriek 表示声音又高又尖，既可用于褒义，也可用于贬义：
'Oh, wow! That's fantastic!' she **shrieked**.
roar 指很大很低沉的声音，比如狮吼，既可用于褒义，也可用于贬义：As he kicked the ball into the goal, the crowd **roared**, 'Yes!' 'How dare you come in here!' he **roared**.

B 表述谈话过程和方式的动词

He's been **chattering away** on the phone all morning. [suggests light, non-serious talk]
(注意 **away** 如何用来突出强调谈话的延续。)
Tom and Lily are always **nagging** (**at**) each other. [criticising faults or duties not done]
We always **gossip** about work when we go out together. [talk about people, rumours, etc.]
Stop **bickering** you two! Why can't you be friends? [arguing in an irritated way]
It took him a long time to realise they were **winding him up**. [/ˈwaɪndɪŋ/ informal: teasing/fooling him]
They spent all evening **slagging off** their colleagues. [informal: criticising]
I realised she was **buttering me up** for some reason. [negative: saying nice things to me because she wanted something from me]
Janet is always **whining** and **whingeing** about something. [informal, negative: complaining]

C 表达障碍

症状	例句	释义
lisp	He speaks with a **lisp.** / He **lisps**. He says 'thing' instead of 'sing'.	difficulty in making an 's' sound and making a 'th' sound instead
stammer	He hates speaking in front of people because he's got a really bad **stammer**.	speak with abnormal pauses and repetitions
stutter	'I want to t-t-t-tell you something,' he **stuttered** nervously.	repeat sounds at the beginning of words
slurring	He was **slurring** his words because he had drunk far too much alcohol.	his words had a slow, lazy sound; difficult to understand
tongue-tied	I want to tell her I love her, but I **get tongue-tied.**	cannot say what I want to say; mix up my words

练习

86.1 不看左页你是否能记起以下内容？

1 a verb meaning 'to argue in an irritated manner'
2 a phrase meaning 'without complaining'
3 a verb meaning that someone often makes a 'th' sound instead of an 's' or 'z' sound
4 three verbs meaning 'speak very loudly' that are followed by *at*
5 how the verb *roar* is different form the verb *shriek*
6 two verbs connected with talking about people, usually when they are not present, either about their private affairs or saying very negative things about them
7 a verb meaning to tease someone or fool them to make them look silly

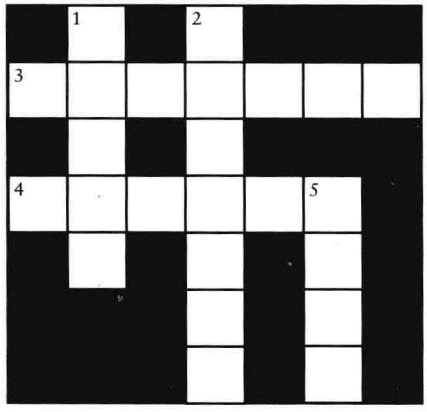
86.2 填空，每空一词。

1 'I want to c-c-c-c-come with you,' she _____ nervously.
2 I got _____ and said to her 'Your backet's dutiful' instead of 'Your jacket's beautiful'!
3 I wish you'd speak up and stop _____. I can't hear a word you're saying.
4 I had to _____ at him to be heard, the noise of the plane was so loud.
5 'I love you,' he _____ softly.
6 I hate people who _____ about their workmates. I never talk about other people.
7 The drugs had made her speech very incoherent. I couldn't follow what she was trying to say. She was _____ all her words.
8 She speaks with a _____. I thought she said she had too much *fun* on her holiday, but she was trying to say *sun*.

86.3 改正句中的错误。

1 They're always whineing and winging about everything. Take no notice of them.
2 I don't believe you. I think you're winding me.
3 Do you think Peggy was trying to banter me up for some reason? I wonder why she was saying all those nice things about me? I'm suspicious.
4 You're always nigging at me! Just leave me alone and let me watch TV!

86.4 填字游戏。



Across
3 people often do this on the phone for hours
4 rather low voice

Down
1 speak loudly
2 problem in speaking
5 make a loud, deep sound like a lion

87 语言表达的模糊化

A 模糊表达数字

He left a sum **in excess of $1** million when he died. [more than; used in more formal contexts]
It'll cost you **somewhere in the region of** £600 a month to rent a flat. [less formal: **around/about** £600]
It'll take five hours **give or take** half an hour to drive there. [informal: could be 4.5 or 5.5 hours]
The second meeting is **approximately** two and a half months after the first one. [rather formal: could be a week before or after]
It'll take a week **or so** to get the computer repaired. [informal: more than a week, but unclear how much more]
Quite a few students hadn't registered. [a surprisingly or undesirably large number]
There was only a **smattering** of women authors among the prize winners. [small proportion]
Would you like a **dash** of chilli sauce with your kebab? [very small quantity]
I'd like a **dollop** of ice cream with my fruit salad; shall I just help myself? [usually a small amount, but we can also say **a large dollop**]
Even though we put on **lashings** of suntan lotion, we still got sunburnt. [very large quantities]
Every morning I have toast with **oodles** of butter. [very large quantities, usually of food]

B （在非正式谈话中）模糊表达想法和活动

more or less常与动词和副词连用，虚化某事：
I think we've **more or less** solved the problem with the computer now.
My English is **more or less** on the same level as the other students in the class.

a bit和**a bit of a**常与形容词和名词连用，使含义弱化：
I'm **a bit** fed up with all the complaints I'm getting.
We were in **a bit of a** panic when we heard there was a strike at the airport.

or whatever, or something及**things like that / that kind of thing** 常用于表达不确指的事情和活动：
You could work Saturday then spend Sunday going to museums **or whatever.** [or similar activities]
If you don't want tea, have a lemonade **or something.** [any other kind of drink you want]
In the evenings we played quiz games **and things like that / and that kind of thing.** [different kinds of entertaining activities]
We need a big container made of plastic; a dustbin or **something along those lines** would do. [something fitting that description]
He said he was fed up with all the attacks and criticisms, **or words to that effect.** [or similar words expressing the same meaning]

注意：除非特别指出，本单元中出现的词汇和短语绝大多数只适用于非正式的谈话，不适用在正式的语境中。

练习

87.1 使用 A 中的表达式使下列句中的数字不那么精确。

1 The company will invest £10.3 million in new technology over the next five years. (formal)
2 It will cost you £7,000 to have the whole house redecorated.
3 It could take six, seven or eight hours to drive to Aberdeen, depending on the traffic. (Give an informal *and* a more formal version)
4 27 students failed the exam. I was rather surprised and disappointed.

87.2 下列句中有一些左页中未出现的模糊化表达，用线将它划出来并记录其语法特征（如：它是与名词连用，还是与形容词连用等）。

1 Her hair's a sort of reddish colour, and I'd say she's, well, forty, forty-fiveish.
2 The garden was a bit on the big side, but it was very pretty.
3 There was a kind of elasticky thing that held the two parts together, and I've lost it.
4 They're good shoes. They're comfortable on long walks and that.
5 I've been to the doctor's and had treatments and suchlike and I'm sure it helps in one way or another.

87.3 使用 A 中适当的词填空，完成句子。

1 Mm! Look at those gorgeous desserts with _____ of cream and chocolate sauce on them. I must have one!
2 Just a _____ of milk in my coffee, please; I like it quite dark.
3 He put _____ of hair gel on before going out to the disco.
4 Most of the people in the class were Spanish, with just a _____ of other nationalities.
5 She put a _____ of mayonnaise on her salad and mixed it all up.

87.4 使用适当的形容词或名词填空。正确答案可能不止一个。

1 It's a bit _____ that she hasn't rung. I hope she's not ill.
2 The computer keeps crashing; it's a bit of a _____.
3 It was a bit _____; I couldn't remember his name. I'll apologise next time I see him.
4 If you don't want a big meal you could have a _____ or something.
5 Make yourself at home. There are some magazines there, or you can just _____ or whatever.
6 It's a sort of craft shop; they sell _____ and things like that.
7 When you go on business trips, do you have time to go _____ and that?

87.5 当我们不记得具体事物的名字时，*thing* 和 *stuff* 是两个很有用的泛指词汇。用这两个词解释下列物品的定义，如示例。

EXAMPLE a toothbrush *a thing to clean your teeth with*

1 a tape measure
2 shoe polish
3 a corkscrew
4 a hammer
5 leftovers
6 suntan lotion

88 习语类型

A 动词 + 宾语

习语	释义	例句
ram something down someone's throat	impose one's ideas/views on someone	OK, so you're a materialist; you don't have to **ram it down everybody's throat**.
draw the line at something	refuse to behave in a certain way because you think it is wrong	I do use some strong language sometimes, but I **draw the line at** using offensive words.
have second thoughts	change your opinion or begin to have doubts about it	I'm **having second thoughts about** accepting that job offer. The pay's not enough.

B 介词短语（介词 + 名词短语）

Our boss always keeps us **in the dark** about changes until the last minute. [uninformed]
Over 100 villagers were killed **in cold blood** by the soldiers. [deliberately, without emotion]
It just happened **out of the blue**. [completely unexpectedly]

C 复合形式

习语	释义	例句
a kick in the teeth	an insult or unfair act	Not giving her the new job was a real **kick in the teeth** for her.
a stumbling block	an obstacle	Their connections with terrorism have always been **a stumbling block** in the party's political progress.
open-ended	having no planned ending, can be developed in many ways	I'm not prepared to give an **open-ended** commitment; I would like to have an agreement in writing.
state-of-the-art	most modern, most technically advanced	He always has a **state-of-the-art** computer and the latest camera.

D 其他类型

类型	例句
binomial (word + word)	She always acts so **high and mighty**. [self-important, arrogant]
simile (**as** + adjective + **as** + noun)	I'm **as blind as a bat** without my glasses. [can hardly see]
conversational phrases	Hi, Mick, **long time no see**. [I haven't seen you for a long time]
sayings/maxims	**Every little helps**. [even a small contribution is helpful]
proverbs	**Don't count your chickens before they are hatched.** [do not rely on things in the future before they happen]

练习

88.1 下文中有多少习语是“动词 + 宾语”类型？用下划线标出来。如需要可使用词典，用高品质的习语词典更好。

I always try to make the most of any opportunity to make new friends, such as a party or a social event. But it's not always easy to break the ice, and when you don't know someone, it's so easy to put your foot in it by saying something insensitive or something which unexpectedly rubs someone up the wrong way. But if you keep an eye on what you say, play it by ear and just try to act naturally, it can make all the difference and you may find you stand a good chance of making a new acquaintance or even a good friend.

现在将你找到的习语与下面的释义对应起来。

be watchful/careful about something
create a relaxed social atmosphere
get the maximum benefit from a situation
irritates someone
say or do something socially embarrassing
have a very positive effect
there is a strong possibility
don't plan in advance, just see how things go

88.2 用介词 *in, under, on, out, in, from, at* 将下列习语补充完整。如需要可使用词典。

1 We were talking _____ cross purposes. I was talking about the exams, and you thought I meant the course as a whole.
2 I was a bit _____ the weather last week, but I feel much better now.
3 I'm afraid we'll have to start _____ scratch again. This system just isn't working.
4 We were kept _____ the dark for weeks before anyone told us the truth.
5 Where we live now, we have great shops and everything we need _____ our doorstep.
6 They were killed _____ cold blood by rebel soldiers.
7 One day, _____ of the blue, he left his job and emigrated to Australia.

88.3 使用 88.2 中的习语改写句子。

1 I hate being uninformed about things at work.
2 The terrorists had no mercy and killed all the hostages.
3 The mountains and ski slopes are just a few miles away; we're so lucky.
4 Without any warning she received a letter from her long-lost brother.
5 I often find Jane and I have misunderstandings.
6 It looks as if they'll have to start all over again.
7 Keith's not looking too well these days, is he?

88.4 从表 A 中和表 B 中各选一个词进行组合，填空完成句子。如需要可使用词典。

A	make	nitty	half	long	saving

B	hearted	winded	grace	believe	gritty

1 I feel we're not really getting to the _____ of the issue.
2 The _____ of the whole situation is that we will no longer have to spend money on a project that was doomed to fail anyway.
3 He lives in a _____ world which is very different from reality.
4 It was a _____ lecture which said very little.
5 She joined us in a rather _____ way; you could see she really didn't want to be with us.

89 不同情境的习语

A 事情进展顺利

If something or things ...	*this means ...*
worked like a dream	a plan succeeded absolutely perfectly
went according to plan	they occurred exactly as intended
went/ran like clockwork	they went smoothly, with no difficulties
is/are up and running	it has / they have begun to work as planned
is/are falling into place	it is / they are on the point of starting to work well
is/are looking up	it is / they are looking very positive

B 事情进展不顺利

Oh no! That's all we needed! [in response to news that makes current problems even worse]
That's the last thing I wanted to hear! [in response to news that fulfils your worst fears]
This is like a bad dream! [when one bad thing after another happens in quick succession]
It's a real nightmare. [used very generally, e.g. about traffic jams, computers going wrong]
What a pain! [very general: in response to any situation that causes you difficulty]
It's the calm before the storm. [when things are quiet, but you fear they are about to change]

C 困惑和无法理解的情况

When she said her name was Bloor it **threw me completely.** [I didn't know how to respond]
The meeting he organised was **a complete shambles.** [a totally disorganised and chaotic event]
It's a mystery to me how people know about my private life. [it's something I cannot understand]
I'm sorry, we must have **got our wires crossed.** I thought the meeting was at 11, not 10.30. [there must have been a miscommunication/misunderstanding]
It's as clear as mud. [in response to an explanation that only confuses you even more]
Let's not muddy the waters. [let's not confuse matters by introducing irrelevant things]
I'm not with you. / You've lost me there. [what you have said has confused me]
We can't see the wood for the trees. [too much detail prevents us seeing the overall situation]

D 解决困难（或未能解决困难）

It's just a storm in a teacup.

It's nothing; **it's just a storm in a teacup.** [a lot of fuss / big argument that will soon be forgotten]
It would make life easier if you delayed it till next week. [it would help to solve the problem]
That was **a close call/thing.** [it was almost a disaster, but it turned out OK].
We solved the problem **at the eleventh hour** by sending a fax to his home number. [at the very last minute before disaster might have occurred]
Nothing seems to have happened about the money that disappeared. It was all just **brushed under the carpet.** [all officially forgotten and never resolved; never mentioned again]

练习

89.1 将下列对话中的习语补充完整。

1 A: Did everything go all right at the conference?
B: Yes, the whole thing went like _____

2 A: Did you take my advice?
B: Yes, and the whole thing worked like a _____

3 A: How are things at work? Still bad?
B: No, no, in fact things are really beginning to look _____

4 A: I'm afraid our idea of increasing the membership didn't really work.
B: Oh well, things don't always go according _____.

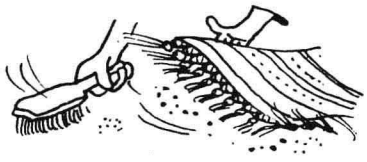
5 A: Are you optimistic about your plans for the future?
B: Yes, I think things are beginning to fall _____

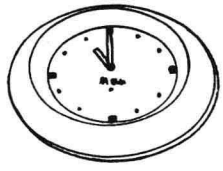
6 A: Have you started the new training programme you were planning?
B: Oh yes, it's up _____

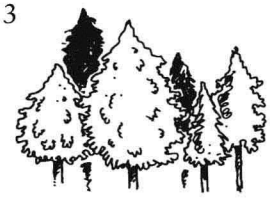
89.2 用以括号中的词组成的习语改写句子。

1 I can't understand how she can eat so much food and yet stay so slim. (MYSTERY)
2 The traffic in the city centre is very, very bad on Saturdays. (NIGHTMARE)
3 How inconvenient! We have to be at the airport at 5.30 a.m. (PAIN)
4 It's all very quiet; I'm sure it won't last. (STORM)
5 It was just a stupid row that blew up over nothing and then everyone forgot it. (STORM)
6 She asked me a question that completely surprised me and I didn't know how to answer it. (THROW)
7 This is an unbelievable series of bad events. (DREAM)
8 Oh no! I didn't want to be told that! (HEAR)
9 I'm sorry; there was a misunderstanding. (WIRES)
10 I'm sorry; I didn't follow what you just said. (LOSE)

89.3 从下列图画可联想到什么习语?

1


2


3


89.4 回答问题。

What idiom means ...

1 something completely disorganised and chaotic?
2 almost a disaster, but just avoided?
3 very unclear and confusing?
4 make something unclear and confusing by introducing irrelevant things?

90 评论人物的习语 I

A 喜欢 / 厌恶

Juliet **only has eyes for** Romeo. [is only attracted to]
Damian **loves** Anne **to bits.** [loves very much]
She is **the woman of his dreams.** He is **the man of her dreams.** [the perfect partner]
They immediately **fell head over heels in love.** [fell deeply in love]
They hadn't met before that holiday but they **got on like a house on fire.** [got on very well]
I **have a soft spot for** Kevin – he was always very kind to my grandma. [am fond of]
His rude behaviour really **gets up my nose / gets on my wick / gets on my nerves / gets my back up.** [informal: annoys me]

B 智慧 / 知识

Jack's been in the business so long that he really **knows what's what.** [is an expert]
The new prof certainly **knows his stuff.** [is an expert in his field]
Although Sam is the manager, his wife is really **the brains behind** the company. [the most intelligent person in the company]
If you need help with the quiz, ask your grandfather. He's **a mine of information.** [a rich source of information]
You won't solve the problem if you don't use your **grey matter.** [intelligence, brains]
Milly **is nobody's fool** – she'll never believe such a poor excuse. [is very clever]
We **haven't a clue / the foggiest (idea)** what the bosses are planning. [have no idea]
I suspect Sue's **in the know** but she won't tell us anything. [has inside knowledge]
Pat **has the gift of the gab.** [talks well and persuasively]
My grandma **could talk the hind legs off a donkey.** [could talk for hours]
I can't stand Mark – he's such a **know-all / smart aleck.** [someone who shows off their cleverness in an irritating way]
Although his parents are both very bright, Neil **has got nothing between the ears / is as thick as two short planks.** [is extremely stupid]
Hugh is a bit **slow on the uptake** – you have to explain things to him several times.
Tim's dad **wasn't born yesterday** [is not stupid] – Tim won't be able to **pull the wool over his eyes.** [deceive him]
I **can't make head or tail of** what you're trying to say. [can't understand]
Rita is **one sandwich short of a picnic.** [stupid] You may come across other informal expressions following the same pattern and indicating stupidity:
He's **one cell short of a battery / one slice short of a loaf / several bricks short of a load.**

C 快乐 / 悲伤

表达式	释义
to be on top of the world / on cloud nine / in seventh heaven / over the moon	to be extremely happy
to be in (your) element / to be made for	to be ideally suited for
to rave about	to be enthusiastic about
to look like the cat that got the cream	to look irritatingly pleased with yourself
to be down in the dumps / down in the mouth	to be depressed

练习

90.1 如果有人对你说了以下的话，你会高兴还是不快？

1 You certainly know your stuff.
2 You get on my wick.
3 You're nobody's fool.
4 You're two sandwiches short of a picnic.
5 You're such a know-all.
6 You're as thick as two short planks.
7 You're such a smart aleck.
8 You've got the gift of the gab.

90.2 改正句子中习语的错误。

1 It's no fun spending time with Jez and Sal as they only have an eye for each other.
2 Try to solve these problems by using your pink matter.
3 Most parents weren't born today – they have a good idea of what their kids get up to.
4 Maggie could talk the front legs off a donkey.
5 Mary's on cloud seven now she's at university.
6 They are head over feet in love.
7 I haven't the cloudiest idea what we should do about this letter.
8 Gilly has a soft place for Jim – she's always talking about him.
9 Ruth and Paul raved after the play.

90.3 填空将下文中的习语补充完整，每空一词。

Sarah has met the man of her ..... (1). She loves him ..... (2) bits. Fortunately he gets on like a house on ..... (3) with her parents. I've known Tony for years and also have a ..... (4) spot for him. He is a ..... (5) of information. He works in a library where he is in his ..... (6). He certainly knows what's ..... (7) in libraries and can help anyone, even those people who are as thick as two short ..... (8). Tony and Sarah have both been on ..... (9) of the world since they met. I haven't a ..... (10) when they will get married, but I am sure that they will marry as they are clearly head over ..... (11) in love. Sarah's last boyfriend was very different. His behaviour really got her father's ..... (12) up and I must admit he got up my ..... (13) as well. He was such a know-..... (14) even though I actually thought he had ..... (15) between the ears. I can't understand why Sarah was so down in the ..... (16) when they split up. Never mind, she's in ..... (17) heaven again now.

90.4 用词典查以下习语。它们属于左页 A、B、C 中的哪一类？

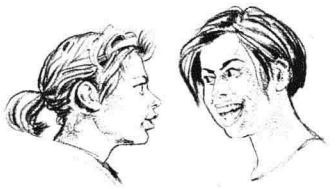
1 to put someone in the picture
2 to think the world of someone
3 to look as miserable as sin
4 to hit it off
5 to be walking on air
6 to let the cat out of the bag

90.5 选择 90.4 中的习语替换划线部分。

1 Amanda admires her father very much.
2 When I met my penfriend, we immediately got on like a house on fire.
3 I wanted to keep the present a secret but my little boy gave the game away.
4 Why have the children had such unhappy faces all evening?
5 If you come round this evening I'll explain everything to you.
6 I've been on cloud nine ever since I heard your good news!

91 评论人物的习语 2

A 人物性格



A: So, what do you think of your new colleagues?

B: Well, Miranda always seems **to be in a world of her own**[1]. Joe is **a rough diamond**[2] but it's worth putting up with his brusqueness. I quite like Sarah – she **never minces her words**[3]. Liz **is her own worst enemy**[4] – if she had a bit more confidence in herself, others would appreciate her more. Jill **is very much her own person**[5] – although all the rest of the family are teachers, she is determined to make a career in business. And Ben's **a soft touch**[6] – anyone can persuade him to lend them some cash.

A: Well, you are **a dark horse**[7] – I never thought you'd **get the measure of**[8] us so fast!

1 to be lost in a daydream
2 a good person with an abrupt manner
3 always says exactly what she thinks without trying to be diplomatic
4 behaves in a way that does not help her
5 is not influenced by others
6 can easily be persuaded
7 someone who hides their skills
8 gain a full understanding of

B (特定情况下) 人的情绪反应

习语	释义
be/feel (all) at sea	feel lost or confused
want to curl up and die	feel terribly ashamed and embarrassed
turn (your) stomach	make (you) feel sick
be at a (complete) loss for words	not know what to say
be at the end of (your) tether	feel unable to deal with something because you are too tired, worried or annoyed
be full of beans	be full of energy
drive someone crazy / round the bend / nuts	make someone angry or mad
be dead on (your) feet	feel exhausted
put a brave face on it	pretend to be happy about something
go ballistic / blow a fuse / hit the roof/ceiling	react extremely angrily

C 人际关系

They had a terrible argument about their business plans and have **been at loggerheads** ever since [disagreed strongly]. I know there's been a lot of **bad blood** between them in the past but I thought things had improved now. [negative feelings, disagreements]

Susie **can twist/wrap her father round her little finger** – he'd do anything for her. In other words, she **has him eating out of the palm of her hand.** [can persuade him to do anything for her because she has so much control over him]

Don't trust him – he's **a snake in the grass.** [someone who pretends to be friendly but may do things that will harm you]

Tom has a knack of **rubbing me up the wrong way.** [irritating me without intending to]

He always **gives** his son **the benefit of the doubt.** [believes good rather than bad about him]

练习

91.1 参看 A，回答问题。

1 Which two idioms would you most like to have used about you?
2 Which two would you least like to have used about you?

91.2 参看 B，然后选择习语填空，完成句子。

1 The teacher _____ when he saw the mess the children had made.
2 The children _____ today – it must be the fresh sea air.
3 I _____ when they rang up out of the blue and offered me a job.
4 I felt _____ on my first day at work but I soon got used to it.
5 After a whole day of sightseeing in London, I _____.
6 Mel's constant whingeing is _____.
7 I _____ when I realised that Melissa had heard what I said.
8 I'll just have to _____ and hope no one sees I'm upset.
9 Just thinking of hot milk with a skin on it _____.
10 I was _____ when the children's mother arrived home.
I think I'd really have lost my temper with them if I'd been on my own much longer.

91.3 参看 C，填空将下列句中的习语补充完整。

1 He means well, but somehow he never fails to _____ me up the wrong way.
2 Someone told me that the brothers have been at _____ for over a year now.
3 Tess likes him but I wouldn't trust him. I think he's a _____ in the grass.
4 You don't know that it was Nick that stole the money – I really think you should give him the _____ of the doubt.

91.4 你会用什么习语来描述以下人物？

1 Your Aunt Vicky, who can easily be persuaded to give you some money.
2 Mike, who did not tell people of his plans to get married that afternoon.
3 Maria, who pretends to be your friend but is really planning to cause trouble for you.
4 A toddler, who is being very active and energetic.
5 Your mother, who did not know what to say about something you told her.
6 Yourself, on your first day in a new country where you do not know the language.
7 Helena, who is preoccupied by a daydream rather than reality.

91.5 了解习语中所有词的本来含义，会有助于学习和记忆它。下列划线的词汇是什么意思？如需要可使用词典。你认为该习语怎样扩充了这些含义？

1 at the end of my <u>tether</u>
2 to <u>curl up</u> and die
3 to blow <u>a fuse</u>
4 a rough <u>diamond</u>
5 to go <u>ballistic</u>

91.6 回答问题。

1 Can you name two things that drive you nuts?
2 When did you last feel dead on your feet?
3 Can you describe an occasion when someone you knew hit the ceiling?
4 Have you ever been at loggerheads with anyone? If so, why?
5 Can you wrap anyone round your little finger?
6 Can you think of a situation when you had to give someone the benefit of the doubt?

92 评述事件的习语

A

注意下文中习语的使用：有的交代场景设置（1–3），有的使事件更加紧凑精彩（4–8），还有的评述事件并得出结论（9–16）。

One day, I was sitting at my desk in the office, **minding my own business**[1] and just **twiddling my thumbs**[2], when my colleague Tom Jessop came walking towards me. **I could feel it in my bones**[3] that something was going to happen. Suddenly, **out of the blue**[4], and **without so much as a by-your-leave**[5], he pulled the power cable out of the back of my computer, switching it off instantly. **Before I knew where I was**[6], he was switching it on again, and **in next to no time**[7], it was working normally. He explained that he had noticed out of the corner of his eye that I was just about to open an e-mail which he knew contained a dangerous virus, and he reacted quickly to stop me doing it. He explained that he had just opened the infected e-mail himself and that now his computer had completely crashed. **To cap/crown it all**[8], he had lost a long, important report he had almost finished. But, **would you believe it**[9], I had not saved my work for about an hour, and, **to cut a long story short**[10], by pulling out my power cable he caused me to lose a report I was writing too, even though he saved me from the virus! However, **as luck would have it**[11], I remembered later that I had a copy on my laptop, so everything **turned out all right in the end**[12], and **all's well that ends well**[13], at least for me. **I lived to tell the tale**[14], but poor old Tom lost everything on his computer. I know **it was just one of those things**[15], but still, **it just goes to show**[16] how you can never trust technology.

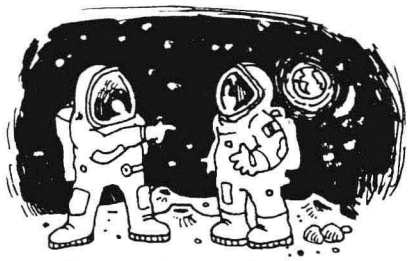
1 doing nothing special
2 feeling bored, with nothing to do
3 I could sense
4 completely unexpectedly
5 without asking permission or warning anyone
6 before I had time to be aware of what was happening
7 very quickly
8 as the worst event in a series of bad ones
9 said when one is about to tell a coincidence
10 to tell something briefly
11 purely by luck
12 finished well
13 said as a comment on a good ending to a series of bad events
14 I survived the events
15 it was an event that one just has to accept
16 used to state the moral or logical conclusion of the events

B

叙事中的其他表达

A: It turned out she went to the same school as my sister.
B: Well! **It's a small world**, isn't it? [said when a coincidence happens between people]

"So I said, I'm not afraid of animals, let me carry it. **Famous last words!** It was a six-foot snake!" [said when one later regrets something one has said]



"So you're from Earth too? Small world isn't it!"

A: I don't think I'll ever trust her again.
B: Well, **you live and learn**, don't you? [comment on events from which someone has learnt a lesson]

练习

92.1 将下列句中的习语补充完整。

1 I was just standing there, and then, out of _____, a man on a horse rode up to me.
2 I was in the office, minding _____, when I heard a bell ringing in the street.
3 I could feel _____ that it wasn't going to be an ordinary day.
4 We were just twiddling _____, waiting for something to happen.
5 Then, without so much _____, he took my bike and rode off.

92.2 回答问题。

Which idiom means...

1 to get quickly to the end of the story?
2 you usually learn something from a bad experience?
3 coincidences happen in this world of ours?
4 I survived all the bad things?
5 the events prove/demonstrate that ...?
6 the events were something you just have to accept?

92.3 将下列习语的开头和的结尾连接起来。

1 as luck	that ends well
2 famous	believe it
3 in next	would have it
4 all's well	it all
5 to crown	last words
6 would you	to no time

92.4 将下划线标出的习语与下面的定义对应起来。如需要可使用高质量的综合性词典或习语词典。

Idioms

1 I had a feeling of déjà vu.
2 So far so good, I thought.
3 One thing led to another.
4 If you can't beat them, join them.
5 You can't win them all.
6 I had nothing to lose, so I did it.

Definitions

a) A series of events all happened, over which the speaker had little control.
b) The speaker felt he or she had already experienced what was about to happen.
c) One always has to accept that bad things will happen as well as good.
d) Things were already bad, and the proposed action could not make them worse.
e) Things were going fine up to that point.
f) One is resigned to accept something that one has been struggling against.

FOLLOW UP 阅读英语杂志中的读者来信专栏，看人们是怎样描述日常事件的。记下任何属于本单元讲解范畴的习语。

93 短语动词 I

在英语中有大量的短语动词，以下的三个单元当然无法尽数说明，这些单元的意图就是通过一系列不同的途径让你了解短语动词，并给出一些提示帮助你理解并学习它们。

A

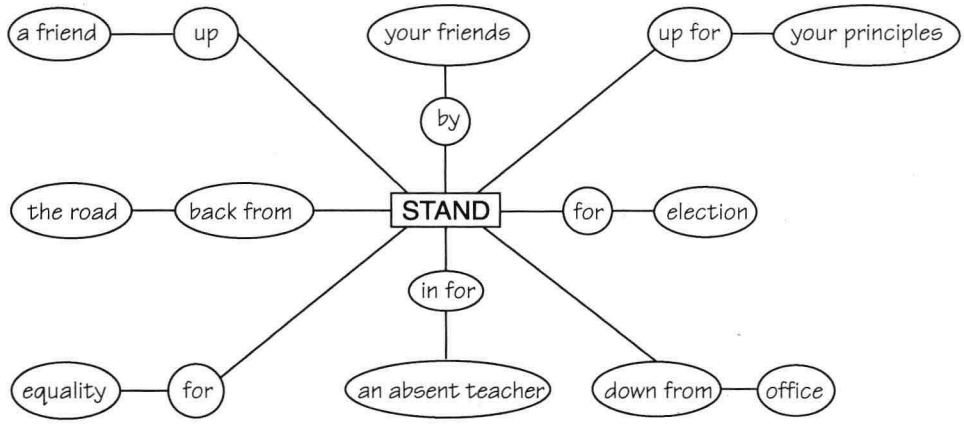
学习短语动词的最好方法无疑是融入语境中学习。在你的词汇笔记本或文档中给短语动词留出一部分空间，在你听到或读到短语动词时，将完整的句子或段落记下来。

以下是记忆短语动词的某些要点：

- “动词 + 小品词 / 介词”组合可能有一系列不同的意思。例如 **take off**：a plane **takes off**　you can **take off** a coat/glasses/make-up　a burglar may **take off** if he hears someone coming　something is **taken off** a bill when a discount is allowed；
- 可能最好还是首先理解短语动词，而不是急着去使用它们。通常来说，你可以另外使用一个英语词汇而不是短语动词。例如，你可以说 the burglar **left hurriedly** 或 10% **was deducted from** the bill，而不说 the burglar **take off** 或 10% was **take off** the bill。注意这种替代并不总是可行的。例如，当遇到 planes **taking off** 或 **taking off** clothes 时，就无法找出另一个同义词替代。

B

英语中许多短语动词以含义不是非常明确的动词为基础组成，如 **do, make, get, go, run, turn** 等，或者是像 **stand** 这样有很多不同含义的动词。学习短语动词的一个方法是做一个以这些动词为核心的图表。例如：



C

这种图表如果配上清晰体现该短语动词含义的例句会特别实用。

Ron waited an hour for Alice, then he realised he had been **stood up** and furious, went home.
You should always **stand by** your friends when they are in trouble.
You should also **stand up for** your principles, even if it makes you unpopular.
The house **stands back from** the road, so you wouldn't notice it as you drive past.
There are three people **standing for** election in this constituency.
The party that I support **stands for** equality and improved social services.
I often had to **stand in for** other teachers who were absent.
After ten years as Mayor, Damian Taylor decided it was time to **stand down**.

练习

93.1 以任何适当的方式将下列含 *stand* 的句子补充完整。

1 The police asked people to stand back .....
2 When he was at school, John always used to stand up for .....
3 Michael Porter has decided to stand down .....
4 I always knew that Laura would stand by .....
5 The Socialist Workers' Party stands for .....
6 On my first day as a teacher I had to stand in for .....
7 I would never dream of standing ..... up.
8 Masha is considering standing for .....

93.2 在左页的图表中 *stand for* 有两种不同的用法。用词典找出 *stand for* 的另外两种用法，并分别造句体现它们的含义。

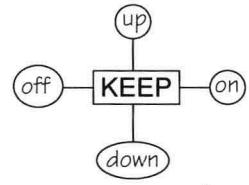
93.3 下列句中的短语动词含 *keep*, *tell*, *blow*, *pull* 等动词。借助词典的帮助，添加必要的介词 / 小品词，完成句子。

1 The draught was so strong that it blew ..... the candle.
2 He was very ill last year but, thank goodness, he pulled .....
3 The stress of his illness eventually told ..... his wife and she fell ill too.
4 How do you plan to keep ..... your English once this course finishes?
5 It is almost impossible to tell the original and the forgery .....
6 The papers are full of the scandal, but in a few days it will all have blown .....
7 The bus pulled ..... sharply at a red light and I lost my balance and fell over.
8 Sara walks so fast that I can't possibly keep ..... with her.
9 Wages have been kept ..... for far too long even though prices have gone up.
10 An argument blew ..... at the end of the meeting and it ended on a sour note.
11 The teacher told the boy ..... for chewing gum in class.
12 The invigilator wouldn't have realised Sue was cheating if Amy hadn't told ..... her.

93.4 用括号中的动词组成短语动词，改写句子。如需要可使用词典。

1 Please don't walk on the grass. (KEEP)
2 Sam is going to the dentist to have a tooth extracted this afternoon. (PULL)
3 This is such a lovely photo. I'd like to have it enlarged and framed for my wall. (BLOW)
4 Rod's going to apply for the job, but the fact that he has so little experience will make it less likely for him to get it. (TELL)
5 Her idea for a new business is brilliant. I just hope she can succeed. (PULL)
6 Do you think that Ken might not be telling us the whole truth? (KEEP)

93.5 根据练习 93.3、93.4 和其他以动词 *keep*, *tell*, *blow*, *pull* 为基础组成的短语动词，做几张图表，帮助记忆学习。



93.6 改写 C 中的例句，不要使用任何短语动词。

94 短语动词 2

A

在 Unit 93 中，我们讨论了一些由基本动词 *stand*, *keep*, *tell* 等组成的短语动词。在本单元我们将讨论由另外一些动词组成的短语动词，这些动词相对不那么常见，或者没有太多的组合方式。这类短语动词根据它们的介词 / 小品词分类。

* 标出的短语动词是较不正式的用法。

away

The boy tried to escape from his country by **stowing away** on a passenger liner. [hiding on ship, plane or other form of transport]
Taxes have been **whittling away** at our savings for some time now. [gradually destroying]
I've been **slogging away*** at this report for hours. I'm really fed up with it. [working hard]

down

A: What's the weather like with you?
B: It's **pelting down***. You'll get soaked if you go out without an umbrella. [pouring with rain]
There have been many complaints that universities are **dumbing down** their degree courses in order to attract more students. [making less intellectually demanding]
The government had made a serious mistake but, of course, they did what they could to **play it down**. [make it seem less important]

off

The police would never have caught the burglars if a rival gang hadn't **tipped them off**. [passed on secret information]
It was so hot in the sun that I **dozed off**. [fell asleep]
The anaesthetic is **wearing off** and my mouth is beginning to feel quite sore now. [lose its effect]

on

A: Waiter, why is my apple pie all squashed?
B: Well, you did ask me to **step on it!*** [hurry]
They **lay on** extra trains during the rush hour. [provide]
That music will never **catch on**. [become popular]

"Well, you did ask me to step on it!"

out

I was going to take part in the London Marathon but I **bottled out*** at the last moment. [lost my courage and decided not to do it]
I'm finding my job very unpleasant at the moment but I'm going to try to **stick it out*** until the end of this year. [persevere with it]
Jim always relies on his wife to **sort out** all the arrangements for their holidays. [organise]

up

I was about to leave work when a problem **cropped up**. [occurred]
It's said to be better to share your feelings with someone rather than to **bottle them up***. [keep feelings hidden]
It was raining heavily earlier on, but it's **easing up** a bit now. [becoming less intense]

TIP 你可能发现根据介词 / 小品词来分类记录这样的短语动词很有帮助，试着同时记下相关例句，帮助记忆。

练习

94.1 选择左页中的动词填空，完成句子。

1 Before I can go home, I must _____ out the papers in my in-tray.
2 My grandfather has the talent of being able to _____ off at any time in any place.
3 Jo's been _____ away at her revision all morning. Why don't you take her a cup of coffee?
4 The company agreed to _____ on some food at the party but workers would have to provide their own drinks.
5 We would have gone for a walk if it hadn't been _____ down.
6 I'm sorry, I'm going to be late home again tonight. Something urgent has just _____ up.
7 The escaped convict _____ away on an oil tanker.
8 I really hate my job and don't think I can _____ it out much longer.
9 We were very busy at the weekend but things have _____ up a bit now.
10 Every year the management is _____ away at jobs. Now there are fewer than 100 employees in the whole company.

94.2 看下列句中划线的名词。它们是什么意思？它们都与左页中的某个短语动词有关。

1 Thanks to a tip-off, the police were able to locate the bomb before it exploded.
2 Look at the cat having a doze on the window ledge. It's a wonder it doesn't fall off.
3 Two stowaways were found in the hold of the aircraft just before take-off.
4 I've finished the book now but I found it quite a slog.
5 The team has been badly affected by a crop of injuries.
6 The President is said to be very good at making people feel at ease.

94.3 下列短语动词中基本动词的原义是什么？是否与该短语动词的含义相关？

1 bottle up	3 step on it	5 crop up	7 stick it out
2 pelt down	4 stow away	6 sort out	8 whittle away

94.4 左页中的 6 个小品词是否具有某种特定的意义，能帮助你理解短语动词的含义？注意每个小品词 / 介词都不止有一个含义。

EXAMPLE **away** conveys the ideas of: at a distance (stow away)
continuous activity (whittle away, slog away)

94.5 英语中仍在不断出现新的短语动词，特别是那些由较不常见的词汇组成的短语动词。你能利用你对组成短语动词的动词和介词的理解，并联系上下文，推测出下列划线短语动词的含义吗？

1 I'm conferenced out now. I'm really ready to go home.
2 The advertising campaign led to sales rocketing off.
3 We decided to tile up the old fireplace.
4 The children surfed away on the Internet all day long.

95 短语动词 3

本单元中我们将讨论短语动词的另外两种分类方式。

A

可以把含两个介词或小品词的短语动词划为一类。下面是一些例子：

Because Joe was often ill as a child, he **missed out on** a lot of schooling. [was not able to receive]
Capital punishment was **done away with** in Britain forty years ago. [abolished]
The sales manager really seems to **have it in for** her new secretary. She criticises her work all the time. [be determined to find fault with]
Why don't you come round for a cup of coffee this evening and we can **catch up with** all the gossip? [get up-to-date with]
I've been meaning to tidy my desk for ages but I just never **get round to** it. [find time for]
Eva has **gone/come down with** flu and won't be able to attend today's meeting. [started to suffer from]
Bill **fell out with** his brother when they were in their twenties and they didn't see each other for fifteen years. [quarrelled with]
When parents are stressed at work, they sometimes **take it out on** their children. [get unfairly cross with]

B

可以根据主题来给某些短语动词分类。以下是根据某几个主题分类的短语动词，在该主题中这样的短语动词还有很多。

work and business

Our business went through a bad patch last year, but things seem to be **picking up** now. [improving]
Last year the company decided to **branch out** into some new lines. [expand]
We've **been snowed under** with work all month. [had a lot to deal with]
Two hundred workers have been **laid off** at the British Aerospace factory. [made redundant from their jobs]
House prices fell steeply earlier this year but now they seem to have **bottomed out**. [reached the lowest point from which they will not fall any further]

mood and emotions

He's looking so miserable! What can we do to **cheer him up**? [make him feel happier]
Come to the bar with us – work isn't everything. You need to **chill out!** [informal: relax]
You really must try to stay calm. Don't get so **worked up** about it. [upset]
He's still angry. Wait until he has **simmered down** before talking to him. [become calmer]
The food looked so good, I **got** a bit **carried away** and ordered far too much. [lost control, became excited]
Knowing that I wouldn't tell anyone else, Susanna **opened up** to me a little. [told some secrets]
Being spoken to like that really **took me aback**. [surprised/shocked me]
Anne was **bubbling over with** excitement at the thought of seeing her boyfriend again. [full of]

"I got a bit carried away."

练习

95.1 将下列词汇正确排序，组成句子。各句的第一个词和最后一个词已经在正确的位置上。

1 as / away / on / out / was / Juan / missed / the / he / fireworks
2 I've / temperature / and / with / got / think / I / a / be / down / going / may / something
3 I / on / day / but / need / take / out / know / had / no / to / you've / bad / there's / it / a / me
4 most / wish / schools / away / end-of-term / students / that / with / would / do / exams
5 it / time / really / is / painting / got / to / round / the / we / house
6 I / going / fall / to / with / over / other / each / we're / hope / not / who / is / to / out / going / pay
7 one / other / in / for / had / since / me / ever / in / has / work / of / it / I / waiters / started / the / that / restaurant
8 I / think / can / with / don't / I've / catch / break / take / as / I / a / lunch / to / today / some / up / got / work

95.2 用动词或介词 / 小品词填空，完成句子。

1 Alex was feeling very miserable when he got home but a good meal and his favourite TV programme ..... him up.
2 Jade was quite taken ..... when she realised that she was the only person at the party who was in fancy dress.
3 Janet always gets terribly ..... up over her exams.
4 Mel's decided to leave his job and ..... out on his own.
5 It is rumoured that they are planning to ..... off more staff next month. I hope I'm not one of them.
6 The children haven't talked to me at all about the accident but they might just ..... up to their grandmother.
7 I'm absolutely snowed ..... at work. I hope things ease up soon.
8 Sales have been very poor so far this year but there are signs that they may be ..... up now.

95.3 你能用 A 或 B 中的短语动词改写下列句子吗？

1 There's no point in trying to talk to your father until he's a bit less angry.
2 Do you think it would be a good idea to abolish selective education?
3 Sam's father died when he was six and so he grew up without a male role model at home.
4 When Mr Brown was made redundant, the family decided to emigrate to Australia.
5 Emily was very moved by the emotional way in which Richard read the poem.
6 Do you consider that oil prices have now fallen as low as they are going to?
7 You take life too seriously. Relax!
8 The newly married couple were full of happiness.

95.4 看 Unit 94 中的短语动词，哪些也可以归在 *work and business* 或 *mood and emotions* 的类别中？

95.5 B 中的许多短语动词有比喻意义。找出 4 个例子，说明这些比喻是什么？为什么这样用很恰当？

96 美式英语 / 英式英语

A streets 与 roads

street 在美式英语中有较宽泛的含义。

讲美语者：Let's cross the **street** here. There's more traffic further down.

而讲英式英语的人通常会说 cross the **road**，特别是在繁忙的城市中。

以下是另外一些用在美式英语而非英式英语中的例子。英式英语的表达写在方括号中。

Go two blocks down and the car rental office is **kitty-corner** to [informal: diagonally opposite] the **gas station** [petrol station].

You should always use the **crosswalk** to cross the street. [pedestrian crossing / zebra crossing]

There's a **trail** [path] that leads down to the **creek** [stream, small river].

Take a left [turn left] here and you'll come to the **Interstate** [major motorway in the US connecting different states] after about three miles.

After the **intersection,** look for a sign saying 'International Airport'. [road junction]

I hit a shopping **cart** [trolley] in the **parking lot** [car park] when I was **backing up** [reversing].

Look for the **overpass** [flyover, i.e. bridge that carries one road over another] and then take the next exit for downtown Chicago.

注意：在英式英语中，几号公路前面要使用 *the*，在美式英语中则不使用冠词。

英式英语：Take **the M4** as far as Newbury, then turn off on to **the A34** for Oxford.

美式英语：Take **I-45** north for about 20 miles, then take **25** west.

B 航空旅行

在英式英语和美式英语中，关于航空旅行的很多表达方式是不同的。以下是某些你可能在美国或英国的机场听到的广播。

美国	英国
Statewide Airlines announces the arrival of Flight 505 from Lisbon. Passengers will be **deplane momentarily**.	Monarch Airlines announces the arrival of Flight 606 from Phoenix. This flight will **disembarking shortly**.
Coach class passengers may now board.	**Economy** class passengers may now board.
Passengers are reminded that **carry-on** baggage is restricted to one item only.	Passengers are reminded that **hand** baggage is restricted to one item only.

C 家用物品

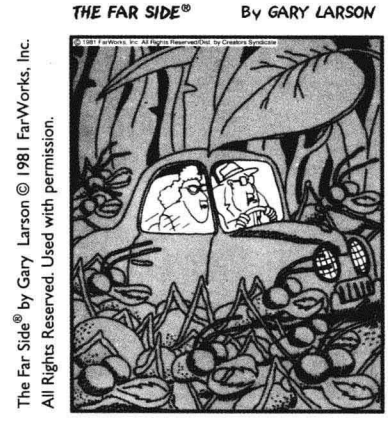
This cable is the **ground** (US)/**earth** (UK). [cable that takes electricity safely into the ground]

We need a **dumpster** (US)/**skip** (UK) to put all this old furniture in. [large metal container for putting rubbish in]

I left the **faucet** (US)/**tap** (UK) running and nearly flooded the kitchen.

I have to cook for five people, so we need a big **stove** (US)/**cooker** (UK). [piece of kitchen equipment to cook food]

I fried the fish in a **skillet** (US)/**frying pan** (UK).



"Something's wrong here, Harriet. ... This is starting to look less and less like Interstate 95."

练习

96.1 以下的话是英国人说的还是美国人说的？另一国的人会怎样说这句话？

1 I lost my way at the big intersection just south of the city.
2 Why are there always so many shopping trolleys left in the car park?
3 Cross the road at the pedestrian crossing, then turn left.
4 You can't drive any further; you'll have to back up, the street is very narrow.
5 You'll see the petrol station just after the flyover on the A56.
6 Once you get on to the Interstate, it will only take you two hours to get there.
7 The bookstore is kitty-corner to the Chinese restaurant.
8 There's a creek at the end of the trail. It's about three miles from here.

96.2 将左右两列同义词对应起来，并在单词后面的框中标出是美式英语（US），还是英式英语（UK）。

1 dumpster	☐	skillet	☐
2 ground	☐	skip	☐
3 frying pan	☐	stove	☐
4 cooker	☐	earth	☐

96.3 使用英式英语（UK）或美式英语（US）词汇填空。

1 Do you want to check in that bag or take it on board as .....? (UK)
2 Zodiac Airlines wishes to announce the arrival of Flight 347 from San Francisco. This flight will ..... momentarily. (US)
3 ..... class is always the cheapest way of flying. (US)

96.4 在英语中经常使用一个单独的形容词或副词来回应某人的话，而不是用 *yes* 或 *no*：

EXAMPLE

A: Here's that book I promised you.
B: Oh, **lovely**. Thanks.

A: Could you hold this for me?
B: **Sure**. No problem.

研究表明，谈话中某些简短的回答在英式英语和美式英语中出现的频率不同。表格中画"✓"的是在该语言中出现较多的词。

现在遮住这个表格，标出下列对话最可能出现在英式英语中，还是在美式英语中。

1 A: The plane arrives at 6.30.
B: Brilliant. I'll meet you at the exit.

2 A: I'm coming to town this weekend.
B: Wonderful! Let's eat together Friday.

3 A: Will you help us tomorrow?
B: Sure, no problem!

4 A: I'll pick you up at 8.30.
B: Fine.

5 A: I just got a new bike.
B: Cool!

US	*word*	*UK*
	lovely	✓
✓	sure	
	fine	✓
	brilliant	✓
✓	cool	
	marvellous	✓
✓	wonderful	

97 其他类英语：多元化与多样性

在英美两国以外，英语还在很多国家广泛应用。在本单元中，我们讨论某些你可能会遇到的其他种类的英语。

A 爱尔兰

在访问爱尔兰时你会见到或听到一些与英式英语不同的词汇和短语，其中很多来自爱尔兰的盖尔语。下面是一些例子。

词汇	释义
craic /kræk/	fun, enjoyment
guards or **gardai** /gɑːrˈdiː/	police
boreen /bɔːˈriːn/	narrow, quiet country lane
fleadh /flæː/	festival, usually of traditional music
Taoiseach /ˈtiːʃɒk/	Prime Minister

B 澳大利亚

许多人认为澳大利亚英语为英语词汇引入了一种闲适的非正式腔调。澳大利亚俚语有时被称为“strine”。以下是一些例子。

You'll have to forgive him; he's just an ignorant **ocker.** [person who is not well educated and does not behave in a polite way]

There was a young Australian in the shopping centre playing a **didgeridoo.** [/dɪdʒərɪˈduː/ ancient Australian wind instrument which produces long deep notes]

They live on a sheep **station** north of here. [large farm; also used in New Zealand]

'**Struth!** [gosh/wow] Look at that **bloke** [man] over there, **mate** [informal way of addressing a male]!'

Be careful of the **dingos** [kind of wild dog] when you're out in the **bush** [the natural, uncultivated land away from towns]. (*Bush* is also used in this way in African varieties of English.)

Travelling across the **outback** [the wild, uncultivated land, especially the desert] in **Oz** [slang name for Australia] can be dangerous, but there are some **beaut** [/bjuːt/ beautiful] places to see.

C 某些另外的种类

种类	例句	释义
Malaysian	We **shifted** a month ago. Here's my new address.	moved house
Canadian	The **washroom** is on the left.	public toilet
Hong Kong, China	We have to pay at the **shroff.**	car park payment office
Scottish	They have three **bairns.** /beənz/	children

练习

97.1 看下列新闻节选，判断它们是出自澳大利亚报纸还是爱尔兰报纸？

1

Will the 2002 Fleadh be held here?

The city and environs could be in for a multi-million pound boost next year.

2

OZ SNAPS UP $100m US GEAR

American sports clothing has become a mega-business of the decade

3

BEAUT BANGLES – Diamond fiesta

Drooling at diamonds is probably not a healthy pastime, unless you're a born money bags.

4

He pointed out that all three men had apologised to the Gardai on the day following the incident.

97.2 回答问题。

1 What is the name for a kind of wild dog found in Australia?
2 Who or what is the Taoiseach?
3 When an Australian talks about the outback, what are they referring to?
4 What is an Irish person referring to when they talk of 'the craic'?
5 Where would you find a boreen?
6 Where would you find a station without trains or buses?
7 What would you do with a didgeridoo?
8 Is an ocker a person or thing? Explain.

97.3 将左侧的词与右侧释义对应起来。试着猜测左页中未出现过的单词的含义。

1 shroff	Scottish word for 'small'
2 joker	Scottish word for a child
3 wee	Malaysian word for 'university'
4 varsity	Australian word for 'person'
5 bairn	Caribbean word for a godmother
6 washroom	Chinese Hong Kong word for a payment office at a car park
7 macommere	Irish word for 'idiot/fool'
8 eejit	South African word for flat, open countryside with few trees
9 veld	Canadian word for a public toilet

FOLLOW UP 如果可以，阅读由剑桥大学出版社出版的《剑桥英语百科全书》（*The Cambridge Encyclopedia of the English Language*, David Crystal 著）的第 7 章论“世界英语”部分（Chapter 7 on 'World English'），你可以在其中找到来自世界各地的英语示例。

98 语言与性别

A 词汇与性别意识的觉醒

许多词汇的变化是由女权主义运动引起的，它改变了某些英语词汇中性别歧视的意味。David Crystal 在《剑桥英语百科全书》中写道：

> Attention has been focused on the replacement of 'male' words with a generic meaning by neutral items – *chairman*, for example, becoming *chair* or *chairperson* (though not without controversy) or *salesman* becoming *sales assistant*. In certain cases, such as job descriptions, use of sexually neutral language has become a legal requirement. There is continuing debate between extremists and moderates as to how far such revisions should go – whether they should affect traditional idioms such as *man in the street*[1] and *Neanderthal Man*[2], or apply to parts of words where the male meaning of man is no longer dominant such as *manhandle*[3] and *woman*. The vocabulary of marital status has also been affected with the introduction of *Ms* as a neutral alternative to *Miss* or *Mrs*.

[1] a typical person (could be replaced by *person in the street*) [2] primitive people who lived in Europe and Asia 2.5 to 3 million years ago [3] handle roughly, using force

以下是一些改变了性别歧视意味的词汇：

旧的用法	目前用法
spokesman	spokesperson
fireman	firefighter
male nurse	nurse
to man	to staff
man-hours	working hours

旧的用法	目前用法
air hostess	flight attendant
cleaning lady	cleaner
foreman	supervisor
manpower	human resources
mankind	human race

B 与性别有关的词汇

词汇	释义	示例
male, female	used for gender classification in biology	**male** and **female** bees
masculine, feminine	having qualities felt to be typically male or female	**masculine** pride, **feminine** charm
manly, womanly	having positive qualities felt to be typically male or female	**manly** strength, **womanly** grace
virile	manly (usually used in a sexual context)	handsome and **virile** men
effeminate	resembling a woman (used of men, negative)	his **effeminate** walk
mannish	resembling a man (used of women, negative)	her **mannish** haircut
a tomboy	a young girl who behaves and dresses like a boy	She's a real **tomboy.**
a sissy	a boy who behaves like a girl, or a weak and cowardly person (informal, negative)	He's such a **sissy**!
butch	used of men and women, aggressively masculine in looks and behaviour (informal)	**butch** stars of cowboy films

练习

98.1 回答以下关于本单元文章的问题。

1 Why do you think there have been attempts to introduce non-sexist language of the kind described by David Crystal?
2 How would you explain this expression: male words with a generic meaning?
3 Why do you think there might have been controversy about attempts to change the word *chairman*?
4 What do more extreme advocates of making English sexually neutral want to do that is unacceptable to the moderates?
5 Why was *Ms* introduced and why is it useful?

98.2 现在的出版编辑可能会修改以下句子。他们会怎样修改？

1 Three firemen helped put out a fire at a disused warehouse last night.
2 A spokesman for the Department of Education provided us with a statement.
3 Cleaning lady wanted for house in Priory Street.
4 The switchboard is continuously manned even during holiday periods.
5 All our air hostesses are fluent in at least three languages.
6 Miss Jones is in charge of the Manpower Department of the company.
7 Policemen today spend more time in cars than on the beat.
8 Brenda's husband is a male nurse.
9 It took a great many man-hours to clean up the stadium after the concert.
10 This was a great step for mankind.
11 The man in the street has little time for such issues.
12 They manhandled the hostage into the van.

98.3 圈出划线部分中合适的词完成句子。

1 That suit makes her look rather mannish/manly.
2 Go on, jump. Don't be such a tomboy/sissy!
3 Younger men are said to be more male/virile than older ones.
4 She always dresses in a very feminine/effeminate way. You never see her in trousers.
5 The masculine/male cat is less aggressive than his sister.

98.4 回答问题。

1 Does your language ever use male words generically?
2 If so, have there been attempts to change them to avoid sexual stereotyping?
3 Do you think that using sex-biased words does affect people's attitudes to men and women's roles in society?
4 How do you feel about imposing language changes of the different kinds that David Crystal describes?
5 Do terms of address (i.e. Mr, Mrs, etc.) in your language indicate whether people are married?
6 Do you think it is better if terms of address indicate marital status or not? Why?
7 A grammatical problem in this area is the use of *he/his* to refer to a person of either sex. In the sentence 'A government minister may have to neglect his family.' the minister could be a man or a woman. However the use of 'his' assumes, perhaps wrongly, that it is a man. How could you rewrite this sentence to avoid this problem?

99 语言体现的年龄特征与社会阶层

A 在英语中，某些表达方式会体现出说话者的特色，表现出他们属于哪个年龄群体和社会阶层。通过说话，经常可以判断出这个人是 **posh** (upper class, negative)，还是 **common** (lower class, negative)。以下是一些非赞许性的词汇，用来表示人物的不同阶层。

表达式	指代	说明
a pleb	lower-class person	adjectives **plebby** (informal) and **plebeian** (formal)
an oik	lower-class man	implies bad behaviour
riff-raff	lower social class	implies lack of culture
hoi polloi	ordinary people	excludes the rich or the educated
the chattering classes	well-educated middle-class people	implies readiness to express an opinion on any subject
bourgeois	middle class	implies someone who is narrow-minded and materialistic (can also be used more objectively in a historical context)
the upper crust	upper class	people with money and influence
stuck-up / snooty	behaving in a snobbish way to lower-class people	implies someone who thinks that he or she is better than other people
new money	people who have recently become rich	implies spending money in a showy way
a toff	rich upper-class person	usually used humorously

B 人们常常会继续使用他们年轻时曾流行的语言。

Cool! 和 **Wicked!** 是目前表示赞同的说法，而在 19 世纪 40 年代人们会说 **Spiffing!** 类似地，人们用以创造新说法的词汇会显示出他们的年代，因为上一代人会继续使用他们年轻时的日常词汇，而时代却已经改变了。因此，一些上了年纪的人会把 *car* 称作 **motor (car),** 把 *radio* 称作 **wireless,** 把 *trousers* 称作 **slacks**。

总体来说，年纪大一些的人，特别是来自上层阶层的人会常用 **one** 来做人称代词，而实际表示的意思都是 "I"：

One doesn't always agree with what she has to say.

C 社会阶层对词汇的选择使用有时可能会出人意料，因为某些词汇是属于上层社会还是平民阶层只取决于个人的观点，并没有什么特别的原因。

例如，**luncheon** 是上流阶层对 *lunch* 的说法。**toilet** 被认为是较低阶层对 *lavatory/loo* 的说法。称呼双亲为 *Mother* 和 *Father* 而不是 *Mum* 或 *Dad* 也能显示出说话人可能来自较高阶层。这些差别可能不再像以前那样明显了，但你可能会在文学作品中遇到，作者可以用它来表明人物的社会背景。

练习

99.1 选择最适当的词或表达式填空。

bourgeois	chattering classes	oik	common
new money	riff-raff	upper crust	stuck-up

1 They're probably called the _____ because they like to spend hours sitting at a pine dinner table over their fettucine discussing the latest book or exhibition.
2 Pink Rolls Royces are much more likely to be owned by _____ than the old aristocracy.
3 I don't know why they allow such _____ in a lovely classy restaurant like this.
4 Although her dad's a duke, she's not at all _____.
5 Karl was glad to have escaped the _____ attitudes of the small town he had grown up in and to be living in the much more liberal atmosphere of a city.
6 Her parents sent her to a private school mainly because they did not want her to grow up talking in a way that they considered _____.
7 The expression _____ derives from the fact that the most important people in the medieval dining hall were given the best or top part of a loaf of bread.
8 Maria's parents, Lord and Lady De Vere, are very upset that she wants to marry someone whom they consider to be an ignorant _____.

99.2 下列句子中的用语显示了说话人的何种情况?

1 The whole family used to gather together and listen to the wireless every Sunday evening.
2 We all still dress for dinner even when no one is expected. One has to do one's best to keep up standards.
3 Old Jack has bought a spiffing new motor.
4 Your new mobile is wicked – I'll text you from uni this afternoon.
5 We wasn't doing nothing, was we, Tracey?

99.3 P. G. Wodehouse 所著的系列喜剧小说讲述了一个叫做 Bertie Wooster 的纨绔子弟的故事，其中大量使用了所谓上层阶级的旧式英语。下列语句是小说中的典型用法，其中划线词汇都是什么意思?

1 Don't be such a chump! Aunt Angela won't bite you!
2 You must help me, old sport. I'm in an awful fix.
3 I'm short of money now but I'm hoping an old uncle, who's rolling in stuff, will kick the beam soon and leave me his fortune.

FOLLOW UP

阅读 Bernard Shaw 的剧作《窈窕淑女》(*Pygmalion*)，该剧是以语言谈吐决定社会阶层的现象为创作基础的。在剧中，一位教授试图改善一位来自社会底层的穷姑娘的英语谈吐，以至人们认为她是一位来自上层社会的贵族。你可以在 www.bartleby.com/138 找到这个剧本。

100 报纸标题用语

A 报纸标题的特色

下列标题是选自通俗小报（**tabloid newspaper** [popular papers with smaller pages than more serious papers]）的典型例子，及其在语言运用方面的评论。

EXPERT REVEALS NEW MOBILE DANGERS

- 冠词、介词和助动词常在标题中被省略；
- 标题中采用一般现在时而非过去时会使报道显得更具实效性；
- 标题用语的含义往往是模糊的。比如，在这里 *mobile* 意味着什么并不十分明确。它实际上指使用 mobile phone 的危险，但也有可能意味着某种移动过程中的危险。读者要看完报道才能知道它的确切含义；
- 像 *danger* 种吸引人眼球的词经常在标题中使用。

TV STAR TRAGIC TARGET FOR MYSTERY GUNMAN

这是一篇某著名电视演员遭遇一个不知名杀手枪击的报道。

- 通俗小报喜欢用王室成员、电影 / 时尚明星，或体育界人士来吸引读者的注意；
- 像 TV Star Tragic Target 这种首字母押韵的用法经常出现在标题中以吸引眼球，使人过目不忘；
- 报纸倾向于使用像 *gunman* 这种简单而有力的词，来尽可能展示一个生动简洁的形象。

B 激烈的措词

激烈的措词或军事化词汇常用在报纸标题中，尤其是通俗小报，这样会使报道看起来更加戏剧化。

EU acts to **crush terror** of the **thugs**
Crackdown on soccer **louts**
Palace **besieged** by journalists
Typhoon **rips** through town

C 文字游戏

许多英文报纸标题采用文字游戏的娱乐方式来吸引读者的注意。例如，一篇报道交通指示牌被盗的新闻标题为 **Dark deeds**，这个标牌是为参观者指示日食观测地点的。在这个搭配中，*dark* 是 *wicked* 的意思，但标题聪明地用 *dark* 玩了一个文字游戏，因为日食的时候，天空是“黑暗的”。

另外一个例子是标题 **Ruffled feathers**，它描述的事件是一位妻子对她的丈夫大发雷霆，因为她的丈夫是一位野生动物学家，把一只俄罗斯草原雕收留在了卧室里。成语 **to smooth someone's ruffled feathers** 指的是在一番大吵大闹之后安慰某人。该报道与一只鸟有关，用在这里最恰当不过了（尽管在这里需要的是 smooth the wife's ruffled feathers）。

TIP 英文报纸 *The Guardian* 特别爱在标题中使用文字游戏。看你是否能在其官方网站 www.guardian.co.uk 上找到一些例子。

练习

100.1 阅读这些标题。你认为它们可能是关于什么的报道？

1 **MOSCOW BLAST TERROR**
2 PM TO REVEAL SOCCER LOUT PLANS
3 **TOP MP IN LONE BATTLE**
4 *CRACKDOWN ON PORN*
5 **THUGS BESIEGE TEEN STAR**
6 COPS TARGET LOUTS

100.2 假设下列标题都是通俗小报上关于古希腊的报道的。将它们与下面报道的主题对应起来，并评述这些标题用语的特点。

1 **NUDE SCIENTIST IN BATHTUB SENSATION**
2 **KING PHIL'S MACEDONIAN MASH-UP**
3 ***MARATHON MAN IN DROP-DEAD DASH***
4 QUADRUPLE ROYAL MURDER SENSATION
5 **IT'S CURTAINS FOR CORINTH**

a) Mysterious death of four members of the royal family.
b) Philip of Macedonia wins battle against city states of Athens and Thebes.
c) Archimedes' discovery of the laws governing the displacement of water.
d) Burning of city of Corinth to ground by the Romans.
e) Long-distance runner brings news of battle victory to Athens and then dies.

100.3 将标题和新闻内容对应起来，并解释其中的文字游戏。

1 ***Bad blood***
2 **Happy days?**
3 **Shell-shocked**
4 **False impressions**
5 **Happy haunting**
6 Hopping mad
7 Flushed
8 Highly embarrassed
9 Round-up

a) A grandfather's breathing problems were solved when doctors found four false teeth at the entrance to his lungs. They had been forced down his windpipe in a car crash eight years ago.
b) A 25-year-old terrapin is being treated for a fractured shell after surviving a 200ft drop.
c) A Shetland teacher has suggested labradors or golden retrievers could be used to control pupils in playgrounds.
d) A ghost society has been told not to scare off a friendly female apparition at a hotel.
e) Adults who have never quite grown up are to be offered school theme nights including uniforms, register, assembly and primary school dinners by a Nottingham hotel.
f) An ex-public loo in Hackney, East London, is to be sold for £76,000.
g) A Whitby curate has attacked the resort's attempts to profit on its connections with Dracula: 'a pale-faced man with a bad sense of fashion, severe dental problems and an eating disorder.'
h) A toad triggered a police alert when it set off a new hi-tech alarm system.
i) Firemen had to scale a 30-foot tree in St Leonard's, East Sussex, to rescue a man who was trying to capture his pet iguana.

答案

Unit ii

ii.1
1 signify
2 written record
3 punishment given by a judge
4 small in amount
5 pretending to have
6 mark above a letter to show how you pronounce it
7 part which you say loudest
8 issues

ii.2

1 famished	3 worn out	5 pouring	7 appropriate
2 brilliant	4 gorgeous	6 excruciating	8 annoying

ii.3

1 to contemplate your future	7 to pay a compliment
2 to dismiss a worker	8 to plead innocence
3 to do some gardening	9 to set an example
4 to dribble a ball	10 to shuffle cards
5 to have a good time	11 to waste an opportunity
6 to make a mistake	12 to wind a rope

ii.4
1 A horseshoe, a mascot and a black cat are lucky in British English (though black cats are unlucky in the US) and the number 13 is unlucky.
2 It is associated with Christmas because it is used as a decoration at that time of year and with kissing because tradition says you can kiss anyone who is standing under the mistletoe.
3 The standard meanings are:
loaf = large piece of bread before it is cut into slices
bread = food made from flour and water
nick = cut slightly
kid = young goat
wicked = evil, morally bad

The informal meanings are:
loaf = head [This is an example of Cockney rhyming slang, which is spoken in some parts of London: Use your loaf (of bread) = Use your head!]
bread = money
nick = prison, steal
kid = child
wicked = wonderful
4 a) language appropriate to a particular situation, e.g. formal, informal, academic, etc.
b) record of the absences of pupils
c) all the notes a musical instrument or a person's voice can produce

Unit iii

iii.1 *Dissimilar* is normally used in the negative; for example:
These yellow flowers are **not dissimilar** to the ones I have in my garden.

iii.2 *For* and *to* are the normal prepositions; for example:
He will be **liable for** the cost of repairs to the car since the accident was his fault. [legally responsible for]

You will be **liable to** a fine of £200 if you send your tax declaration in late. [subject to / obliged to pay]

iii.3 *Aught* is an old-fashioned or regional dialect word meaning 'anything'; e.g. Is there **aught** you want?

iii.4 The two verbs may sometimes mean the same, i.e. 'to make up for not doing something because you did not have enough time'.
I must **catch up on** some sleep this weekend. I've stayed up late studying every night this week.
I'm trying to **catch up with** my work. I've missed two classes because I had a cold.

Catch up with also means 'to discover that someone has done something wrong and punish them'.
He committed a number of small crimes years ago, but the police **never caught up with** him.

Catch up with also means 'to meet someone you have not seen for some time'.
I'm hoping to catch up with Freda when I'm in Toronto next week. I have an address for her there. I haven't seen her for about three years.

Unit iv

iv.1
1 real
2 real
3 real/genuine
4 genuine
5 genuine

iv.2
1 c
2 d
3 a
4 b
5 c

iv.3
1 brisk, sharpen
2 toll
3 leisurely
4 perfectly
5 bequeathed
6 rightly
7 visit
8 spoilt

iv.4
1 a powerful car
2 strong tea
3 auburn hair
4 doleful expression
5 lengthy meeting

Unit v

A The word that would fill the gaps in all three sentences is **match.**

D a) an instrument a dentist uses to make holes in your teeth
b) training for marching
c) a pneumatic tool used for making holes in a road

Unit vi

vi.1 a) in the saddle = in charge; idiom taken from horse riding
b) moving the goalposts = changing the rules; idiom from football
c) a half-baked idea = an idea that is not fully thought through; idiom from cookery
d) to tighten our belts = to reduce our spending; idiom from dressing

vi.2 a) All the world's a stage and all the men and women merely players.
The lines suggest that life is like a theatre and that possibly the roles are written in advance, with people being like actors in that they all have different parts to play. (From *As You Like It*)
b) Night's candles are burnt out; and jocund day stands tiptoe on the misty mountain tops.
The lines say that night has finished and day is about to break. 'Night's candles' conjures up an image of the stars because now that dawn has come the stars are no longer visible and so they can be said to have burnt out. Day standing tiptoe suggests that day is poised ready to start a race down the mountain tops. It also implies the quietness of early morning because we tiptoe when we want to be quiet and not wake someone who is sleeping. (From *Romeo and Juliet*)
c) There is a tide in the affairs of men, which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.
The lines suggest that our lives have tides like the sea and we must take advantage of lucky opportunities, metaphorical flood tides, in order to be transported to good times. (From *Julius Caesar*)

vi.3 a) This book throws a great deal of fresh light on the history of the period.
This books tells us a great deal that is new about the history .... .
From the concept of intelligence as light.
b) We could save half an hour at least if we went through the wood.
We could gain half an hour .... . From the concept of time as money.
c) Try to keep cool even if he argues with you.
Try to keep calm .... . From the concept of intense feeling as heat.
d) She spent all her life fighting to get her company recognised.
(Two metaphors) She devoted all her life to trying hard to get her company recognised.
From the concepts of time as money and business as a military operation.
e) Police tried to control the flow of the fans as they left the concert.
Police tried to control the movement of the fans .... . From the concept of movement of people as water.

Unit vii

vii.1 1 She works in a shop that sells ladies' clothing. (Ladies' garments might be an even more formal equivalent.)
2 I've got some new specs. Do you like them?
3 Did you see that documentary about Wales on telly / on the box last night?
4 Have you met Lily's new bloke? ('Lily's new man' is also possible.)
5 I spent the morning conversing with the Director.
6 Molly was there with her husband. He's a nice man.

vii.2

neutral	*formal*	*informal*
children	offspring	kids
sunglasses		shades
policeman/woman	police officer	cop (*or* bobby)
umbrella		brolly
meal	repast	
make sure	ensure (*or* guarantee)	

vii.3 **In a database totalling ten million words of everyday spoken and written English texts, the words in the list occurred approximately in the ratios given in the second column (for example, *begin* is five times more frequent in written English than in spoken).**

word		*ratio spoken: written*
frequently	W	1 : 11
start	S	2 : 1
begin	W	1 : 5
maybe	S	5 : 1
moreover	W	1 : 60

vii.4
1 pharmacist/chemist
2 girl/young unmarried woman
3 poetry or poem
4 to where / where to

vii.5
1 This computer text could be called written, modern, technical. Terms such as *.pst file*, *shared directory* and *file server* are technical. The style is typically written, especially with the use of passive voice verbs and the word *located*; in non-technical spoken language we would probably just say 'one that is on a file server'.
2 This is typical modern, written academic text. Key written items are *above*, and the citation of other researchers' works. The adjectives *ornery* and *splenetic* (which mean angry/argumentative and bad-tempered/irritable) are very rare outside of academic and literary registers. Other typical academic words are *paradigm* (which means a dominant set of beliefs or methods in an academic field) and the initials *SLA*, which mean *Second Language Acquisition*.
3 This is rather archaic poetry (by the English poet John Donne, 1572–1631). *Thee* is an archaic form of singular *you*; *'tis* is an archaic form of *it is*; *in jest* is rather formal and/or literary and means 'as a joke / not serious'. Other rather formal or literary words are *weariness* and *feigned* (pretended).
4 This is formal spoken language. It is from a speech by US President John F. Kennedy (1917–1963). Key items are the formal *ask not* instead of 'don't ask', *my fellow*, and *the freedom of man* instead of human freedom or freedom for everyone. Formal speeches and lectures are often very close to formal written texts, and this text could possibly also have been a written text (e.g. a political pamphlet or electioneering literature).
5 This is informal, modern conversation. Key items are *mind you* (rare in written language), *telly* instead of television, *cos* instead of *because*, and *yeah* instead of yes. The text is quite fragmented too (*The Rhine. Yeah. The river in Bonn*). Written registers tend to be more integrated (e.g. *The River Rhine in Bonn*).

Unit viii

B **These are the connotations which these words have for most English speakers:**

shark — a dishonest person, someone who persuades other people to pay too much money for something
scar — something ugly which spoils, for example, a landscape
diamond — typical stone in engagement ring; referring to a period of 60 years, e.g. diamond wedding, diamond anniversary; diamonds is one of the red suits in playing cards

D **In English the colours have the following connotations:**

1 blue	miserable
2 green	inexperienced
3 yellow	a coward
4 red	danger
5 white	purity
6 black	evil

Note that these are not the only connotations which these colours have. Blue, green and red, for instance, can also be used to refer to different political parties.

Unit 1

1.1 1 AD 2 i.e. 3 NB 4 e.g.

1.2 1 Alcoholics Anonymous, pronounced as letters
2 pages, pronounced as the word in full
3 miles per hour, usually pronounced as the words in full
4 before Christ, pronounced as letters
5 unidentified flying objects, pronounced either as the words in full, or as an acronym or as letters
6 as soon as possible, pronounced as letters

1.3 1 World Health Organisation
2 United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
3 International Monetary Fund
4 Order of the British Empire (honour awarded by the monarch for services in any area of life)
5 Greenwich Mean Time (standard time in the UK as measured at the Greenwich Observatory)
6 International Olympic Committee
7 Royal Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals
8 Eastern Standard Time (standard time on the east coast of the USA)

1.4 See you for tea at three, is that all right with you? By the way K's going to be here too.

1.5 *Possible answer:*

3rd girl wanted for s/c f/f flat. Suit n/s prof. C/h. All mod cons / £220 pcm excl.

1.7

1	DUMP	Disposal of Unused Medicines and Pills
2	NOW	National Organisation of Women
3	UNITE	Union of National Income Tax Employees
4	CALL	Computer Assisted Language Learning
5	AAAAA	American Association for the Abolition of Abbreviations and Acronyms

Unit 2

2.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c

2.2 1 The hotel upgraded me to a luxury room (instead of the ordinary one I'd booked).
2 Would you like to stay there overnight or come back the same day?
3 The underlying problem is a very serious one.
4 Cross-cultural misunderstandings are, sadly, very frequent.
5 I think this hotel is overpriced.

6 It's slippery underfoot just here. Be careful.
7 The company experienced an upturn in popularity since it changed its name.
8 I felt that what she said undermined my position.
9 It would be a mistake to underestimate how intelligent Frances is / to underestimate Frances's intelligence.

2.3

1	locate	YES	allocate
2	verse	YES	adverse
3	state	NO	
4	mission	YES	admission
5	pertain	YES	appertain
6	minister	YES	administer
7	drain	NO	

2.4 *Possible answers:*

1 There were several advertisements **promoting** the new range of products.
She was **promoted** to Senior Manager after two years in the job.
2 Mobile phones have **proliferated** in recent years. Now almost everybody has one.
3 I hate people who **procrastinate.** I always try to tackle problems when they arise, and not put them off till tomorrow.
4 Many religious people believe that the only purpose of sexual relations is **procreation.** [having children]

2.5

1 **Ab-** in these words has the idea of something going or being taken away from something.
A king or queen may **abdicate** [give up the throne], a prisoner may **abscond** [run away from prison], and a criminal may **abduct** someone [kidnap them, persuade them to go with them].
2 **A-** here is something like the *-ing* form with verbs. So if something is **ablaze,** it is blazing [burning vigorously]. If a boat is **afloat** it is floating on the water, if it is **adrift** it is drifting out of control.
3 **Extra-** means 'outside of'. Thus **extraterrestrial** means from beyond earth, e.g. from another planet, 'an extraterrestrial being', **extraneous** details are details which are not relevant or outside of the important ones, and **extracurricular** activities are activities outside of the school curriculum, e.g. optional sports during lunchtime, after-school clubs.
4 **Inter-** often means connected or linked one with the other. **Interrelated** refers to a connection between separate things. **Interdepartmental** means 'between different departments'. The **Internet** is a system that connects computers around the world.
5 **Intra-** means within something. **Intravenous** means in the veins. **Intradepartmental** means 'within the department'. **Intranet** is a computer network that operates only within one organisation.

Unit 3

3.1

suffix	*possible examples*
-able	a debatable issue, an uncontrollable child
-conscious	cost-conscious management, money-conscious parents
-free	car-free city centre, sugar-free drinks
-rich	energy-rich drink, information-rich society
-led	French-led fashion, military-led coup
-minded	broad-minded person, sports-minded friends
-proof	bullet-proof car, a fireproof screen
-related	smoking-related illnesses, drugs-related crime
-ridden	flu-ridden office, poverty-ridden society
-worthy	noteworthy pictures, creditworthy person – note that this means someone to whom a bank is prepared to give credit [a financial loan]

3.2 **Here are some of the most likely adjective + noun combinations. You may find others that also work.**

1 additive-free foods, drinks
2 avoidable delay, mistake
3 disposable knives and forks, income
4 guilt-ridden expression, criminal
5 high-minded speech, principles
6 newsworthy story, personality
7 oil-rich economy, country
8 ovenproof glove, dish
9 soundproof room, booth
10 stress-related illness, problems

3.3 *Suggested answers:*

age-conscious, age-related
dust-free, dustproof, dust-related
Byronesque
sugar-free, sugar-rich, sugar-related
workable, work-conscious, work-free, work-rich, work-led, work-minded, work-related

3.4

1 Poisonous mushrooms are easily identifiable.
2 He is so career-minded that he has no time for his family.
3 The new phone boxes are supposed to be vandal-proof.
4 During the Civil War, the country was terror-ridden.
5 The soil on that farm is nutrient-rich.
6 The bank decided that he was not creditworthy.

3.5

1 This depends on who is the current President of the USA. Adjectives relating to past Presidents include Lincolnesque, Kennedyesque, Clintonesque.
2 meat-free
3 class-related
4 vitamin-rich
5 dry-cleanable
6 clothes-conscious
7 government-led

3.6

1 verb
2 adjective
3 adverb
4 adjective
5 verb
6 adjective
7 adverb and adjective
8 verb

Unit 4

4.1
1 a message written and sent from a distance
2 sound carried from a distance
3 something written by yourself about your own life
4 study of sound
5 to go backwards
6 study of writing
7 to make something unstable
8 something written to represent yourself

4.2 *Possible answers:*
telegraph technological bio-technology phonologist telephony retrogressive

4.4
1 She asked the star for his **autograph** on the back of her table napkin.
2 She took a degree in **criminology** at Stockholm University.
3 The novel is largely **autobiographical**.
4 It's **a retrospective exhibition** of the painter's life and work.
5 He believes **in auto-suggestion**.
6 **Teleworking** is becoming increasingly common.
7 Some areas are now deliberately trying to **de-industrialise**.
8 **Cybercrime** is a growing cause for concern.

4.5 *Possible answers:*
1 The firm makes job applicants do a test that analyses their handwriting for what it reveals about their personality.
2 Johnny loves his electronic toy that behaves like a pet.
3 Matt's brilliant at technical things.
4 He's giving a paper at a special event taking place just before a conference in Spain.
5 Is it OK if I write a date on this cheque that is later than today's date?

4.6
1 information + commercial, i.e. a television advert that gives information instead of selling something (e.g. explaining new social welfare regulations)
2 education + entertainment, e.g. a CD-ROM that is intended to teach children by using games
3 cyberspace + library, i.e. a collection of texts often literary or educational that can be accessed via the Internet
4 vegetable + hamburger, i.e. a vegetarian hamburger
5 swimming + marathon, i.e. an event in which people attempt to swim a very long distance (probably done in order to raise money for charity)
6 fun + fantastic, i.e. fantastically good fun (this would be most likely to be seen in an advert trying to attract people to some leisure event or holiday)

Unit 5

5.1 *Possible answers:*
1 source of worry, confusion, inspiration
2 enrich your life, experience, vocabulary
3 classical music, drama, studies
4 linguistic errors, study, puzzle

5.2 1 hammock 2 turban 3 tabby 4 cot

5.3 1 hara-kiri 2 mumps 3 amber 4 tonic 5 roster 6 gimmick

5.4 *Here are some possible answers for speakers of Spanish:*

- food and drink – paella, tapas, rioja
- flora, fauna and landscape features – mosquito, cork, banana
- industrial products and inventions – lasso, fumidor
- clothing and the home – sombrero, mantilla, hammock
- politics and society – junta, guerilla, embargo, mañana, macho
- the arts, sports and leisure activities – flamenco, guitar, toreador

5.5 If possible compare your answers with those of other speakers of your language.

5.6 Notice that these words may not all have originated in English. *Pudding* originates from an old French word, for instance, but it seems to have moved into some other languages from English rather than going directly from French.

Unit 6

6.1

1 interfere
2 stationary [stopped, not moving]
3 compliment
4 avoid
5 sign
6 intervened
7 complemented [added to, made even better]
8 stationery [paper, envelopes, labels, etc.]
9 continually
10 evading [avoiding doing something in an illegal or improper way]
11 signal [a signal usually tells you to react in some way, or that something is happening]
12 continuously

6.2

1 upended
2 outrun [run faster than]
3 outdo
4 upheld
5 outlasted [lasted longer than]
6 ended up
7 outstay [stay longer than you should]
8 run out [are finished/exhausted]

6.3

1 rehearse an end-of-term play
2 revise for an exam
3 change the batteries in the clock
4 alter a garment that's too big
5 pick up a friend at the airport
6 pick flowers in the garden
7 rouse someone who's sleeping
8 arouse someone's suspicions

6.4

1 an outbreak, e.g. There has been an outbreak of violence. [sudden occurrence of]
2 an upset, e.g. I had a stomach upset and couldn't go to work. [sick stomach]
3 an outlook, e.g. He has a very cheerful and positive outlook (on life). [attitude to life and the world]
4 a setup, e.g. His car hadn't been stolen at all. It was all just a setup. [someone had made it look like the car had been stolen]
5 a lookout, e.g. Thieves or robbers often have one person as a lookout, watching for police, etc.
6 a breakout, e.g. There were three breakouts from this prison last year.

Unit 7

7.1 I think I have a good **working relationship** with most of my colleagues. I tried to establish a good **rapport** with them from the very beginning. The person I like most is my **opposite number** in our office in Paris. Generally, when I socialise **with** my colleagues outside of work, we try not to **talk shop**, but it's not easy and sometimes we have a good gossip about people who are not there.

7.2 *Possible answers:*

1 **assembly-line worker** This is a worker who stands at a moving mechanical belt and repeats the same job or process, so it could be called tedious, monotonous, repetitive, mind-numbing [deadens your mind], soul-destroying [destroys your spirit and ambitions and dreams].
2 **shop steward** This is a trade union officer who negotiates with management on behalf of the union members, so it could be called demanding, stressful, hectic, intensive, sensitive, thankless [nobody is ever really grateful to you].
3 **PR officer** A Public Relations Officer gives statements to the press and information to the public in general. This job could be called varied, unpredictable, glamorous [the PR officer might appear on radio and TV], demanding, stressful, never-ending.
4 **bodyguard** This is a job where someone protects a person whose life may be in danger. It is definitely a (potentially) dangerous, stressful, intense, demanding job, for highly-trained people, but it could also be glamorous, exciting and exhilarating.
5 **lifeguard** This is a job where someone saves people who get into difficulties in swimming pools and/or in the sea, and generally watches over their safety, so it could be called rewarding, indispensable, (potentially) dangerous, stressful, demanding, but sometimes monotonous.
6 **trawlerman** This job on a large fishing boat is dangerous, unenviable, essential, stressful, physically demanding, unpredictable.
7 **private eye** A private eye is a private detective, so this job could be called glamorous, exciting, dangerous, fascinating, but for some people it is contemptible [they hate or despise private eyes].
8 **refuse collector** This is a person who collects the rubbish from people's houses, generally a monotonous, unglamorous, unenviable, low-paid, dirty, unpleasant, but essential job.

7.3

1 -to-five job	5 flexi-time	9 self-employed
2 clock in and out	6 a rut	10 end job
3 workload	7 shift work	11 off
4 behind a desk	8 freelance	12 antisocial

7.4 *Possible answers:*

1 a station porter, a labourer [person who does unskilled physical work] on a building site
2 a social worker, an aid worker [person who works for an organisation giving humanitarian aid to people in need]
3 a travelling salesperson, a courier
4 a doctor, a film cameraman
5 a post office worker, a supermarket check-out assistant
6 a journalist, a news reporter
7 a secretary, a clerk

Unit 8

8.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 Do you often look at the job advertisements?
2 I have no sales experience.
3 Selling computers is very lucrative. I made £70,000 last year.
4 We sell quite a diverse range of products.
5 I thought I would apply for the job since I fitted the description.

8.2

1 a very **close-knit** team
2 a very **rewarding** job
3 to have **(a lot of) drive** / to be **an achiever**
4 a rather **dynamic and fast-moving** profession
5 a salary **increment**

8.3

1 A career suggests a progression over time, with promotion and a structure that enables people to move around and up.
2 Unclear situations, which might demand (difficult) decisions.
3 Self-reliance.
4 Resourcefulness.
5 You need a tough mind.
6 The job advertisement is for a youth adventure leader. This is a person who takes young people on challenging outdoor trips and expeditions such as mountain-climbing, canoeing, sailing, etc.

8.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 –
2 +
3 – It means to have far too much work to do.
4 – It means to be given a lower position.
5 – It means to not get the promotion you expected or deserved.
6 – It means to be refused/rejected.
7 + To be short-listed for a job means you are one of perhaps five or six people from all the applicants who are being seriously considered.
8 + To be a high-flyer means to be someone who is rising fast in the job, and will probably be promoted frequently.

8.5

1 I started studying French at university, but I didn't finish my *course* and left after one year. ('Career' is not normally used to refer to university studies; it usually means a job or a profession.)
2 My boss *raised* my salary *by* £2,000 a year. I was delighted. (Don't confuse *rise* (intransitive) with *raise something* (transitive). Verbs of increase and decrease are normally followed by *by* + *quantity/number*, e.g. The temperature rose by 10 degrees.)
3 I'm *overworked and underpaid*, like everybody! And I'm always stressed *out*. ('Overworked and underpaid' is a binomial expression; normally these cannot be reversed: for example, we say 'a black and white film' in English, never 'a white and black film'.)
4 My holiday *entitlement* is four weeks a year.
5 He got *paternity* leave when his wife had a baby.

8.6 *Possible answers:*

1 You could get a job in a 'dot-com' company (an Internet-based company), where profits can be very high, or else perhaps in the financial sector, or in a highly paid profession such as the law or dentistry.

2 You could try to get a job in a band or orchestra, but it will be tough. Maybe teaching music would be a better option.
3 You could get a job in the computer industry, perhaps setting up systems in companies, or perhaps approach a big international computer company and sell yourself very hard to them.
4 First talk to your superiors, if you have a good rapport with them. If not, look around for another job, but don't give up the one you have (yet).

Unit 9

9.1
1 loss leader
2 capital assets
3 confusion marketing
4 first refusal
5 hard sell
6 inertia selling
7 brand loyalty
8 niche market
9 red tape

9.2 1 under 2 around 3 first 4 cold 5 on 6 bid 7 phone 8 niche

9.3
1 hammer out a deal
2 red tape
3 merging
4 lucrative
5 entrepreneurship
6 swallowed up

9.4 *Possible answers:*
1 cold-calling, hard sell, inertia selling, confusion marketing, red tape, swallowed up
2 buildings, machinery, computers
3 on approval, bidding, first refusal, shop around, brand loyalty
4 loss leader, niche market, telesales, cold-calling, inertia selling, confusion marketing
5 **Red tape** is used to refer to bureaucracy. The metaphor is based on the red ribbon that used to be used to tie up sets of documents and it is appropriate because it relates to documents in large quantities.
Swallowed up is used to refer to a smaller company being taken over by a larger one. It is based on the idea of a larger creature eating a smaller one and is appropriate in that when something is eaten it becomes part of the bigger whole.
Come under the hammer is used to refer to something being sold at auction and it is appropriate in that a hammer is used by the auctioneer when he is announcing that he has taken the final bid. He traditionally uses the words 'going, going, gone' and then hits with his hammer to announce the sale.
Hammer out an agreement is again a metaphor based on hammering. This time the image is one of hammering out a piece of metal to make it flat and acceptable in a way that clearly has associations with getting rid of problems that may stand in the way of an agreement.

Unit 10

10.1
1 Do you have many outstanding accounts?
2 When does your contract expire?
3 Please acknowledge receipt of our payment.
4 It is very important that you meet the deadline.
5 We would like to invite companies to submit tenders for the job.
6 It is company policy to take legal action against customers who default on payment.

10.2 1 project 2 flaw 3 Resources 4 morale 5 lack 6 employee

10.3
1 J.K. Galbraith
2 Mahatma Gandhi
3 Charles, Prince of Wales
4 John D. Rockefeller
5 Theodore Roosevelt

10.4
1 a chief executive
2 a personal gesture
3 a square deal
4 the survival of the fittest
5 an award for achievement
6 to turn your hand to
7 the human factor
8 to amass a fortune
9 to conduct business

10.5
1 chief executive
2 amass a fortune
3 turn his hand to
4 a square deal
5 the human factor
6 to conduct business
7 an award for achievement
8 personal gesture

Unit 11

11.1
1 His PhD **thesis** ...
2 Little Martha did her first **composition** ...
3 We have to hand in a **portfolio** ...
4 The teacher gave us the title of this week's **essay** ...
5 At the end of this course you have to do a 5,000-word **assignment** ...
6 I think I'll do a study of people's personal banking habits for my MSc **dissertation** ...
7 I've chosen to do the **project** ...

11.2 When I'm **cramming** for an exam, I don't see any point in looking up **past papers**, nor is there any point in just learning things **(off) by heart**. I know some people develop very clever **mnemonics** to help them remember the material, but there's no real substitute for **revising** the term's work. It's a good idea to have some sort of **mind-map**, and **rote-learning** is useful, but in a limited way. At the end of the day, you just have to **bury yourself in your books** until you feel you know the subject **inside out**.

11.3 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c

11.4
1 a first draft
2 a deadline
3 plagiarism
4 submit; assess
5 drop out
6 a paper; in (academic) journals
7 inter-library loan
8 feedback

Unit 12

12.1
1 league tables
2 selective education
3 equality of opportunity
4 perpetuating inequalities

12.2

1 Inequality is **inherent in** the education system.
2 **Elitism** is bad for the country in the long term.
3 **Comprehensive education** is a basic political ideal in many countries.
4 A **two-tier system** of schools **depresses** the opportunities for children from **less well-off** families and favours those from **better-off** families.
5 Some private schools **are well-endowed**, and this means they can have better resources.
6 All parents want their children to **excel** at school.
7 Emphasis on the three Rs is **perceived** by parents to be the key to success.

12.3

1 literacy
2 numeracy
3 curriculum reform
4 the three Rs
5 a mature student
6 one-to-one teaching

12.4 *Answers for Great Britain:*

1 When class sizes become very small, for example in villages in the countryside where people have moved away to towns.
2 Typically, children cannot concentrate, they talk during lessons, they bully one another. Teachers are not allowed to hit children, but they may put them into detention or inform their parents.
3 There may be a teacher who can teach slow learners, or special teachers may come in to help pupils with learning difficulties, but children often have to go to special centres to get help.
4 People of all ages, more and more, are going to universities in Britain, and special courses (called Access Courses) help them to do so. There are also evening classes, usually organised by local councils, which are not very expensive.

12.5

1 PTA: (Parent–Teacher Association) group consisting of teachers and parents who meet regularly
2 school governors: group which oversees all the business of the school
3 supply teacher: teacher who works in a school when needed (e.g. if someone is sick)
4 peripatetic teacher: teacher who works in different schools and travels between them

Unit 13

13.1

1	altruistic	selfish
2	diligent	lazy
3	intellectual	low-brow
4	methodical	unsystematic
5	morose	cheerful
6	obliging	unhelpful
7	quick-tempered	placid
8	sensitive	thick-skinned
9	stingy	generous
10	stubborn	flexible

13.4 The speaker has a positive opinion of Pat and Sam, but a negative opinion of Vince and Julie.

13.5 Pat seems very sly and terse. I find Vince thrifty and diligent. Julie is serious and resolute. Sam is unscrupulous and extravagant.

13.6 1 altruism 3 diligence 5 industriousness/industry 7 gallantry 9 moroseness
2 parsimony 4 placidity 6 sagacity 8 terseness 10 unscrupulousness, lack of scruples

13.7 altruistic – unselfish, selfless
parsimonious – mean, tight-fisted
diligent – hard-working
placid – calm, easy-going
industrious – hard-working
sagacious – wise
gallant – polite, chivalrous
terse – abrupt, brusque
morose – miserable, gloomy
unscrupulous – dishonest

Unit 14

14.1 1 ... love at first sight.
2 ... kindred spirits.
3 ... bosom pals.
4 ... head over heels in love.
5 ... hit it off.

14.2 1 eyes
2 well-matched
3 on; on fire
4 infatuated or (much stronger) besotted

14.3

noun	*adjective*
loyalty	loyal
consideration	considerate
passion	passionate
devotion	devoted
fondness	fond
faithfulness/faith*	faithful

noun	*adjective*
respect	respectful
affection	affectionate
romance	romantic
support	supportive
amiability	amiable
trust	trusting/trustworthy*

*Faithfulness is when you are completely loyal to someone; faith is the complete trust or confidence that you have in someone or something.
*If someone is very trusting, they trust you (or other people); if they are trustworthy, you (or other people) can trust them.

14.4 1 to 2 for 3 to 4 of 5 of 6 in

14.5 *Author's answers:*
1 My brother and sister: because they represent for me a link with my childhood and with my parents, who are now dead.
2 A very dear friend of mine: because this friend seems to see the world in exactly the same way as I do and always understands the problems I have.
3 My favourite colleague at work: because he does so many things that I also love to do and he has similar ambitions to me.

Unit 15

15.1
1 disloyal
2 untruthful
3 dishonest
4 unwelcoming
5 discontented
6 cold-hearted (or heartless)

15.2
1 ... we're **business partners.**
2 I've made several **casual acquaintances ...**
3 Were Britain and the **USA allies ...**
4 ... they're **bitter rivals.**

15.3
1 staunch
2 scrupulous
3 deeply
4 complete, unswerving
5 bitter
6 true (or loyal)

15.4
1 Rick and his sister didn't see eye to eye on a lot of things.
2 Her affection for Andrew has turned sour lately. I expect they'll split up.
3 Our relationship broke down because we always misunderstood / never understood each other.

15.5
1 There was a genuine misunderstanding.
2 They come from a broken home.
3 It has had its ups and downs.
4 A serious rift has developed/emerged between the two union leaders.
5 I think it's a family feud.

15.6 1 with 2 of 3 to

15.7
1 To die because of sadness resulting from a love affair which the other person ended, or you have lost the one you love (e.g. because of death), or some other, similar, personal tragedy.
2 To hate someone very much. This is a very informal expression. Formally we might use **to dislike someone intensely**.
3 To take advantage of every opportunity to speak badly of someone and/or to be looking for opportunities to create problems for them.
4 To have a bad relationship with someone.

Unit 16

16.1
1 b
2 c
3 b
4 b
5 c
6 b

16.2
1 hankering
2 covetously
3 rapturously
4 conciliatory
5 implacable
6 placatory; jubilation

16.3
1 Sarah has been walking on air since she got engaged.
2 Beth is full of the joys of spring.
3 Amanda seems to be on top of the world since finishing her thesis.
4 Jill feels enormous pity for children with AIDS.
5 Sam is hankering after a new computer.
6 His parents rejoiced at his good fortune.

16.4 *Possible answers:*

1 Anything that the person is happier not knowing about, e.g. an impending disaster or something unpleasant happening elsewhere.
2 No, appeasement implies being inappropriately conciliatory.
3 Jubilant.
4 Personal answer – you might mention any experience of intense happiness, e.g. when in love.

Unit 17

17.1 *Possible answers:*

1 Tripe, brains, lumpy custard.
2 Having a filling at the dentist, having an oral exam, finding mice that the cat has brought in.
3 A politician who stole a lot of money and then lied in court.
4 I find racism abhorrent.
5 I once felt an instant antipathy to a new colleague – though later we got on quite well!
6 People smoking in public places is my pet aversion.

17.2

1 loathsome	3 abhorrent	5 fickleness
2 repulsive	4 sloppily	6 scornfully

17.3 *These sentences all mean more or less the same as the original:*

1 People who talk with their mouth full revolt me.
2 I have an aversion to people who talk with their mouth full.
3 I find people who talk with their mouth full abhorrent.
4 People who talk with their mouth full fill me with repulsion.

17.4

1 ostentatious/brash	3 obsequious	5 grasping	7 bland
2 fickle	4 sloppy	6 squalid	8 trite

17.5

1 fuddy-duddy	3 nit-picking	5 officious
2 puerile	4 off-hand	6 brash

Unit 18

18.1 'fat' words: stout corpulent portly
'thin' words: scrawny gangling lanky

18.2

1 She looks as if she needs a good meal; **she is so scrawny**.
2 Marian and Frank are very suitable for each other; they're both **lanky** individuals.
3 A rather **portly**, middle-aged man offered to show us the way.
4 A **gangling/gangly** boy carried our bags for us.
5 She's become quite **stout** these days, ever since she stopped playing tennis.
6 A rather **corpulent** gentleman ascended the stairs, red-faced and breathless.

18.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 This person has rather unkempt hair.
2 This person doesn't have a hair out of place.
3 This person has a double chin.
4 This man has a rather/very haggard(-looking) face.

18.4

1 He is biting his nails.
2 He is folding his arms.
3 She is clenching her fists.
4 She is pouting.

5 He is crossing his legs. / He is sitting with his legs crossed.
6 She is shrugging her shoulders.
7 She is scowling.
8 He is picking his nose.

18.5

1 The two meanings are to position one's lips in a sexually attractive way or to position one's lips in a look of annoyance.
2 They probably feel angry or annoyed.
3 A swarthy complexion is a dark complexion, a sallow complexion is rather yellowish and unhealthy-looking.
4 b
5 They might do this if they are puzzled, or perhaps if they are tired, or if their head was itching.
6 Perhaps because they are surprised or shocked.
7 When you were really angry.
8 When they want to show they don't know or understand something, or if they wish to show they just don't care about something.
9 You might tap them on a hard surface such as a table.
10 I often fold my arms when listening to a talk or a lecture, or if I am sitting down when someone takes my photograph. I cross my legs when I'm listening to a talk or lecture, or when sitting and waiting such as at the dentist's or the hairdresser's.

Unit 19

19.1

1 unapproachable (or perhaps reserved)
2 pig-headed
3 They have little self-confidence.
4 an effusive greeting
5 Yes; scrupulous means extremely honest and not wanting to do wrong.
6 Impetuous is more negative.

19.2

adjective	*noun*
excitable	excitability
disdainful	disdain
impetuous	impetuousness or impetuosity
obstinate	obstinacy
modest	modesty

adjective	*noun*
gullible	gullibility
reserved	reserve or reservedness
garrulous	garrulousness or garrulity
conceited	conceit or conceitedness
pig-headed	pig-headedness

19.3

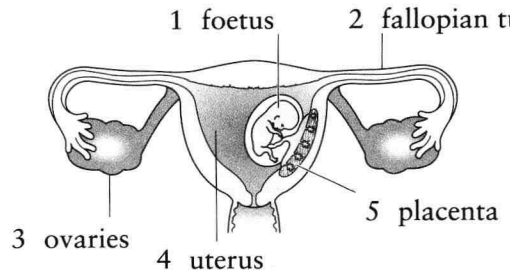
1 impulsive
2 approachable
3 aloof
4 extrovert
5 conscientious
6 obstinate
7 pig-headed
8 conceited
9 self-important
10 garrulous
11 pushy
12 disdainful
13 unscrupulous

19.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 She's a flirt, and doesn't care who knows it.
2 He's always had a tendency to be / tended to be an introvert.
3 Larry is (rather/very) reserved, while his sister is more approachable.
4 I'm an impulsive buyer rather than thinking about what I really need.
5 He was a (very) garrulous man, and taciturn is a word I would never associate with him.

Unit 20

20.1



20.2 fertilisation, conception (these could be said to happen at the same time as they both suggest the point where the egg is fertilised and a baby is conceived – though some might say that conception happens a little later, when the fertilised egg implants itself into the wall of the uterus)
pregnancy
labour
delivery

20.3
1 The whole country is in **mourning** after the President's death.
2 I'd like my **ashes** scattered at sea.
3 My **late** grandfather was a shepherd all his life.
4 I'm afraid her elderly godmother has just passed **away**.
5 My car is on its last **legs**.
6 My grandfather **bequeathed** me his gold watch in his will.
7 Mrs Wilson seems to have been at death's **door** for years.
8 Over two thousand people **perished** in the earthquake.
9 It was amazing there **were** no **fatalities** when the bridge collapsed.
10 My uncle left me a **bequest** of five hundred pounds in his will.

20.4
1 Both my sisters are expecting at the moment.
2 Amanda Harrison gave birth to twins last Monday.
3 She has been taking fertility drugs (to help her conceive).
4 All my grandparents lived to a ripe old age.
5 My grandmother is 90 but she still has all her wits about her.
6 Unfortunately the deceased died without leaving a will.
7 John's three nephews each inherited £1,000 from him.

20.5

1 perished	5 passed away
2 fatalities	6 bequeathed
3 slaughtered	7 inherited
4 deceased	8 bequest

Unit 21

21.1

1 therapeutic	3 relaxing/calming/therapeutic	5 rewarding
2 lucrative	4 fruitful	6 time-consuming

21.2 1 a couch potato 2 a doer 3 a culture vulture 4 a dabbler

21.3 *Author's answers:*
1 Playing folk music on the violin.
2 a shopaholic
3 a) a workaholic b) a sportaholic c) a chocaholic (not a chocolataholic)
4 I could be called a 'fiddlaholic' (a lover of the violin – fiddle is an informal word for a violin, especially if you play folk music on it).

21.4
1 time off, leisure time, free time or leisure
2 split fifty/fifty
3 labour-saving
4 mechanisation, automation
5 mass production

21.5
1 My daughter's **into** folk music. She buys a lot of folk CDs.
2 He **locks** himself **away** in his darkroom and does photography for hours on end.
3 She's **(totally) hooked on** ice hockey these days. She watches every competition on TV.
4 I have a **full diary** for the rest of the month.
5 What do you **get up to** when you aren't working, Nigel?

Unit 22

22.1
1 She meant that she tends to dress in an untidy, careless way.
2 Jeans, trainers [sports shoes] and sweatshirt [informal top with long sleeves, usually made of thick cotton].
3 *Personal answer*
4 She is about to do her finals [last university exams] and so stop being a student and begin working. In the work environment clothes tend to be more important than they are for a student.
5 They do not want pastel colours, shoulder pads or very short skirts. They also do not want to appear frumpy.
6 She would like it to be smart, young and modern. It should be conventional enough to fit most dress codes but also with some individuality to show a potential employer that she is a person with a degree of special style and originality. It also must not be too expensive.
7 This will depend, but in many workplaces, the dress code for men is a suit with a shirt and tie. For women it may be a dress or skirt rather than trousers.
8 There are many ways of answering this question, of course, but the article from which the extract was taken went on to recommend a honey-coloured trouser suit in stretch fabric.

22.2

1 kill	3 dress down	5 snazzy
2 smart-casual	4 designer (label); high street	6 baggy

22.3 *Possible answers:*
1 Mini scooters and dresses with uneven hemlines.
2 Platform shoes, sarongs and pashminas.
3 That they must be rather stupid and insecure to need to follow fashion so closely. (Note that this expression is disapproving so it would be unusual to have a positive opinion about people described in this way.)
4 Not very interested at all.
5 Film stars, pop stars, business people who wish to make money from selling new fashions.

22.4
1 I'm no good at speaking off the cuff.
2 Although he's the head of a large company, his wife wears the trousers at home.
3 Have you any idea what all these cloak-and-dagger meetings at work are about?
4 Be careful what you say to Helen – she's hand in glove with the boss.
5 I wouldn't invite them to stay if I were you – they'll take/have the shirt off your back before you know where you are.
6 The new legislation has really put us in a straitjacket.

22.5 1 The literal meaning of frill is a piece of cloth with folds along one side which is sewn onto another piece of material for decoration. The metaphorical meaning of no frills is basic, simple, no extras.
2 The literal meaning of the verb hem is to sew up the bottom edge of e.g. a dress so that it does not develop loose threads. Hemmed in means completely surrounded.
3 A seam is a line of sewing joining two pieces of material so that if, say, a bag is bursting at the seams, it is almost splitting open. The metaphorical meaning of bursting at the seams is very, very full.
4 Literally, to cloak is to cover with a cloak. The metaphorical meaning of cloaked is kept secret.
5 Literally a feather in someone's cap is simply a feather decorating one's cap or hat. The metaphorical meaning of the expression is an achievement to be proud of.

Unit 23

23.1 *Possible answers:*

accommodation	*What kind of person lives there?*	*Would you like to live there? Why/Why not?*
squat	a homeless person or someone with very little money	I wouldn't like it because you never know when you might be evicted.
pied à terre	someone who is wealthy enough to have a small second home which they use occasionally	I'd love to be able to afford a flat in the capital so that I could stay there if I wanted to have a weekend shopping and going to theatres.
council housing	people who do not have enough money to buy a house of their own	It would depend on the area – some council housing is very nice and has a friendly atmosphere. Other areas are rather run-down and depressing.
granny flat	an elderly relative of the people who live in the main house	When I'm old I would like to live close to my family but with at least a degree of independence.
high-rise flat	any type of person might live in one of these, though it would probably be someone in a large city	I prefer to live in a house because it is good to have a garden.
hovel	a very poor person or someone who is not good at looking after themselves	I should hate to live somewhere dirty and in a bad condition.
penthouse	someone with a lot of money	You might have wonderful views from a penthouse flat, but I prefer to live somewhere that has a garden.

23.2 1 Feng Shui
2 the rat race
3 minimalism
4 subsistence farming
5 New Age

23.3 *Author's answers:*
Young, fashionable people are most likely to be attracted to **minimalist** décor. It would be very hard for people with children or people who like collecting souvenirs to live in such a way. I'm afraid it is not suited to my way of life because I have collected too much clutter over the years.

Post-modernism is likely to appeal to people who are quite eclectic in their tastes. It appeals to me because I think it allows you to put together all sorts of different things without having to try to be consistent in your approach.
New Age is likely to attract rather unconventional younger people, especially those who are tired of a more materialist way of life. Some aspects of it interest me, but I enjoy the comforts of a conventional life too much to be tempted by a totally New Age lifestyle.
Subsistence farming is often something that is forced on people by circumstance rather than adopted by choice. However, it is an attractive life for people who like the outdoor life and who enjoy hard physical work. I like the idea of growing all my own food, as you would know that it had not been contaminated by chemicals of different kinds. Also, home-grown food tends to be fresher and to taste better. However, it would be a difficult lifestyle to have and would not be one that I personally would choose.

23.4 1 house 2 home truths 3 write 4 story

23.5
1 We **had the time of our life/lives** on holiday this year.
2 As soon as spring comes I feel as if I'm **getting a new lease of life.**
3 The problems caused by the floods are only **hitting home** now.
4 I imagine that being a servant in the past was **a dog's life.**
5 All over the world McDonald's **is a household name.**

Unit 24

24.1
1 a stag party (if you're a man) and a hen party (if you're a woman) – note than *hen party* is usually, but not exclusively, used about pre-wedding parties for women
2 a wedding reception
3 a housewarming (party)
4 a launch (party)
5 a reception
6 a fancy dress party

24.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 It's always good to see Hugh but somehow he always manages to **stay too long.**
2 You wouldn't believe it but Helen and Mark **are now going out together (as boyfriend and girlfriend)!**
3 I don't really approve of the way Erica **actively makes contacts with influential people,** but I'm sure it'll help her to make a success of going freelance.
4 Don't forget your old friends when your film becomes a hit and **you're mixing socially with** the rich and famous.
5 I'm going to a birthday **party** this weekend. Should be fun.
6 We must invite Jane to **our party.** She **adores going to parties!**
7 Mike'll want **to spend an evening going round different pubs** as soon as his exams finish.
8 Let's **spend an evening enjoying the various entertainments available in the town** as the children are with their grandparents tonight.

24.3 The answers to these questions will mainly depend on your own personal circumstances. Note, however, the following points about questions 3, 4 and 7.
3 Note that other networks that may influence progress up the career ladder include family connections and contacts made in clubs or churches.
4 People who want to succeed in a political or business career are likely to need to do some networking.
7 If you use the word 'cliquey' you do not like the atmosphere because you feel that people are in exclusive little groups which you are not able to join.

24.4
1 private/public
2 boy/school tie
3 hung
4 chummy/pally
5 putting
6 togethers
7 shoulders

Unit 25

25.1 1 far-fetched 2 hackneyed 3 overrated 4 understated 5 disjointed

25.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 The musical **was rather/a bit risqué** and was attacked by several politicians and religious figures. (Risqué is often used with a modifier such as *rather*, *very*, *a bit*, etc.)
2 Her performance was **memorable/unforgettable**, simply marvellous.
3 I can't remember the last time I saw such a **gripping film**.
4 It was a **very/deeply moving** play.
5 It's a **harrowing** film.
6 Some of his films are absolutely **impenetrable**.

25.3 *Most likely answers:*
1 Yes, it would probably be good, since all the critics say it's very good.
2 Yes, usually.
3 Probably not, as it's probably a bad film.
4 The Oscars, or, more correctly, the Academy Awards.
5 No, because then it's difficult for them to get a variety of different parts.
6 False. An *ovation* means applause, and if people stand up to applaud, it means they have enjoyed the performance a great deal.

25.4
1 portrayal
2 miscast
3 cliffhanger
4 keep you on the edge of your seat
5 budding (like the buds of a flower, which will open up and grow)
6 blockbuster (film/movie)
7 cops-and-robbers
8 masterpiece

Unit 26

26.1 1 false 2 true 3 true 4 false 5 true 6 false

26.2
1 detractors
2 voted with their feet
3 dumbing down
4 fad
5 pull the wool over his wife's eyes
6 inured/immune

26.3 *usually positive associations*
dazzling evocative exquisite intriguing peerless

usually negative associations
highbrow lowbrow impenetrable undemanding pedestrian uninspiring clumsy dreary un-of-the-mill

negative or positive associations
transparent challenging tongue-in-cheek earnest sophisticated primitive

26.4 *Possible answers:*

I think soap operas are usually rather lowbrow as they are intended to appeal to a mass audience.
I find some modern sculpture rather impenetrable as I neither know what it is meant to represent nor find it beautiful in any way.
I think operas by the German composer Wagner are very sophisticated in that you need to have had some musical education in order to appreciate them.
I find paintings by the surrealist artist Salvador Dali rather challenging as they contain so many curious and unexpected images.
I recently saw a performance of the ballet *Swan Lake*, which I thought was rather pedestrian because it contained nothing original.
I find paintings by Toulouse-Lautrec very evocative of the Paris of a century or so ago because they make me feel as if I am there myself.
In my opinion the designs on ancient Chinese porcelain are often exquisite as they are so delicate and so carefully executed.
I found a recent work that won a prestigious art prize – an unmade, rather grubby bed – extraordinarily dreary as it made me feel miserable rather than uplifted, as I believe art should.
I believe that Turner's paintings of the sea are peerless as no other painter seems to capture the colour and light of the sea so effectively.
Most articles and books by the writer Sue Townsend are tongue-in-cheek as they do not take anything too seriously.

26.5

1 lowbrow	3 sophisticated	5 exquisite
2 tongue-in-cheek	4 dreary	6 challenging

Unit 27

27.1 1 memoirs 2 manual 3 anthology 4 (academic) journal

27.2 *Suggested rewrites:*

1 I just could not seem to **get into** the story, so I stopped reading it.
2 It's **quite/rather lightweight**.
3 It's **quite/rather heavy going**.
4 Take it to bed with you; it's **good bedtime reading**. All the time I was reading it I just **couldn't put it down**. (*Or*: It was **a** real **page-turner** the whole time I was reading it.)
5 **It's compulsive reading.**

27.3

1 lugubrious	3 chilling	5 enigmatic	7 breathtaking
2 wry	4 evocative	6 poignant	8 macabre

27.5

1 section on 'troubleshooting'	manual
2 concise information about a subject	compendium
3 record of a recent examination or test of a lorry	logbook
4 day-to-day record of life during a war in 1776	journal

27.6 *Possible answers:*

1 Some books will be forgotten soon after we have read them; others will always be great, and will last in people's memories for all time.
2 Some books can be just read in parts, some should be read completely, and some should be read carefully and thought about.

Unit 28

28.1

1 The consumer often thinks that the labels provide information, but manufacturers often use meaningless terms just to make the product appear more attractive.
2 Because people feel happier with the idea that foods are natural rather than synthetic.
3 It refers to *egg*. It is, however, rather ambiguous and manufacturers exploit this.
4 *Organic* means that artificial fertilisers and chemicals have not been used in the food's production.
Wholemeal refers to flour that contains all the natural fibres of the grain with nothing removed through processing.
Vegetarian means without meat, i.e. suitable for eating by vegetarians.
5 Genetically modified. In other words, it refers to food which has had its genes modified in some way in order to make the crop more profitable.
6 DNA stands for deoxyribonucleic acid: the chemical at the centre of living things which controls the structure and purpose of each cell and carries genetic information.
7 *Cereal bars* are a kind of snack made from cereal with fruit or nuts and sugar and moulded into a kind of biscuit.
Fish fingers are slices of filleted fish coated in batter ready for frying. They are called fingers because they (slightly) resemble fingers in their shape.
Vegetable burgers are burgers that are not made of meat but of vegetables (typically lentils or beans).
8 It is a kind of pudding – like solid fruit juice made by adding gelatine to juice. In US English *jelly* means what is called *jam* in British English.
9 There must be less than 5% fat in *low-fat* cheese. In *reduced fat* cheese there would be 25% less fat than in standard cheese.

28.2 **The following should taste nicer:**

1 strawberry flavoured yoghurt: because at least some of the flavour will have come from real strawberries
2 orange juice: because it contains the juice from oranges instead of artificial flavourings
3 raspberry jam: because it has been made using real raspberries
4 free-range chicken: because the chicken was able to move freely on the farm rather than being kept in a small cage (battery farming)

28.3

1 fair hair (opposite: dark)
2 a gentle wind (opposite: a strong wind)
3 a comedy that has no serious content (opposite: a black comedy)
4 someone who wakes easily from sleep (opposite: a heavy sleeper)
5 to put a match to a fire to ignite it (opposite: to extinguish or put out a fire)
6 a small aircraft used for carrying only a few passengers or a small load
7 the joy of my life (opposite: the bane of my life)
8 Have you got a lighter or match (i.e. something to light a cigarette with)?
9 to find the solution by chance
10 Taking into consideration the information which the reports provide ...

28.4

ingredients – foodstuffs needed to make a dish
dilute – make another liquid weaker by mixing it with water
stew – cook slowly for a long time in liquid
grill – cook under or over a hot flame
half-baked – not fully cooked (of bread, biscuits or cakes)
spice up – make tastier by using spices like chilli powder, cinnamon, ginger, etc.

Although **savoury** is used about food (meaning the opposite of sweet in taste), **unsavoury** is only used in this metaphorical sense.
turn sour – lose its pleasant taste
juicy – full of tasty liquid, e.g. like a ripe orange

28.5
1 My mother **grilled** me about where I had been last night.
2 Let's **spice up** the evening by organising some party games.
3 What's been happening while I was on holiday? You must fill me in on all the **juicy** gossip.
4 Don't tell her that her briefcase has been found. Let her **stew** for a bit longer – perhaps she'll be more careful with it in future.
5 It might be a good idea to **dilute** these investments in your portfolio by exchanging some of them for others in a different line of business.
6 They lived together happily for many years, but things **turned sour** when his mother came to live with them.
7 Patience combined with interest in your pupils is a teacher's **recipe for** success / the **recipe for** success for a teacher.
8 Lance's ideas are always **half-baked.**

Unit 29

29.1 *Suggested answers:*
1 No, please. Put your credit card away. **Dinner's on me.**
2 Let me **get this (one).** You can pay next time.
3 Visitors to the company's head office in London are always **wined and dined** in/at the best restaurants.
4 **Would you like to join us** for lunch tomorrow?
5 When we eat out as a group, **we usually split the bill.**
6 **I'd like you to be my guest** at the theatre tomorrow night.

29.2
1 **I'm teetotal.**
2 **I haven't got a sweet tooth.**
3 **Do you have any special/particular dietary requirements?**
4 Just a small portion for me, please. I don't want to **overdo it.**
5 She's become **very calorie-conscious.** / She's **counting the calories.**
6 Sasha is such a **fussy eater.** It's difficult to find things she likes.

29.3
1 a savoury dish
2 a sullen/overbearing waiter
3 an informal get-together
4 courteous staff
5 sluggish service
6 impeccable service

29.4
1 take pot luck
2 say when
3 grab a bite to eat
4 nibbles
5 seconds (note plural)
6 an informal get-together

29.5
Cordially is a formal word meaning 'in a friendly or welcoming way'.
Black tie normally means a black dinner jacket, white shirt and black bow tie for men, and very formal, long dresses for women.
RSVP means répondez s'il vous plaît, French for 'please reply'.
To toast is to raise your glass and drink with others to wish someone success or happiness.
Aperitifs are alcoholic drinks normally taken before a meal.

Unit 30

30.1
1 towaway
2 tailback
3 pile-ups
4 give-way
5 right of way
6 hit-and-run
7 exhaust emissions
8 breathalyser, drink-driving
9 sound/hoot/toot; horns

30.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 B: Oh, so you skidded?
2 B: Oh, I guess it was a case of road rage.
3 B: Oh, so you didn't have the minimum depth of tyre tread?
4 B: Oh, so it was a head-on collision/crash.
5 B: Oh, really? I didn't know they could give on-the-spot fines.
6 B: Oh, so it's not roadworthy.

30.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 All the traffic in all directions was unable to move.
2 I've spent six hours driving.
3 The police car made me stop at the side of the road.
4 I had a small accident where I hit something or another car, but without serious damage.
5 My car broke down.
6 He's an irritating person who sits in the passenger seat and thinks he can tell the driver how to drive.

Unit 31

31.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 I hate charter flights.
2 It was an Apex ticket.
3 The ticket allowed us a three-night stopover in Singapore.
4 You can get a shared cabin on the ferry. / You can get a four-berth cabin ...
5 We hired a car with unlimited mileage.
6 When you get there, the transfers are included in the cost of the holiday.
7 It was a budget fare, but there were restrictions.

31.2

1 bed and breakfast
2 full board
3 self-catering
4 unlimited mileage
5 exotic island
6 value for money

31.3 *Most likely answers:*

1 self-catering holiday: to be your own boss
2 camping trip: to rough it (i.e. to live in very basic conditions, without any extra comforts), to be out in the wilds (i.e. away from civilisation), to sleep under the stars (i.e. out in the open, without a roof over your head)
3 staying in an inn or a guest house: a cosy atmosphere
4 skiing holiday: an exhilarating experience, perhaps also a real learning experience
5 trekking holiday: to keep on the move, to be out in the wilds, to sleep under the stars
6 cruise: to lounge around (i.e. to sit or lie and relax for long periods), to just drift along (to go along with the pace and rhythm of the ship)
7 sightseeing holiday: to spend a fortune on entrance fees, a real learning experience
8 holiday with car hire: to go as you please, to just drift along (i.e. not drive fast, no particular plan), to keep on the move

31.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 lounged around / drifted along
2 be my own boss

3 roughing it / sleeping under the stars / being out in the wilds
4 an exhilarating experience
5 to spend a fortune on entrance fees
6 a real learning experience
7 a cosy atmosphere

31.5 *Possible answers:*

1 A sightseeing holiday, looking at ancient monuments (Egyptian pyramids in this case). For many people, Egypt is an exotic destination.
2 A beach/seaside holiday, in this case we could also say a 'family holiday'. Activities typically include sunbathing, swimming, lounging around on the beach.
3 This picture shows Sydney Harbour, with its famous bridge and Opera House. Sydney is a great destination for cultural activities, sightseeing, shopping, etc. Cruise ships might also call in there.
4 This looks like a hiking or trekking holiday, since the man is carrying a rucksack and wearing clothes suitable for climbing mountains.
5 Beach holidays or holidays by the sea are good for snorkelling and underwater activities such as scuba-diving (which the picture shows).

Unit 32

32.1

1 boasts
2 sector
3 fauna
4 wander; beaten
5 hordes
6 get; nature
7 seeking; ordinary
8 escape
9 tracts; virgin; wealth
10 promising

32.2 *Possible answers:*

1 The list of times and events for the sea-cruise includes three trips to places on land, and 10 nights travelling by sea.
2 The flights are not guaranteed, but depend on seats being available from the airline.
3 An extra £30 per night is payable for a single room.
4 You can make a booking immediately or be given a price you can think about.
5 You can choose a package that includes a flight and car hire.

32.3

1 unrivalled
2 heartland
3 stunning
4 unbeatable
5 awe-inspiring
6 waterfront
7 unwind
8 recharge

32.4

1 trek, hike, ramble
2 savour
3 discerning
4 in Africa or Australia
5 four by four; it is a vehicle powered by four wheels, instead of the usual two

Unit 33

33.1 1 coniferous forest 2 industrial nation 3 paddy field 4 chemical industry 5 sugar plantation

Note that some other matches could be made although they do not appear in the text. Less strong but also possible is *coniferous plantation*. Note, however, that *paddy* cannot collocate with anything else and it is not possible to talk about crop fields.

33.2 *Suggested answers:*

plantation:	tea, coffee, rubber
industry:	manufacturing, pharmaceutical, textile
forest:	deciduous, rain, dense
field:	oil, wheat, ripe (ready to harvest)
nation:	civilised, independent, sovereign

Note that *oil* and *rubber* could also collocate with *industry*.

33.3 1 ancestors 3 immigrants/migrants 5 descendants
2 emigrants 4 migrants/immigrants

33.4 1 About 80% of the population lives in or around cities along the coast where life is easier than in the remote towns and farms of the outback. (*Australia*)
2 400 years ago it was the centre of the Inca Empire that stretched the length of South America. (*Peru*)
3 Two thirds of the farmland is under water but deliberately so, because the fields are flooded to grow rice. (*Vietnam*)
4 To the east of a long, narrow peninsula more than a hundred islands make up the rest of the country. (*Denmark*)
5 Much of the land is desert, dotted with oases, but parts of the coastline are more fertile. (*Oman*)
6 A line of volcanoes, many still active, dominates the landscape of this small country and forests, once rich with cedar, mahogany and oak, have been cut down for farmland. (*El Salvador*)

Unit 34

34.1 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes, extremely chilly.
2 Mm. Isn't it hot!
3 Yes, terribly humid.
4 Very windy!
5 Yes, it's dreadfully oppressive.
6 Yes, what a deluge/downpour!
7 Yes, it's very humid.
8 Yes, isn't it oppressive/sultry!

34.2 1 coldness
2 coldness, inhospitableness
3 covered with a great amount of something
4 rapid, moving quickly
5 lots of hard things that one can't stop or escape from
6 not bright and cheerful, something hidden
7 lack of clearness
8 loud deep noise

34.3 *Possible answers:*

1 moral, social, economic, current, mild, harsh
2 winds, view, climate, opinion, mood
3 the issue, the horizon, someone's judgement, someone's thinking, someone's vision
4 change, democracy, discontent, fear, recession
5 reception, look, glance, response
6 bullets, gunfire, abuse, missiles, insults

34.4 *Possible answers:*

1 mean
2 arid
3 elevation
4 latitude
5 precipitation
6 solar radiation
7 moderate
8 continental
9 seasonality

Unit 35

35.1

1 glass ceiling = invisible barrier
2 ivory tower = life away from unpleasant realities
3 brick wall = barrier
4 back door = unofficial way in
5 key feature = most important characteristic

35.2

1 went
2 hold/provide
3 opens
4 come
5 hit
6 towers
7 shut/closed
8 fell

35.3

1 My brother is always **a tower of strength** whenever I have a problem.
2 I would be reluctant to work for a company that does a lot of business **through/by the back door**.
3 The fee for this work will depend on the time it takes but **there is / it has a ceiling** of twenty thousand dollars.
4 The cost of petrol **has gone through the roof** in the last six months.
5 Having children often **cements a marriage.**
6 Vancouver is **the gateway to** Western Canada.
7 The **key** decision we have to take now is where to locate our business.
8 The professor has spent all his life **in an ivory tower** and really finds it very difficult to cope in the real world.

35.4

1 The company has been involved in a legal battle for several years now.
2 The speaker's request for questions was met with total silence.
3 Working on this project together should help to provide the starting point for a good relationship in the future.
4 Her eyes were firmly fixed on mine as she told me she was planning to go abroad.
5 When Jack returned to this country he found his marriage had completely broken down.
6 This government should put things right in its own immediate sphere of influence / close to home before criticising other countries.

Unit 36

36.1

1 nipped in the bud
2 a budding poet
3 grass roots
4 the root of the problem
5 to reap rewards
6 to take root
7 the seeds of discontent

36.2

1 Alec has spent most of his life in London but he is keen to **go** back to his roots when he retires.
2 The business is firmly **rooted** in the west of England.
3 The idea took some time to **take** root but it's very fashionable now.

4 His grandfather sowed the **seeds** of the business's success.
5 The US bookshop chain is opening a number of **branches** in the UK.
6 It's about time she **put** down some roots.
7 The idea for her novel **stems/stemmed** from her interest in mountain climbing.
8 The St James's Drama College turns out a hundred **budding** actors every year.

36.3 *Possible answers:*

1	fade	lose colour and strength
2	shrivel	dry up, lose volume
3	flourish	do very well, look strong and healthy
4	sprout	proliferate, lots of new growth
5	germinate	start to grow successfully
6	weed out	remove what is felt to be negative
7	prune back	cut back (with the aim of improving long-term results)
8	wilt	lose vitality
9	reap	gather the results of what one has worked for
10	wither	cause bad feelings or gradually die

36.4 *Possible answers:*
1 budding romance, film star, footballer
2 flourishing business, trade, nightlife
3 withering look, attack, contempt
4 fading dreams, hopes, looks (= appearance)
5 deeply rooted customs, ideas, values, fears, anxieties

36.5 *Possible answers:*
1 I'd like to shed one or two of my work commitments.
2 When I got an increased salary because I had passed an exam.
3 A couple of new friendships are flourishing.
4 I last felt that I was wilting when the office air conditioning broke down.

36.6 1 Your teacher likes you very much.
2 Something is growing or developing rapidly, just like mushrooms do.
3 They live very luxuriously.
4 Someone who is not very active and prefers to sit at home watching television.
5 The discussions are successful and produce positive results.

Unit 37

37.1 *Suggested rewrites:*
1 There are dozens of different types of **rodent** living in the woods.
2 A whale isn't a fish, it doesn't lay eggs. It's actually a **mammal**.
3 There are some interesting **reptiles** near the river.
4 Everyone thinks these animals are **carnivores**, but in fact they are **herbivores**.
5 The mother bird protects her eggs from **predators**.

37.2 1 docile 2 fierce/savage 3 domesticated 4 tame 5 wild

37.3 1 habitat 2 sanctuary 3 reserve 4 shelter

37.4 1 blood sports
2 the ivory trade
3 poachers
4 They would say that it is cruel to kill animals just to provide people with luxury clothes.

37.5 Stressed syllables are in bold for comparison.

noun	*verb*	*adjective*
carnivore		carnivorous
herbivore		her**biv**orous
predator	prey (on)	**pre**datory
poacher	poach	

Unit 38

38.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 **Carbon dioxide emissions from** cars and factories is a major problem.
2 These flowers here are **an endangered species,** so it's illegal to pick them.
3 A lot of wild animals have to survive in **shrinking habitats.**
4 Most of Patagonia is a **pristine environment.**
5 We have to look after **the finite resources of the planet.**
6 If **deforestation** continues, there will be no forest left ten years from now.
7 Burning **fossil fuels** causes a lot of pollution.
8 **There will be rising sea levels / Sea levels will rise** if global warming continues.
9 Increasing population **exerts severe pressure on** economic resources.
10 **The ecological balance** is very delicate.

38.2

noun	*verb*	*adjective*	*adverb*
climate		climatic	
demography		demographic	demographically
projection	project	projected	
sustainability	sustain	sustainable	sustainably

38.3 **Prophets of doom** and gloom are always saying that we are heading for an environmental catastrophe, and that unless we adopt a policy of **sustainable** development we will cause irreparable damage to the planet. The worst **case scenario** is of a world choked by overpopulation, the greenhouse **effect** and traffic gridlock. Much of what is claimed is exaggerated, but politicians are influenced by such voices and are always trying to improve their green **credentials** in the eyes of the voters.

38.4 1 amphibians: creatures which live on land and in water, e.g. frogs
2 endangered species

Unit 39

39.1

1 on hold; back to
2 dispatch
3 responsive
4 prompt/quick/swift
5 backlog
6 shoddy/substandard
7 obliging/accommodating
8 helpline

39.2 *Author's answers:*

1 I always have a backlog of e-mails to answer.
2 Yes, a travel agent was very helpful and arranged a complicated journey for me which was not the typical kind people make.

3 Computer companies usually have helplines. I used one when I got my new computer. It was not very successful, as the person on the other end of the line seemed to assume I understood all the computer terminology he was using!
4 Yes, I wanted to change to a non-smoking room in a hotel and the person on the reception desk was not willing to help and would not even check to see if one was available.

39.3 1 e 2 b 3 i 4 f 5 a 6 h 7 d 8 g 9 c

Unit 40

40.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 You'll have to show a **vaccination certificate** for tropical diseases when you enter the country.
2 People entering from war-torn countries often **seek political asylum.**
3 You have to **clear customs** if you arrive on an international flight at San Francisco airport, even if you are flying on within the USA.
4 You have to fill in a **customs declaration (form)** before going through customs control.
5 Some of the people were **economic migrants,** rather than genuine political refugees.
6 *Passenger to airline cabin attendant*: Could you give me **a landing card** before we arrive, please?
7 At the airport the security guards had **sniffer dogs.**
8 You'll need a visa; the **entry restrictions** are very strict.
9 You have to fill in the **port of entry** in this box here.

40.2 *Possible answers for Great Britain:*

1 To see if they are overloaded, to see if their brakes work, to check how many hours the driver has been driving without a rest.
2 If they have failed a breathalyser test and the subsequent blood test.
3 If the person is suspected of involvement in terrorism or drug smuggling. To tap means to listen to phone calls without the people involved knowing.
4 If they are suspicious of someone late at night.
5 If the police suspect the person of involvement in terrorism or drug smuggling, or any serious crime.
6 If someone has escaped from a nearby prison (all traffic is stopped and checked).
7 If they are looking for a person whose description they have. (A photofit picture is a computer-generated image based on someone's description of a person.)
8 If you witnessed a crime or if you are involved in a serious accident.

40.3

1 a plain clothes (police) officer
2 a paramilitary police force
3 the anti-corruption squad
4 a parking ticket
5 the drug squad
6 the security forces

Unit 41

41.2

1 stems from, derives from
2 seeks
3 are anxious to
4 universally
5 range
6 with little in common

41.3 1 implausible 2 credible 3 benefit 4 likely 5 buy 6 salt 7 credence 8 attributed

41.4 1 eradicate 2 converts 3 ingenuous 4 tenets 5 adherents 6 ascribe 7 credence 8 postulate 9 pinch

Unit 42

42.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 For Christians, Christmas **celebrates** the birth of Jesus Christ.
2 The **festivities** included parades, sports and musical gatherings.
3 There was a **celebratory feeling** about the whole weekend.
4 For the country people, the spring festival **symbolises the renewal of / is a symbol of the renewal of / is a symbolic renewal of** the fertility of the land.
5 There was a **ceremonial** atmosphere as the military bands marched round the main square.
6 People tend to be in a **festive** mood when the harvest is successfully completed.
7 You should go and see the lantern festival. It's always **a great/real spectacle.**

42.2 *Suggested answer:*

"Well, it's called the Festival of Flowers, and it's **associated with** the coming of spring, after the **sombre** winter months. It **can be traced back to** a religious tradition of taking flowers to the church to offer them to God. Spring flowers are the main **focus of** the festival, and there's always a **parade of people** dressed in traditional costumes. It's all very **flamboyant** and **raucous**, and it **is very atmospheric.** The flowers **symbolise** new life, and **were believed to guarantee/to be a guarantee of** a good harvest later in the year if they were offered to God. Nowadays most people **are not so superstitious,** but there's still a **pagan** atmosphere about it all ..."

42.3 Mother's Day is a day when people send cards and give gifts to their mother.
Independence Day (e.g. 4th July in the USA) is celebrated in many countries which were formerly colonised by other countries.
May Day is the first of May, and is celebrated in many countries as a commemoration of all workers.
Valentine's Day is 14th February. On this day, people send romantic messages (often anonymously) to someone they are in love with.

Unit 43

43.1

1 Slavic	3 Semitic	5 Austronesian	7 Indo-Arian
2 Celtic	4 Germanic	6 Romance	8 Slavic

43.2

1 P-U-N tilde-O
2 G-A umlaut-R-E-N
3 G-R-A circumflex-C-E
4 F-A-C-C cedilla-A tilde-O
5 S-I-E grave (accent)-G-E
6 C-A-F-E acute (accent)

43.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 The **orthography** of Burmese / Burmese **orthography** is quite difficult for a foreign learner.
2 Japanese uses several different writing systems with hundreds of **characters.**
3 The **lexicon** of a language like English is constantly changing. A lot of new technical words are based on **Graeco-Latin** roots, rather than **Anglo-Saxon** words.
4 Unlike English, some world languages have very few vowel **phonemes** and no **diphthongs.**
5 This ancient and beautiful alphabet uses **pictograms** to express meaning.
6 Windscreen is a **compound noun** / a **noun compound** / a **nominal compound.**
7 **Modality** is expressed in different forms in different languages.

43.4 *Stressed syllables are in bold.*

noun	*adjective*	*change in stress?*
or**thog**raphy	ortho**graph**ic	yes
lexicon	**lex**ical	no
mo**dal**ity	**mo**dal	yes

Unit 44

44.1 *Possible answers (about Russia):*

1 It can be argued that Boris Godunov **usurped the throne** of Russia.
2 The so-called False Dmitry I was a **pretender to the** Russian **throne** in the early seventeenth century.
3 Peter the Great **succeeded to the throne** in 1682 when he was only 10 and Sofia Miloslavsky acted as his **regent** for seven years.
4 Catherine the Great **succeeded** her husband, Peter III, **to the throne.**
5 She **acceded to the throne** in 1762 after overthrowing, and probably organising the murder of, her husband, Peter III.
6 The Romanov tsars enjoyed **absolute power** in Russia.

44.2 1 chariot 2 jester 3 armour 4 cart 5 galleon 6 highwayman

44.3 1 b 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 b 7 a 8 a

Unit 45

45.1

1 *False* **Human** poverty takes health factors into account as well as money.
2 *True* This is implied by the figures rather than stated directly in the text.
3 *False* 15 people **have a combined wealth** that is worth more than the GDP of sub-Saharan Africa.
4 *False* The US gives **less than** 0.7% of its GNP to overseas aid.
5 *False* The proportion of GNP given as overseas aid is **decreasing.**
6 *True*
7 *False* Just **less than** a quarter of overseas aid actually goes to the poorest countries.

45.2

1 National; Domestic
2 malnutrition
3 servicing
4 relative; absolute
5 alleviation
6 sanitation

45.3

1 poverty line
2 life expectancy
3 overseas aid
4 minimum standard
5 debt servicing
6 infant malnutrition
7 trade deal
8 income poverty

The above are the collocations used in the text in A and are the strongest collocations. However some other collocations are also possible, for example: lifeline (one word), overseas deal, minimum aid.

45.4 1 destitute 2 mouth 3 tight 4 deprived 5 breadline

Unit 46

46.1
1 False (Hidden pressures are more influential.)
2 True
3 True
4 True
5 False (Most lobbying is concealed from the public.)
6 True
7 False (The individual can try to get support from his or her own MP.)

46.2 *Possible answers:*
1 Members of Parliament, constituents, directors, ministers, civil servants, lobbyists, Chancellor
2 centralised, close-knit, well-funded, scattered, fragmented, powerful, public, non-commercial, effective
3 win, change, lobby, counter, appeal

46.3
1 commerce – commercial, non-commercial
2 mass-produced – producers
3 constituency – constituents
4 petitioner – petitions
5 consumption – consumers
6 pressurise – pressures
7 legislate – legislation
8 representative – represent

46.4
1 representative
2 petitioner
3 mass-produced
4 legislate
5 constituency
6 pressurise
7 consumption
8 commerce

46.5 *Possible answers:*

Text A:
to influence = to affect (to influence public opinion, to influence a child)
assiduously = showing hard work or attention to detail (to study assiduously, to avoid something assiduously)
a climax = most important or exciting point (to reach a climax, the climax of the play)
to press for = to argue in favour of (to press for reform, to press for change)

Text B:
close-knit = tightly connected (a close-knit community, a close-knit fraternity)
backstairs = hidden from the public (backstairs pressures, backstairs influences)
relentlessly = without stopping (to campaign relentlessly for something, prices rise relentlessly)
intimidate = to frighten or threaten someone (to be intimidated into doing something, to intimidate a younger child)
encircle = to surround (to encircle a town, to encircle the enemy camp)

46.6
1 counter
2 lobby
3 appeal
4 minister
5 civil
6 counter

Unit 47

47.1
1 impeached
2 lodge
3 overturned
4 sets
5 award/grant
6 bend
7 are infringing / infringed
8 perverting
9 annulled
10 quashed

47.2
1 trespass
2 embezzlement
3 joyriding
4 perjury

47.3
1 a civil court
2 an indictable offence
3 The signatories have to do what they have agreed to do.
4 discretionary

47.4 abrogation contravention impeachment infringement perversion indictment discretion statute

47.5 1 indictment 2 discretion 3 infringement 4 statute 5 perversion

Unit 48

48.1
1 They had stopped thinking of it as something heroic and glorious and began thinking of it as something terrifying.
2 He thought his invention had such a potential to destroy that it would end up making wars illegal because they would be so terribly destructive. He wanted to reward people who help to further the cause of peace.
3 It mentions the invention of dynamite, aerial warfare and nuclear weapons and their use as a deterrent.
4 Warfare now uses increasingly terrifying methods of destruction. These wipe out ordinary people and places as well as soldiers and army bases. This means that people inevitably have a less romantic view of war than used to be the case when they had more control over their own level of risk.
5 People who believe that their own national, ethnic or political cause is worth killing for.

48.2

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
deter	deterrent	deterrent
	warfare, war	warring, warlike
outlaw	outlaw	outlawed
empower, power	power	powerful
	nucleus	nuclear
revolt	revulsion, revolt	revolting
annihilate	annihilation	annihilated
cause	cause	causal

48.3 *Possible answers:*
1 an area of life; an area in the north
2 military operations; surgical operations
3 a modern society; an English language society at school
4 for the good of the cause; the cause of the accident
5 the outbreak of war; an outbreak of measles
6 a last resort; a holiday resort
7 an act of war; an act in a play; to put on an act [pretend]
8 a means to an end; a means of transport

48.4 *Possible answers:*

Roman armies waged wars all round Europe and the Mediterranean.
In the First World War hostilities ceased in November 1918.
The castle was besieged by an enemy army.
William the Conqueror won the Battle of Hastings in part because he managed to successfully ambush parts of Harold's army.
Traditionally armies in the First World War called a truce for Christmas Day.
Both sides agreed on a ceasefire during the peace negotiations.
The Scots were routed at the Battle of Flodden in 1513.
The UN sends peacekeeping troops to areas of serious conflict in the world.
An international observer in an area of conflict has to remain impartial.
Napoleon's campaign in Russia failed because he did not take the winter climate there sufficiently into account.
Police and ambulances were called when an incendiary device went off at a busy train station.
Germ warfare has been illegally used on a number of occasions.

48.5 1 explode 2 ambush 3 siege 4 truce 5 bomb

Unit 49

49.1
1 sustainable
2 following (*pursuing* is also possible), reduce (*alleviate* is also possible)
3 encouraging (*positive* is also possible)
4 deep (*abject* is also possible)
5 recovered
6 achieve
7 lasting (*long-term* is also possible)
8 access

49.2
1 Over a period of five years, the country **incurred** huge debts which it could not **repay**.
2 **Debtor countries** are completely at the mercy of the rich nations.
3 **The burden of debt** is so great in some countries that their economies are collapsing.
4 Richer countries could do a lot to **ease/alleviate** the debt of poor countries, and indeed, in some cases, could **cancel** (or **write off**) the debt altogether.

49.3
1 trade war
2 (a) to impose (b) to lift
3 restrictive practices
4 monetary union
5 development grants
6 a war-torn economy
7 ailing

Unit 50

50.1
1 a charge card
2 credit card fraud
3 put/stick it on my (credit) card
4 make it out to
5 bounced
6 broke/skint
7 strapped for cash
8 bit tight

50.2
1 premium
2 loan shark
3 mortgage /ˈmɔːgɪdʒ/
4 excess
5 health cover
6 pension plan

50.3
1 handshake
2 rolling
3 lump
4 life
5 portfolio
6 ends meet

50.4 *Author's answers:*

1 I have a credit card, a charge card and a store card.
2 02/04 (end of February, 2004)
3 I have a store card for a big department store in my hometown. A lot of people would probably like to own a store card for a big store like Harrods in London.
4 Around 20% at the moment.

Unit 51

51.1 1 classified ads or adverts/advertisements
2 an agony aunt
3 the obituaries / obituary column
4 a leader / a leading article / an editorial
5 a supplement
6 a feature

51.2

1 manual	3 brochures	5 leaflet	7 prospectus
2 flyers/leaflets	4 pamphlets	6 booklet	

51.3 *Books:*
spine (the vertical edge of the book which usually has the title on it)
jacket (the cover)
foreword (a piece of text before the main text of the book begins)
edition

Magazines:
subscription (a payment that buys you a certain number of issues in advance, e.g. for one year)
issue (publication printed for a particular day/week/month)
binder (a file or special jacket to collect and bind a set of issues together)
quarterly (a magazine issued every three months)

51.4 1 b 2 c 3 a

51.5 1 c
2 d
3 a
4 e If something **gives you the lowdown on something** (informal), it gives all the most important information.
5 f
6 b **Small print** refers to the details, rules and restrictions that often accompany legal documents such as guarantees, contracts, insurance policies, etc., which are often written in very small letters.

Unit 52

52.1
1 attachment: file sent at the same time as an e-mail message
2 cookie: program sent to your computer from the Internet, used to follow your activities
3 spam: unwanted web pages (e.g. advertisements) sent to you via the Internet
4 chat room: Internet site where people with common interests can e-mail each other online
5 ISP: company that gives you access to the Internet and offers news pages, shopping, etc.

52.2

word	*opposite*	*exists*	*doesn't exist*
delete	undelete	✓	
download	upload	✓	
update	downdate		✓
inbox	outbox	✓	
online	offline	✓	
install	uninstall	✓	

52.3 1 upload, online 2 inbox 3 install 4 undelete 5 offline

52.4 *Suggested answers:*
1 E-signatures are a way of identifying yourself on the Internet with a unique code or name, which you could use, for example, to agree to pay for goods.
2 E-learning means taking courses over the Internet instead of going to a school or college to do your studies.
3 E-enabled here means that all the study materials can be accessed and worked with through the Internet.
4 E-books are books which you buy from the Internet or on CD-ROM, and which you then read on your computer or on your hand-held PDA (personal digital assistant).
5 The dotcom economy refers to Internet companies, whose web addresses typically end in '.com', for example, a company that sells bicycles over the Internet might call itself *newbikes.com*, which would be read aloud as 'new bikes dot com'.

Unit 53

53.1 1 lap 2 crowd 3 rock 4 art 5 with 6 to 7 put/leave 8 galore

53.2 1 B 2 C 3 E 4 C 5 D 6 A, F 7 E, F 8 B

53.3
1 a logo
2 a banner
3 sports sponsorship
4 a billboard
5 a sandwich board
6 a carrier bag
7 classified ads
8 sky-writing

53.4 The language used in the advert makes use of lots of words which have attractive associations (soft, smooth, natural, life-giving, freshness, glow, etc.); it suggests the product contains beneficial ingredients; it suggests that it can make you look younger and better; it uses alliteration (radiance renewed, soft and smooth, compliments on your complexion).

53.5 *Possible answer:*

Pamper yourself!

❄ Try our tantalisingly tempting new range of lipsticks
❄ Unsurpassed value
❄ Scientifically proven to last longer and to retain their gloss
❄ You'll outshine the other girls!

Unit 54

54.1
1 air your views
2 issue a statement
3 muck-raking
4 press conference
5 pressure groups
6 silly season
7 sound bite
8 tap sources

54.2 1 rag 2 copy 3 deadline 4 went 5 hot 6 cuttings

54.3
1 No, because rag is too informal a word for this context and also it implies that you think the newspaper is not of good quality.
2 You have a low opinion of them.
3 Deadlines.
4 *Vogue*.
5 'Exclusive' and 'scoop'.
6 The story breaks and the story hits the headlines.
7 Libel and defamation of character: these both involve saying things that lower a person's reputation. Defamation is broader than libel in that it covers slander as well as libel. Slander is spoken defamation of character and libel is written defamation of character.
8 She might keep articles about her, such as copies of reviews of her films or of interviews with her.

54.4
1 Every newspaper inevitably puts its own spin on events.
2 I have to find some articles from some back copies of *The Times*.
3 Read all about the royal divorce! Hot off the press!
4 The floods took up more column inches in the papers than any other story this week.
5 Politicians are always ready and willing to air their views to/in the press.
6 The story about the scandal surrounding her uncle hit the headlines on her wedding day.
7 Any newspaper does all it can to prevent being sued for defamation of character.
8 Muck-raking is a characteristic activity of the gutter press.

Unit 55

55.1
1 **cho**lera (stress on first syllable)
2 sore **throat** (stress on second word)
3 **ty**phoid (stress on first syllable)
4 **di**sease (stress on last syllable)
5 con**sul**tant (stress on middle syllable)
6 trans**fu**sion (stress on middle syllable)
7 TB (stress on last syllable)

di**a**betes bron**chi**tis **cho**lera
heart attack sore **throat** **lung** cancer
hepa**ti**tis **ty**phoid tuber**cu**losis
illness **di**sease **sick**ness
con**sul**tant **doc**tor **sur**geon
hospital **am**bulance trans**fu**sion
heart disease **sur**gery TB

55.2

positive meanings:	*negative meanings:*
be over the worst	be poorly
be on the mend	feel a bit under the weather
be back on one's feet again	come down with
get over	

Whether you consider *fight off* to be positive or negative depends on whether you feel that 'fighting something off' is always used in a negative situation, or whether you are succeeding in 'fighting off' your cold/flu/headache, etc., in which case you might see it as positive.

1 'Hello, Frank, good to see you **back on your feet again**.'
2 'Jo, I won't be in today, I've **come down with** a cold.'
3 'Oh, I'm OK. I'm **over the worst** now. I still feel bad, but I should be out within a week or so.' (*Over the worst* suggests getting better, but that you are still quite ill. *On the mend* [see 7 below] suggests the person is getting back to normal health.)
4 'Don't worry, darling. Everyone has a cold now and then. You'll **get over it**.'
5 'Don't worry. It's nothing serious. I'm just feeling **a bit under the weather**, that's all.'
6 'I'm trying to **fight off** the flu, but nothing seems to help. I don't think I'll be in work tomorrow.'
7 Hilary was quite ill last week, but she's **on the mend** now and should be back at work next week. (*Or:* 'she's **back on her feet again now**'.)

55.3

1 Her mother died **of/from** skin cancer.
2 Is there a prescription **charge** in your country? (*Price* is the fixed cost of goods; it is not normally used for services such as prescribing medicines.)
3 In Britain, national **insurance** is a separate tax from income tax. (The mixed collocation here is with *social security*, which is the financial support paid to people who are unemployed, or who have no means of support.)
4 Correct.
5 Are there insurance **schemes** for private healthcare in your country? (A *scheme* means a plan or contract you can enter into with an insurance company.)
6 Correct.
7 She suffers **from** a severe allergy and can't be in a smoky room.

Unit 56

56.1

1 She was feeling **under** the weather and a bit **feverish** so she took the day off.
2 I felt really **off colour** yesterday and my head was **throbbing**, so I took a tablet.
3 I felt a bit **out of sorts** and seemed to have more **aches and pains** than usual.
4 My arms are **aching** after carrying that heavy suitcase of yours.

56.2

1 feverish	3 dizzy	5 a stiff neck
2 a nauseous feeling	4 bunged up	6 trembling

56.3

1 allergic to	5 prescription
2 dosage	6 symptoms
3 vaccinations	7 sick note
4 medication	

56.4 1 herbal medicine 2 aromatherapy 3 acupuncture 4 homeopathy 5 chiropractic

56.5 1 d 2 c 3 a 4 b

Unit 57

57.1

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
become pregnant, make someone pregnant, impregnate	pregnancy	pregnant
breastfeed	breastfeeding	breast-fed
sensitise	sensitivity	sensitive
clot	clot	clotted
drug	drug	drugged
dehydrate	dehydration	dehydrated
ulcerate	ulcer	ulcerous, ulcerated
affect	effect	effective

57.2
1 Excitement **reached fever pitch** as the day of the final match dawned.
2 Unfortunately, a number of our investments are **ailing** at the moment.
3 There has been a **rash of** car thefts in our part of town.
4 Unfortunately, she **still carries the scars of / is still scarred by** her divorce.
5 Ralph's jealousy is **symptomatic of** a person with general low self-esteem.
6 What do you think the **prognosis** is for the peace talks? (Note that the verb has to change to the singular here.)

57.3

1 paralysed	5 contagious
2 ailing	6 fever
3 fatal	7 disease
4 rash	8 prognosis

Unit 58

58.1 *Possible answers:*
1 Heart attacks and strokes may be caused by too much cholesterol.
2 You want to prevent plaque on teeth because it contains bacteria which can cause decay.
3 They are all cholesterol-rich foods.
4 Fruit, vegetables and wholemeal breads, for example, contain a lot of fibre.
5 It speeds up the digestion process and helps the body to get rid of waste.

58.2
1 high levels of cholesterol, high blood pressure, diabetes
2 three miles
3 It varies according to your weight. Heavier people burn more calories.
4 depression
5 It produces a hormone, serotonin, which is believed to improve people's mood.

58.3

1 clog	4 enhancer
2 tolerance	5 swift
3 raise	6 lose

58.4 scoring an own goal, moving the goalposts, level playing field: football
in the running, neck and neck: horse racing
skate around: skating
sail through: sailing

58.5
1 Sarah sailed through her exams.
2 I wish he'd stop skating around the point.
3 I've been told that I'm in the running for the job of supervisor.
4 Although he meant it as a compliment, Rick scored an own goal when he told Helen she looked as if she had put on some weight.
5 It's hardly a level playing field when 18-year-olds take the same exam as 15-year-olds.
6 It's hard to know what to do when the goalposts are constantly being moved.

58.6 *Possible answers:*
1 The teacher hated to have any interruptions when she was presenting new material to her class.
2 The king banished his rival from the country.
3 Louise works much more efficiently than any of our previous secretaries.
4 At the front of a railway engine is a buffer for protection if it hits anything.
5 The painting showed a harbour full of picturesque sailing vessels.
6 He is not known for his tolerance – indeed he is the most intolerant person I know.
7 People's resistance to new ideas usually increases with age.
8 Some churches spend a lot of time and money attempting to convert people to their faith.
9 Don't burn this newspaper – I want to cut out some articles from it.
10 The village was built in a depression in the hills.

58.7 *Possible answers:*
1 Eating too much cholesterol can lead to blocked arteries and kidney disease.
2 If necessary, increase your intake of fruit and vegetables to make sure that you eat plenty of fibre.
3 Run on a regular basis as it is a particularly efficient form of cardiovascular exercise.
4 All-round exercise can enhance your mood as well as improve your physical fitness.
5 Eat plenty of fibre so that you help your body to excrete what it does not need.

Unit 59

59.1 *Suggested answers:*
1 service industries, manufacturing industries
2 high-technology/high-tech industries, low-technology/low-tech industries
3 State ownership (*or* Nationalisation), privatisation
4 Heavy industry, light industry

59.2
1 a sweetener
2 a public-private partnership
3 subsidies
4 inward investment
5 a lame duck (industry)
6 red tape
7 a sweatshop economy
8 to switch production, to relocate

59.3
1 Industrial piracy [illegal production of goods using another company's brand name]
2 industrial espionage [stealing or destroying a rival company's plans or secrets]
3 Copyright infringement [publishing or copying a book or work of art without the author's permission]
4 Money laundering [passing money illegally earned through the normal banking system without being caught]
5 black market [secret, illegal trade]

Unit 60

60.1 1 PDA 2 laptop/notebook 3 Handheld/Palmtop 4 desktop

60.2
1 thumbnail [small pictures you can make bigger before downloading them]
2 computer nerd [a rather negative term for a person obsessed with computers and who devotes most of their time to them at the expense of a normal social life]
3 techie
4 Analogue
5 screensaver [image that appears on your computer screen if you do not use the computer for a certain period of time]
6 footprint
7 icon [small symbol representing the program]
8 trackpad

60.3
1 satellite communications
2 ergonomics
3 biotechnology
4 digital technology
5 artificial intelligence

Unit 61

61.1
1 gridlocked traffic
2 genetic modification
3 human genome
4 virtual reality
5 global village

61.2
1 genetically modified food, or GM food
2 a smart card
3 virtual reality
4 a clone
5 extraterrestrial beings
6 genetic engineering
7 gene therapy
8 a designer baby

61.3
1 The **doomsday scenario** for human society is that we will destroy ourselves with nuclear weapons.
2 **Interplanetary travel** may become normal in the coming centuries.
3 **E-commerce** will become more and more normal.
4 The team of scientists is doing research into **the human genome**.

61.4
1 genetic modification
2 the nuclear family
3 cloning
4 gene therapy
5 globalisation, or the global village, or the global economy
6 interactive TV

61.5 All of the ideas are in fact true (as reported in newspapers and news magazines), except for number 3.

Unit 62

62.1

1 poky: suitable here in this informal context
2 roomy: often used for cars
3 compact: in fact, a whole class of small cameras is referred to as 'compact cameras' by manufacturers and advertisers
4 cramped: suitable in this slightly more formal context (compare 1)
5 spacious
6 extensive

62.2

Kingsmead House, Letchwood.

The property is **spacious**, with a **compact** garden, and is situated only ten minutes away from the **bustling** town centre. There are **extensive** leisure facilities nearby.

Shops, banks, restaurants and other services are located in the pleasantly designed neighbourhood. Viewing by appointment. Offers in the region of £220,000.

Ref 023DW446

Rambling usually suggests a rather chaotic collection of rooms, and *a labyrinth* suggests they are confusingly laid out.
Cramped and *poky* suggest that somewhere is too small to be comfortable.
Congested and *crowded* are negative. *Bustling* suggests that somewhere is busy, interesting and full of life.
Excessive means too many, and no one wants *expensive* facilities.

62.3 *Suggested rewrites:*

1 The kitchen is so small you can't/couldn't swing a cat in it. (*Or*: The kitchen is so small there isn't enough room to swing a cat in it.)
2 I suffer from claustrophobia.
3 I got/was hemmed in in the office car park the other day.
4 Holidays in Australia are great if you love wide open spaces.
5 I hate the London Underground during rush hour. Everyone is packed/crammed in like sardines in the trains.
6 I dropped a glass and tiny pieces were scattered all over the floor.
7 The buildings in the holiday complex are (quite/rather) spread out.
8 The train was very full but I just managed to squeeze in before the doors closed.

62.4

1 Hundreds of people spent years **incarcerated** in the cells of this dark, damp castle.
2 I quickly **stuffed** a few clothes and a couple of books in a rucksack and set off at once. (*stuffed* is a good word here because it also suggests putting things in quickly and without much care)
3 She **suffers from agoraphobia**.
4 We'll all have to try and **squeeze** into my little car; Larry hasn't got his with him today.
5 I always get **claustrophobia** when I'm in a lift.
6 I don't think we should try and **cram** everything into one suitcase. Let's take two. (*squeeze* and *stuff* would also be possible here)

Unit 63

63.1
1 They've been living in the same house since the year dot.
2 We got to the airport just in the nick of time. (*Or*: We just got to the airport in the nick of time.)
3 John gave it to Sarah for keeps. (*Or*: Sarah gave it to John for keeps.)
4 Together we can get it done in less than no time.
5 He's never been further than the nearest town in all his born days.
6 We got to the hospital in the nick of time.

63.2
1 a lingering scent
2 a transient (feeling of) joy
3 persistent criticism
4 an incipient headache
5 pristine sheets
6 the inexorable ageing process
7 a fleeting grin
8 a protracted investigation

63.3
1 lingering kiss
2 fleeting appearance
3 incipient wrinkles
4 inexorable advance of time
5 persistent smell
6 pristine beach
7 protracted peace negotiations
8 transient population

63.4 river current is strong carried away ocean-tide swim
(You could also include the words never-resting, rolling, rushing on, which also suggest a torrent of water.)

63.5 Marcus Aurelius: Everything passes.
Thomas Carlyle: We all quickly become insignificant as time passes.
Janet Frame: The concept of tenses is an artificial one.
Hector Berlioz: Age brings wisdom but unfortunately we do not live long enough to be able to make use of that wisdom.

In general the quotations are more powerful because the images they create through their use of metaphor are memorable and convey the ideas much more effectively than a factual statement can.

63.6
1 Jo's worked in the same office for donkey's years.
2 We'll be ready to leave in less than no time.
3 Most of the members of the band may be in their fifties but they're certainly not over the hill.
4 You can argue with him till the cows come home, but he'll never see sense.
5 My grandmother's lived all her born days in the same house. (*Or*: My grandmother's lived in the same house since she was born.)
6 Kit promised he'd get here in a flash and he kept his word.

63.7 *Author's answers:*
1 There are some advantages but I personally think that greater variety is more interesting.
2 I'd happily eat chocolate éclairs till the cows come home.
3 I personally prefer to travel and see more of the world.
4 Have my hair cut!
5 I am more likely to do things I enjoy at a rate of knots and things I am reluctant to do at a snail's pace.

Unit 64

64.1

1 trudged If you strut, you can't have your shoulders hunched. You are also unlikely to be weary.
2 tiptoed If you trudge you are tired and weary and your steps are heavy, so you might well wake someone who is sleeping lightly. A bedroom is also a very small place for someone to trudge across.
3 hobble Ambling is an easy, comfortable kind of walking and so is not appropriate for when someone is wearing tight shoes.
4 limped Stamping is something which you usually do when you are angry and there is no obvious connection between having an accident and stamping.
5 staggered or lurched Striding cannot be unsteady.
6 trample Daisies are too small to be stumbled on.
7 chased Tramped suggests moving slowly and so the dog would then be unlikely to catch the postman. Tramped also suggests too heavy a movement to be appropriate for a little dog as opposed to a big, heavy dog.
8 lurching or staggering It would be extremely difficult to tiptoe if the sea is rough and the ship is moving violently.

64.2 *Possible answers:*

1 It was not at all successful or enjoyable – the verb limped makes that clear.
2 No, it was clearly in difficulties for a few years before it failed totally.
3 People didn't expect her to do as well as she did.
4 No, the government gave the impression of being out of control.
5 She is probably calm, easy-going and relaxed.
6 They destroy or spoil them, for example, by laughing at them.
7 He or she might send them letters reminding them to pay, or they might phone them.

64.3

flowed: moved smoothly, without ceasing
spilled: fell out, in an uncontrolled fashion, starting suddenly and moving in all directions
streamed: a lot of people moving at a fairly constant pace from one direction
pouring: coming all the time, in large numbers, possibly from all directions
trickle: a few people, here and there
meandered: not going in a straight line, no definite purpose
flooding: coming in large numbers, spreading in all directions

64.4 *Possible answers:*

The River Amazon flows into the South Atlantic.
Try not to spill your orange juice on the new white tablecloth.
Tears were streaming down her face.
Janet poured us all a nice cup of tea.
I must fix a new washer on the tap – I can't stand the constant trickle of water.
The river meandered through the valley.
The river often floods at this time of year.

64.5 *Possible answers:*

1 Rudi took his first steps towards becoming a doctor today when he **attended his first lectures at medical school.**
2 **The invention of the printing press** was a very significant step for humankind.
3 Yesterday the British government took the unprecedented step of **recommending the abolition of the monarchy.**

4 It was a big step for me to **decide to hand in my notice.**
5 I think you took a backward step when you **decided to move to the country.**
6 The business took a critical step today when it **floated its shares on the stock market.**

64.6

verb	*type of movement*	*reason for type of movement*
file	lots of people moving in a straight line, one after the other	to control large numbers of people
saunter	relaxed, confident	pleasure
sidle	approaching someone in a slightly sneaky way	intending to do something dishonest or unpleasant in some way
glide	smooth, as if not moving one's feet	to make effortless movement or to make movement seem effortless
mill around	lots of people all moving in different directions	to meet or to talk to different people

64.7
1 Graceful dancers glide.
2 Guests at a cocktail party mill around or mill about.
3 Schoolchildren going into class file into the classroom.
4 Someone who is irritatingly anxious to make you like them might sidle up to you.
5 Tourists exploring in a relaxed way might saunter round a city.

Unit 65

65.1

positive	*negative*
gentlemanly	offhand
ladylike	prissy
	starchy
	strait-laced

65.2
1 code of etiquette
2 elders and betters
3 give up your seat
4 mind your Ps and Qs
5 oil the wheels
6 social graces
7 stand on ceremony
8 the done thing

65.3
1 She might do this because she wants Rob to find her attractive. Perhaps she wants to go out with him.
2 No, he was probably feeling nervous.
3 She didn't like them.
4 He probably flinched because his arm hurt. Perhaps he had recently broken it.
5 It must have been rather surprising or shocking in some way. They were probably swearing.
6 Tanya, because a smirk is not a pleasant smile.
7 No, he was probably not pleased. A titter is rather a weak laugh and more from embarrassment than amusement.

65.4
1 snorted
2 twitch
3 squirm
4 eyelashes
5 flinch
6 sniff

65.5 1 They are all ways of laughing.
2 They are all ways of using the face to indicate displeasure or anger.
3 They are all ways of looking at someone or something.
4 They are all ways of crying.

Unit 66

66.1 *Most likely answers:*
1 noiselessly
2 quiet
3 silent
4 soundlessly (we might normally expect some sound from its wings)
5 silent

66.2 *Possible answers:*
1 Suddenly, a shot rang out. Somebody was firing at the birds on the lake.
2 The door creaked. It was very old, made of oak and difficult to open.
3 The music was pounding through the walls. It was as if the musicians were playing in our bedroom.
4 The chicken sizzled in the frying pan. The sound and the smell made me even more hungry.
5 The rusty door hinges are squeaking. I think they need some oil.
6 She tooted her horn. I looked out of the window and saw her car parked outside.
7 I could hear the waves crashing. It was wonderful to be so near the sea.
8 We heard police sirens wailing. There must have been an accident, or perhaps a robbery.

66.3 1 deafening 2 eerie 3 piercing 4 grating 5 high-pitched

66.4 1 It was so quiet you could have **heard a pin drop**.
2 I've had some noisy, hectic days with all those kids, now I'm looking forward to some **peace and quiet**.
3 Turn that music down! I can't **hear myself think**!
4 I don't even notice that Jack is in the flat sometimes. He's **as quiet as a mouse**.

Unit 67

67.1 1 cumbersome (or unwieldy)
2 ponderous
3 weighty
4 lumbering
5 burdensome
6 cumbersome (or unwieldly)

67.2 *Suggested answers:*

1	lumbering	dinosaur vehicle goods train	3	weighty	encyclopedia topic issue
2	cumbersome	fax machine procedure suitcase	4	ponderous	tone of voice sermon narrative

67.3
1 I weighed **out** a kilo of the flour and then added water to it.
2 He's very irritating. When you're trying to have a rational discussion, he always has to weigh **in** with his own selfish point of view.
3 I owe Gerry £150; it's been weighing **on** my mind for weeks. I must pay him.
4 We were weighed **down** with huge suitcases and bags, and the airport was terribly crowded; it was a nightmare.
5 I have to weigh **up** the various options before I decide which job to accept.

67.4
1 To thin out the customer's hair.
2 thicken: The fog has thickened.
3 It will probably congeal and be difficult to wash out.
4 It means you must add water. You have to dilute it / water it down before using it.
5 You could use a sieve to sift flour to make it less lumpy.
6 No, because insults do not penetrate their consciousness.
7 It is impermeable.
8 The story or argument is so dense you cannot begin to understand it.
9 It lacks complexity and seriousness.
10 thin out: The traffic is thinning out.

Unit 68

68.1
1 jet black, ginger, mousy, chestnut
2 ginger (cat), chestnut (horse), jet black
3 crimson
4 scarlet, crimson, turquoise, shocking pink
5 navy and beige
6 scarlet
7 auburn (this colour is more attractive than 'mousy')
8 pitch black

68.2
1 I think he's going to be sick.
2 Yes, ever since his wife left him.
3 Yes, he can't stand the presenter.
4 Yes, it's not at all clear what we should do.
5 I wonder what they've got against him?
6 No, they make me feel sick.
7 Yes, but they need qualifications.
8 Yes, they want to do their bit for the environment.

68.3 *Possible answers:*

There are some great black and white films on TV on Sunday afternoons. (Note: not white and black.)
He gave me such a black look that I stopped talking immediately.
At last I have received the cheque I was waiting for and our account is in the black again.

It was only a white lie when I told her I loved her new hairdo.
I'd love to go white-water rafting though I know it's quite dangerous.
That shop sells mainly white goods – fridges, cookers and the like.

I wouldn't pay any attention to what they're suggesting – it's only a red herring.
I hate it when my bank account is in the red – they charge so much interest.
Don't talk to him about the present government – it's like a red rag to a bull.

Come and sit next to the fire – you look quite blue with cold.
We were driving along when, out of the blue, another car turned out of a side street and stopped just in front of us.
I'm not very keen on blue cheese.
He likes to imply that he's blue-blooded but really most of his ancestors were farm labourers.

You can't park there – there are double yellow lines.
If you want to find a plumber, look in the Yellow Pages.

Her garden is wonderful – she has green fingers.
It's almost impossible to get permission to build houses in the green belt.
The government has recently published a green paper on the Health Service.

68.4
1 ruby, emerald, jade, amber, sapphire, turquoise, coral
2 magnolia, violet, forget-me-not, cornflower, poppy
3 strawberry, burgundy, lime
4 magnolia, violet, coral
5 *pink/red* – strawberry, ruby, burgundy, poppy, coral
blue – forget-me-not, cornflower, sapphire, turquoise (turquoise could also be classified as green)
green – emerald, lime, jade
other – amber (orangy yellow), violet (light purple), magnolia (creamy white)
6 emerald, turquoise
7 forget-me-not, cornflower
8 a) burgundy b) magnolia c) amber

Unit 69

69.1
1 in a hurry 3 dawdling 5 rocket 7 career 9 to be creeping up
2 speed up 4 a traffic jam 6 totter 8 person who races 10 fast

69.2
1 not pleased
2 not pleased
3 not pleased
4 pleased
5 not pleased
6 not pleased

69.3 1 c 2 b 3 d 4 c 5 b 6 d 7 d 8 b

69.4 They are all one-syllable words. This is appropriate because they sound faster than a longer word and they are all used to convey an idea of speed.

Unit 70

70.1
1 generated (*Produced* is also quite acceptable here, with little difference in meaning, except perhaps that it focuses more on the result, while *generated* focuses more on the process of getting the result.)
2 produce (*Produce* is the most frequent collocation for *list*, but in more formal, technical contexts, *generate* can also be used.)
3 caused (*Brought about* is also possible here.)

4 sparked off / precipitated (*Caused*, *produced* and *provoked* would all also be possible here, but *spark off* and *precipitate* are ideal for things which explode suddenly and violently.)
5 resulted (No other possibilities: *result* collocates with *in*.)
6 given (*Brought* or *provided me with* could also be used with the same meaning here.)
7 provoked (*Caused, produced* and *generated* are also possible, but *provoke* is ideal for negative responses and emotions.)
8 precipitate (*Cause* or *bring about* are also possible here, but would be less dramatic.)

70.2 *Possible answers:*
1 No one knows what **incited** him to commit such a violent crime. (Often used when someone or something makes someone do something wrong.)
2 Your letter has **prompted** me to respond immediately and to offer my apologies. (Used to indicate how something gave someone a reason to act.)
3 The news **induced** a feeling of terror in everybody. (Usually connected with states and emotions, often, but not always, negative ones, e.g. *tiredness*, *despair*.)
4 Poverty **breeds** crime and misery. (Often used with words denoting social problems, e.g. *discontent*, *lawlessness*.)

70.3 *Possible answers:*
1 Owing to / As a result of / As a consequence of the crash on the motorway, all traffic is being severely delayed.
2 We got there in time, thanks to your advice. (*Thanks to* is usually for good results, but can be used ironically/sarcastically for bad things.)
3 My computer crashed, as a result of which I lost all the data. (*Or* more formally: ...crashed, as a consequence of which ... . *Owing to which* is not normally used, and sounds very awkward.)
4 As a consequence of / As a result of one bad decision after another, he's lost all his money.
5 The flight was cancelled due to / owing to bad weather.

70.4 *Possible answers:*
2 The higher taxes **have sparked off** riots in three cities.
3 Icy roads **have caused** a number of serious accidents this week.
4 **Thanks to** a brave bank assistant, two robbers were in jail last night.
5 My old car **has caused me / given me** endless problems and involved me in a lot of expense.
6 This software **can generate** stunning images and graphics.
7 Jealousy **caused** the breakup of his marriage.

Unit 71

71.1 Distinct is followed by **from**. All the others are followed by **to**.

1 dissimilar to
2 tantamount to
3 corresponds to
4 akin to
5 distinct from

71.2 1 between; and
2 with
3 from
4 with

71.3

1 disparate	3 dissimilar	5 divergent
2 diverse	4 distinct	6 discrete

71.4

1 distinct
2 dissimilar
3 discrete
4 divergent
5 disparate
6 diverse

Unit 72

72.1

1 dilemma	3 hardship	5 snag	7 pitfalls
2 glitches	4 ordeal	6 impediment	8 stumbling block

72.2

1 obstructive
2 stiff
3 traumatic
4 abstruse
5 wayward
6 insufferable
7 convoluted (or abstruse)
8 gruelling (or arduous or tough)

72.3

1 into	3 death	5 drag/pain	7 with	9 hook
2 guts	4 hassle	6 fix/spot/hole	8 sticky/tricky	10 woods

Unit 73

73.1

1 Are you going clubbing tonight? You must be joking! I'm much too old.
2 I've just handed in my notice. What, may I ask, was the point of that?
3 The car won't start. Shall I have a look at it?
4 You might find buried treasure. I should be so lucky!
5 I'm afraid I've broken a cup. Don't worry. Accidents will happen.
6 Jane and Joe have just had twins. They must be very happy.
7 Someone's at the door. It'll be the Patels.
8 I only just managed to escape. You must have been terrified.

73.2

1 It is obligatory to put on a life jacket.
2 The odds are (that) Harry'll take over his father's job.
3 If I were in your shoes, I'd apologise to him at once.
4 You have no option but to do what the police officer says.
5 They're bound to settle down eventually.

73.3 *Possible answers:*

1 If I were you, I'd have a haircut before the interview!
2 I hope you'll take this in the spirit in which it is intended, but that skirt is a bit too short for an interview.
3 Let me give you one tip/hint/suggestion: don't forget to make eye contact with the interviewers.
4 It would be sensible to allow plenty of time to get there.
5 It would be wise to make a list of questions you want to ask.

73.4 *Possible answers:*

1 It is essential to arrive at school on time every day.
2 It is compulsory to pay a deposit before you can borrow tapes from the library.
3 Wearing uniform is optional.
4 It is obligatory to wear soft-soled shoes in the sports hall.

73.5

1 anxiety	3 yearning	5 desirous	7 longing
2 determination	4 resolutions	6 eagerness	8 wishful

Unit 74

74.1

1 sighting	5 expenditure
2 rodents	6 per
3 quadrupled	7 sustain
4 quotient	8 factor

74.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 There seems to be a discrepancy between the two reports of the accident.
2 The value of the shares has increased four-fold.
3 Job satisfaction seems to be in inverse proportion to educational achievement.
4 The water levels didn't fluctuate as much as we'd expected last year.
5 I don't need to know all the individual figures – just give me the aggregate.
6 His moods are erratic – one minute he's happy, the next he's depressed.

74.3

1 b
2 a
3 a
4 at least $1,000
5 55
6 the weather forecast or competing companies' advertising campaigns

74.4

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
deviate	deviation	deviant
	discrepancy	discrepant
flaw	flaw	flawed
invert	inversion	inverse
	inconsistency	inconsistent
err	error	erratic

Unit 75

75.1

1 vetoed	5 authorised/endorsed
2 condone/countenance	6 barred/banned
3 acquiesced	7 accede
4 outlaw/ban	8 clamp

75.2

1 give someone carte blanche: carte blanche is French for 'white card'
2 to give the green light: when traffic lights turn green, traffic is allowed to move
3 countenance
4 to give the go-ahead

75.3

1 c An **embargo** means an official prohibition on something. If the prohibition is cancelled, the embargo is **lifted**.
2 a A **franchise** is permission to operate some sort of service or commercial activity, usually for a set period of time.
3 d **Zero-tolerance** means that not even the smallest crime or misbehaviour will be allowed.
4 b **Sanctions** are restrictions on some activity.

Unit 76

76.1 *Possible answers:*

1 Informal. A formal version: *I take great exception to your rudeness!*
2 Formal. An informal version: *You've got to do something about your unfair rules.*
3 Informal. A formal version: *The state of your desk is most unsatisfactory!*
4 Formal. An informal version: *I've just about had enough of the awful station facilities!*
5 Informal. A formal version: *I really must object to your going out in that dress!*
6 Formal. An informal version: *I'm fed up with this behaviour!*

76.2

1 about	3 to	5 done	7 do
2 take/took	4 with	6 wouldn't	8 well

76.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Honestly! I'm fed up with their loud music so late at night!
2 I wish you wouldn't play your music quite so loud after midnight.
3 Most people take considerable exception to being forced to listen to other neighbours' music when they are ready themselves to go to sleep.
4 I'm not at all satisfied about the changes to our working hours.
5 I've just about had enough of working longer hours.
6 I wish to complain in the strongest terms about the changes in our working hours.

76.4 *Possible answers:*

1 We must open the window at once.
2 Jack's work is very careless.
3 Simon is often late for work.
4 You're not suited to this job.
5 This room really needs decorating.
6 The TV must be turned down.

76.5 *Possible answers:*

1 While appearance should not, of course, be a teacher's highest priority, I think that some of you have got into the habit of coming to school dressed in a way that is perhaps a bit too informal to give the right message to our pupils.
2 The portions tend to be a bit too small.
3 The train company would be well advised to lay on a few more trains.
4 You'd really benefit from taking a bit more exercise, darling.

Unit 77

77.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 perfect
2 lame/flimsy/weak
3 flimsy
4 cast-iron/perfect
5 sincere/heartfelt

77.2

1 excuses	3 forgive, forgive
2 repent	4 apologise, apologies

77.3

1 The President granted him a **reprieve** just an hour before he was due to be executed.
2 He was **acquitted** of murder in 1984, but two years later was convicted of armed robbery in the same courtroom.
3 She showed a complete lack of **remorse/repentance** for her evil deeds and just laughed when the judge sentenced her.

4 The Public Inquiry **exonerated** him from all blame for the accident at the factory.
5 Most Christians believe that if you **repent** your bad deeds just before you die, God will forgive you.
6 Ten years after his death, John Wilson was given a **posthumous** pardon by the government when another man confessed to the crime he had been hanged for.

77.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 The two armies **declared/announced/agreed a truce** during the religious holiday.
2 Both governments **agreed/assented** to the terms of **the peace treaty** and it was signed on 15th August, 1954.
3 The long-standing **accord** between the government and the unions is in danger of **collapsing**.
4 The generals **signed the armistice** at midday on 25th February, 1968.

Unit 78

78.1

1 fish	4 to	7 widely/highly
2 singing	5 take, as	8 damning
3 paying	6 shower/heap	

78.2

1 The performers were given a standing ovation.
2 In the speech the new manager paid tribute to his predecessor.
3 They're always extolling the virtues of living in the country.
4 Matt's design earned him the highest plaudits from the judges.
5 The teacher gave Becky a pat on the back for her drawings.
6 The new young Czech player was the toast of the tennis world.

78.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 He's always flattering the boss. (neutral)
He's always licking the boss's boots. (informal)
He's always making up to the boss. (informal)
He's always crawling to the boss. (informal)

2 I wish she wasn't so slimy. (informal)
I wish she wasn't such a crawler. (informal)
I wish she wasn't so servile. (formal)
I wish she wasn't so obsequious. (formal)

78.4

verb	*noun*	*adjective*
compliment	compliment	complimentary
praise	praise	praiseworthy
congratulate	congratulations	congratulatory
laud		laudable, laudatory
flatter	flattery, flatterer	flattering
crawl	crawler	crawling
smarm		smarmy

78.5

1 complimentary (= free)
2 flatterer
3 congratulatory
4 laudable/praiseworthy (Both are possible – laudable is a little more formal.)
5 congratulations

6 Flattery
7 laud/praise (Both are possible – laud is a little more formal.)

Unit 79

79.1
1 b
2 b *Swore*, possibly because of its close associations with taboo language, sounds much less formal than *vowed*.
3 a
4 b Because *New Year's resolutions* is the standard phrase and such resolutions are perhaps best known for being quickly broken, *vow* sounds much more formal.

79.2

1 promised	3 best	5 kept
2 oath	4 flutter	6 life

79.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 Your best bet would be to see a doctor.
2 My mother swears by these herbal teas.
3 John's been rather lazy with his homework but he has promised to turn over a new leaf next year.
4 I could have sworn I locked the door when I went out.
5 The new production of the play promises to be most unusual.
6 I'd put money on the Democratic Party winning the next election.
7 Do you ever have a flutter on the horses?
8 Her mother disliked the film because it contained so many swear words / so much swearing.

79.4
2 Swift is making the point that many people don't take promises seriously. His point is effective because of the comparison of a solemn thing like a promise with such an everyday thing as a piecrust, which is of course intended to be broken. It has to be for the pie to be eaten.
3 Most people probably do agree that making someone promise not to do something may often serve to put the idea of doing it actually into their head!

Unit 80

80.1

1 used	5 rose-tinted
2 schooldays	6 became
3 have	7 must
4 touch/contact	8 stands

80.2
1 I'm disappointed in my results.
2 I rue the day I agreed to go into business with him.
3 I feel a certain remorse for what I said to her.
4 I regret not apologising for what I said.
5 I mourn my lost youth.
6 It's disappointing that we didn't make a go of it.

80.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 getting married	6 shouldn't have spoken
2 films	7 what happened
3 good old	8 forget how (beautiful)
4 didn't invite	9 sorry
5 I'd known then what	10 pity/shame you/I have

80.4 *Author's answers:*

1 I used to do a lot of sport when I was a child.
2 I regret not taking an opportunity to visit Thailand.
3 I'll never forget climbing a mountain and seeing other mountain peaks above the clouds.
4 I keep in touch with several friends I knew at primary school.
5 I know what happened to some but not all of them.
6 What stands out in my mind is how I didn't have anything to worry about then.
7 I feel remorse for some of my actions in the past.
8 I have found a lot of popular films rather disappointing.
9 They often lament lost love, lost youth and the passing of time.

80.5 *Suggested answers:*

1 I regret not buying her a birthday present.
2 I'm disappointed that you won't play the piano for us.
3 I wish he wasn't/weren't so unreliable.
4 I lament the passing/demise of trams in our town.
5 I mourn our lost youth / the passing of time.

Unit 81

81.1

verb	*preposition*
approve	*of*
conform	**to**
tally	**with**
coincide	**with**
concur	**with**
compromise	**on**
be in accord	**with**

1 conforms
2 coincides/tallies
3 concur(red)
4 tally/concur
5 approve
6 accord
7 compromise

81.2 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

81.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 The President has **made a/the concession** that the opposition party should be allowed a place on the committee.
2 I think one should always **exercise/use** as much **discretion** as possible when it is a question of people's private lives.
3 The landowners **reached a settlement in** their dispute with the authorities over the route of the road.
4 The negotiating team were able to **reach a compromise** and put an end to the long strike.

Unit 82

82.1 1 overlap; complements 2 deduce 3 advocates 4 inferred

82.2 1 authoritative 2 empirical 3 ambiguous 4 coherent 5 comprehensive

82.3 1 b
2 They are square numbers and the next two numbers are 49 (7 squared) and 64 (8 squared).
3 James's mark was either the highest or the lowest in the class.

4 c
5 No, she's selecting her subjects in a random fashion.

82.4

1 We believe the information **resides** in archives that must not be opened until 2050.
2 He **conceived** his theory while still a young man.
3 Each of the signs in the phonetic alphabet **denotes** a sound rather than a letter.
4 This study **contradicted** what was previously held to be true and so **triggered** a great deal of discussion amongst specialists in the field.
5 Details of the experiment **are appended** to the report for those who wish to see how we arrived at our data.

82.5

The study was initially **conceived** in order to validate a new method of enquiry **whereby** genetic information could be **utilised** to predict disease. Our work **contradicts** the findings of Hill (2001); indeed it would appear to **demonstrate** the **converse** of what he claimed. We **perceive** our work as presenting a **somewhat** different view of the genetic factors which **trigger** disease.

Notwithstanding, our work does not **negate** Hill's as his studies served the **crucial** purpose of devising symbols to **denote** certain tendencies, **thereby** facilitating further research. We hope that Hill will **likewise** find our work to be valid and that when international researchers **convene** next April, they will concur that much of value **resides** in both our and Hill's studies. Our results are **appended**.

Unit 83

83.1

1 The response from the public **underscores** the importance of having a full investigation of the facts.
2 This view of the world was originally **expounded** by the Ancient Greek philosophers.
3 It is not easy to **account for** the fall in population of these birds.
4 Economists have **posited** a link between exchange rates and a general lack of confidence in the European Union.
5 I should like to **reiterate** here that the issue is not one that can be easily resolved.
6 The recent events **epitomise** the dilemma faced by politicians the world over.

83.2

Suggested answers:

1 70% of the landmass is comprised of mountain ranges. / Mountain ranges comprise 70% of the landmass.
2 The book embraces a wide variety of subjects. (Note that *embrace* is usually used in the active voice.)
3 I think these three sections can all be subsumed under one heading.
4 Poems are not easily amenable to being categorised. / Poems are not easily categorised.

83.3

verb	*noun*
categorise	category
preface	preface
allude to	allusion
cite	citation
reiterate	reiteration
epitomise	epitome /ɪˈpɪtəmɪ/

83.4

1 return
2 brings
3 touches
4 address
5 beyond the scope of
6 ascending
7 forced to conclude
8 deal with

Unit 84

84.1
1 Let me just **jot down** your e-mail address, or I'll forget it.
2 I'll just **scribble** a note for Jim to tell him where we've gone.
3 I spent the whole lesson just **doodling** in the margin of my exercise book, I was so bored.
4 She's been writing **up** her PhD thesis for the last three months, that's why no one has seen her.
5 I'll send you a **draft** of the letter so you can suggest any changes before we send it.

84.2
1 bold
2 upper case
3 italics
4 new font size
5 new typeface
6 lower case
7 block capitals
8 chain (brackets)
9 square (brackets)
10 diamond (brackets)

84.3
2 subtitle
3 chapter heading
4 sub-heading
5 bullet
6 asterisk

84.4 1 typescript 2 format 3 manuscripts 4 paste

Unit 85

85.1
1 make such a big thing = make such a fuss
2 has got a thing about = really likes / is obsessed with
3 The thing is = The problem is
4 things = the situation; get away for a holiday = go on holiday
5 things = subjects/items; get through = deal with
6 get on with = have a good relationship with; For one thing = Firstly; like different things = have different tastes; For another (thing) = In addition / Secondly
7 get = understand; I didn't get a thing = I didn't understand anything
8 get everything sorted out = solve all our problems; got it together = organised things

85.2
1 corkscrew
2 Leonardo DiCaprio
3 protractor
4 pliers
5 colander
6 Leonard Nimoy

85.3
2 Look, isn't that whosit? The actor who was in *Titanic*.
3 I can't find the thingumajig for measuring angles.
4 Have you got a thingy for pulling out nails?
5 Where's the whatsit for draining potatoes?
6 The book is about Leonard whatsisname – the guy who was in that sci-fi series.

85.4 *Possible answers:*

1 We don't need to rush as we have plenty of time.
2 I've invited her out a great many times, but she always makes some excuse.
3 He hasn't done any useful work here since he was first employed by us.
4 I have a large number of papers which I would like to dispose of.
5 Pat invited a great many people to her party at the weekend.
6 Sue possesses a great deal of energy – I don't know where it all comes from!

85.5 1 company 2 included 3 offence 4 mind 5 possible

Unit 86

86.1

1 to bicker
2 without a murmur
3 to lisp (*or* to speak with a lisp, have a lisp)
4 shout, yell, scream (*also* roar, shriek)
5 *roar* is a deeper sound, like a lion; *shriek* is a very high-pitched sound
6 to gossip, to slag (someone) off
7 to wind (someone) up

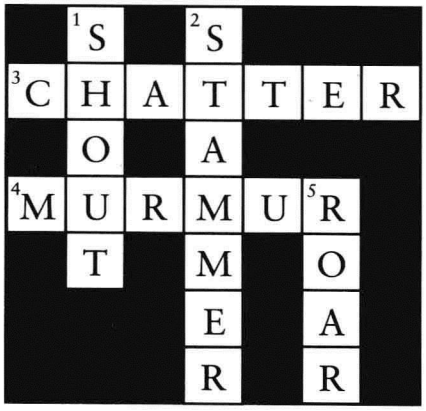
86.2

1 stuttered/stammered
2 tongue-tied
3 mumbling/muttering
4 yell/shout
5 murmured
6 gossip
7 slurring
8 lisp

86.3

1 whining not whineing; whing(e)ing not winging
2 winding me up
3 butter me up, not banter me up
4 nagging, not nigging

86.4



Unit 87

87.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 The company will invest in excess of £10.3 million in new technology over the next five years.
2 It will cost you in the region of / around / about £7,000 to have the whole house redecorated.

3 (informal) It could take seven hours, give or take an hour, to drive to Aberdeen, depending on the traffic. (*or* It could take seven hours or so ...)
(formal) It could take approximately seven hours to drive to Aberdeen, depending on the traffic.
4 Quite a few students failed the exam. I was rather surprised and disappointed.

87.2 1 Her hair's a sort of reddish colour, and I'd say she's, well, forty, forty-fiveish.
Sort of is used here with an adjective, but it can be used with almost any type of word. The *-ish* suffix is used here with a descriptive adjective and a number denoting age, but it is also often used with clock times (e.g. We arrived around half-past sevenish). *Well* is often used to make things less direct.
2 The garden was a bit on the big side, but it was very pretty.
The expression *a bit on the ... side* is used with adjectives to denote a quality that is not what we want or hope for (e.g. The living room was a bit on the dark side, but we bought some new lamps and it was OK).
3 There was a kind of elasticky thing that held the two parts together, and I've lost it.
Kind of and *sort of* can both be used with adjectives and with almost any other word class. Putting the *-y* suffix on a noun or adjective to make it indirect or less precise occurs in informal conversation (e.g. It was a browny colour. It has a kind of acidy taste).
4 They're good shoes. They're comfortable on long walks and that.
And that just means 'and similar things'. It is very informal. Here it is used with a noun, but people often use it with verbs too (e.g. They were singing and that at the party last night).
5 I've been to the doctor's and had treatments and suchlike and I'm sure it helps in one way or another.
And suchlike normally follows a plural noun, but could also be used with an uncountable one (e.g. It'll be useful for your work and suchlike).

87.3 1 oodles/lashings 2 dash 3 lashings 4 smattering 5 dollop

87.4 *Possible answers:*
1 worrying/strange/odd
2 nuisance/pain/problem
3 embarrassing
4 sandwich/snack
5 relax/watch TV/have a sleep
6 souvenirs/pots/jewellery/pictures
7 sightseeing

87.5 1 a thing for measuring spaces, distances, objects or people
2 stuff for cleaning shoes
3 a thing for removing corks from bottles
4 a thing for knocking nails into wood or other materials
5 stuff you don't finish eating at a meal which you can eat later
6 stuff you spread on your body to protect you from the sun

Unit 88

88.1 I always try (1) to make the most of any opportunity to make new friends, such as a party or a social event. But it's not always easy (2) to break the ice, and when you don't know someone, it's so easy (3) to put your foot in it by saying something insensitive or something which unexpectedly (4) rubs someone up the wrong way. But if you (5) keep an eye on what you say, (6) play it by ear and just try to act naturally, it can (7) make all the difference and you may find you (8) stand a good

chance of making a new acquaintance or even a good friend.

1 get the maximum benefit from a situation
2 create a relaxed social atmosphere
3 say or do something socially embarrassing
4 irritates someone
5 be watchful/careful about something
6 don't plan in advance, just see how things go
7 have a very positive effect
8 there is a strong possibility

88.2 1 at 2 under 3 from 4 in 5 on 6 in 7 out

88.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 I hate being (kept) in the dark about things at work.
2 The terrorists killed all the hostages in cold blood.
3 The mountains and ski slopes are on our doorstep; we're so lucky.
4 Out of the blue she received a letter from her long-lost brother.
5 I often find Jane and I are at cross purposes.
6 It looks as if they'll have to start from scratch (again).
7 Keith's been looking under the weather recently, hasn't he?.

88.4 1 nitty-gritty 2 saving grace 3 make-believe 4 long-winded 5 half-hearted

Unit 89

89.1

1 clockwork
2 dream
3 up
4 to plan
5 into place
6 and running

89.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 It's a mystery to me how she can eat so much food and yet stay so slim.
2 The traffic in the city centre is a real nightmare on Saturdays.
3 What a pain! We have to be at the airport at 5.30 a.m.
4 It's the calm before the storm.
5 It was just a storm in a teacup.
6 She asked me a question that completely threw me.
7 This is like a bad dream.
8 Oh no! That's the last thing I wanted to hear!
9 I'm sorry; our wires must have got crossed.
10 I'm sorry; you've lost me there.

89.3

1 to brush something under the carpet
2 at the eleventh hour
3 I can't see the wood for the trees

89.4

1 a (complete/total) shambles
2 a close call/thing
3 as clear as mud
4 muddy the waters

Unit 90

90.1 pleased: 1, 3, 8
displeased: 2, 4, 5, 6, 7

90.2
1 It's no fun spending time with Jez and Sal as they only have **eyes** for each other.
2 Try to solve these problems by using your **grey** matter.
3 Most parents weren't born **yesterday** – they have a good idea of what their kids get up to.
4 Maggie could talk the **hind** legs off a donkey.
5 Mary's on cloud **nine** now she's at university. (*or* Mary's in seventh heaven now she's at university.)
6 They are head over **heels** in love.
7 I haven't the **foggiest** idea what we should do about this letter.
8 Gilly has a soft **spot** for Jim – she's always talking about him.
9 Ruth and Paul **raved about** the play.

90.3

1 dreams	10 clue
2 to	11 heels
3 fire	12 back
4 soft	13 nose
5 mine	14 all
6 element	15 nothing
7 what	16 dumps
8 planks	17 seventh
9 top	

90.4

1 B	4 A
2 A	5 C
3 C	6 B

90.5
1 Amanda **thinks the world of her father.**
2 When I met my penfriend, we immediately **hit it off.**
3 I wanted to keep the present a secret but my little boy **let the cat out of the bag.**
4 Why have the children **been looking as miserable as sin** all evening?
5 If you come round this evening **I'll put you in the picture.**
6 **I've been walking on air** ever since I heard your good news!

Unit 91

91.1 *Possible answers:*
1 You might be pleased to be called 'very much your own person' or 'a dark horse' (as it makes you sound mysterious).
2 You would almost certainly not want to be called 'a soft touch' or 'your own worst enemy'.

91.2
1 went ballistic / blew a fuse / hit the roof/ceiling
2 are full of beans
3 was at a (complete) loss for words
4 (all) at sea
5 was dead on my feet
6 driving me round the bend / driving me crazy / driving me nuts
7 wanted to curl up and die
8 put a brave face on it
9 turns my stomach
10 at the end of my tether

91.3 1 rub 2 loggerheads 3 snake 4 benefit

91.4
1 Aunt Vicky is a soft touch.
2 Mike is a dark horse.
3 Maria's a snake in the grass.
4 He or she is full of beans.
5 She was at a (complete) loss for words.
6 I was all at sea.
7 Helena's in a world of her own.

91.5
1 a rope attached to an animal, keeping it within a fixed piece of land
If you are at the end of your tether, you have gone as far as the rope allows you to go. Obviously this is likely to cause frustration and annoyance.
2 to go into a small ball
If you curl up you look smaller, which is how we wish we looked when we have done something we feel is embarrassing or stupid.
3 a small safety part in an electrical device which causes it to stop working if the electricity is too powerful
The idiom suggests a strong reaction caused by a surge of anger rather than electricity.
4 a valuable stone
Diamonds are very hard and they need to be cut to give them their full beauty – a rough diamond can similarly be a person whose strong qualities are hidden behind a rough exterior.
5 used to refer to a weapon that is shot through the air
The idiom suggests a violent, aggressive reaction like that of a powerful weapon against its enemy.

Unit 92

92.1
1 the blue
2 my own business
3 it in my bones
4 our thumbs
5 as a by-your-leave

92.2
1 to cut a long story short
2 you live and learn
3 it's a small world
4 I lived to tell the tale
5 it just goes to show that ...
6 it was just one of those things

92.3
1 as luck would have it
2 famous last words
3 in next to no time
4 all's well that ends well
5 to crown it all
6 would you believe it

92.4 1 b 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 d

Unit 93

93.1 *Possible answers:*
1 The police asked people to stand back from the injured man.

2 When he was at school, John always used to stand up for his younger brothers in the playground.
3 Michael Porter has decided to stand down from his post as Minister of Defence because of the scandal.
4 I always knew that Laura would stand by me, come what may.
5 The Socialist Workers' Party stands for the rights of the working classes.
6 On my first day as a teacher I had to stand in for a gym teacher who had broken his leg.
7 I would never dream of standing anyone up.
8 Masha is considering standing for the local council in next year's elections.

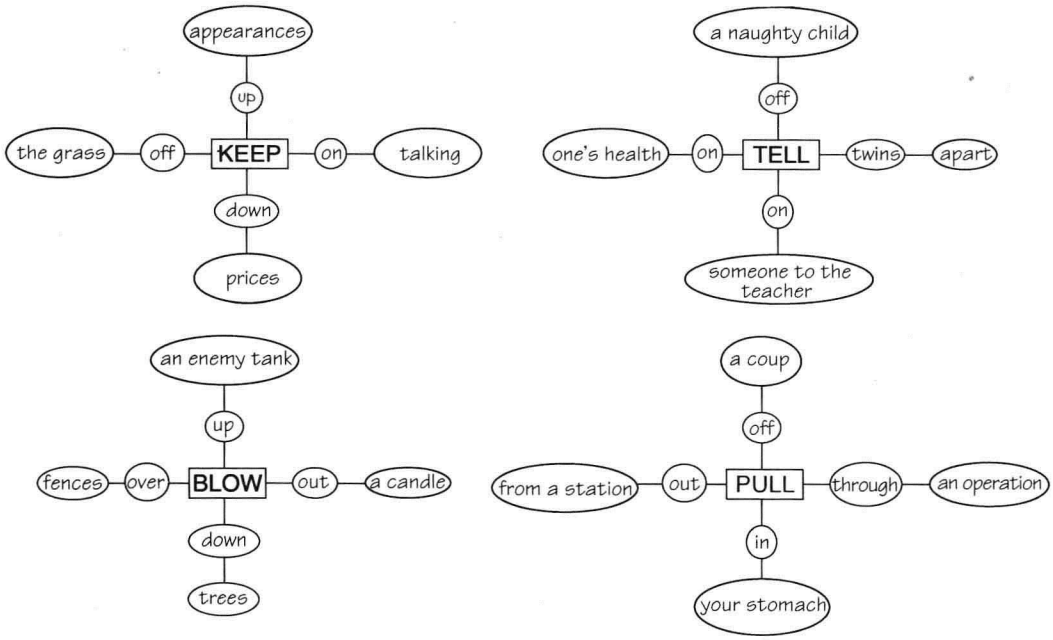
93.2 The letters AA can **stand for** either Automobile Association or Alcoholics Anonymous. [be short for]
I won't **stand for** such behaviour in my house. [tolerate]

93.3

1 out	4 up	7 up	10 up
2 through	5 apart	8 up	11 off
3 on	6 over	9 down	12 on

93.4
1 Please keep off the grass.
2 Sam is going to the dentist to have a tooth pulled out this afternoon.
3 This is such a lovely photo. I'd like to have it blown up and framed for my wall.
4 Rod's going to apply for the job, but the fact that he has so little experience will tell against him.
5 Her idea for a new business is brilliant. I just hope she can pull it off.
6 Do you think that Ken might be keeping something from us?

93.5 *Possible answers:*



93.6 *Suggested answers:*
1 Ron waited an hour for Alice, then he realised she had decided not to come and, furious, went home.
2 You should always support your friends when they are in trouble.
3 You should also defend your principles, even if it makes you unpopular.
4 The house is a little way from the road, so you wouldn't notice it as you drive past.

5 There are three candidates for election in this constituency.
6 The party that I support is in favour of equality and improved social services.
7 I often had to substitute for other teachers who were absent.
8 After ten years as Mayor, Damian Taylor decided it was time to stop putting his name forward for election.

Note that when you change sentences like this, the new sentences do not always have exactly the same meaning or connotation as the original sentence.

Unit 94

94.1

1 sort
2 doze
3 slogging
4 lay
5 pelting
6 cropped
7 stowed
8 stick
9 eased
10 whittling

94.2

1 information provided by a secret informer
2 a sleep
3 people trying to travel illegally by finding a hiding place on some means of transport
4 hard work
5 a number of instances appearing suddenly and at more or less the same time
6 comfort (at ease = comfortable, relaxed)

94.3

1 *to bottle:* to enclose in a bottle. This clearly connects with the idea of bottling up feelings.
2 *to pelt:* to throw something repeatedly in order to attack. This has a clear connection with heavy rainfall.
3 *to step:* to stand. The image in *step on it* is from stepping on the accelerator to make a car go faster and so there is a connection between the basic verb and the phrasal verb.
4 *to stow:* to put something away carefully, neatly and out of sight. It is particularly used about packing things on some means of transport where space is often at a premium.
5 *to crop:* to provide a good crop. This unusual verb is related to the more common noun *crop*. So there is a connection between something growing and something appearing.
6 *to sort:* to organise or classify. The particle *out* really adds very little to the basic meaning of the verb.
7 *to stick:* to fix with glue. So the connection is one of remaining fixed in one place.
8 *to whittle:* to cut or scrape thin slices off wood, typically with a penknife. The connection is thus one of removing slowly but steadily.

Note that sometimes the literal meaning of the basic verb helps you to understand the meaning of the phrasal verb but sometimes the connection is not close enough to give much of a clue to the phrasal verb's meaning.

94.4

1 *down* may have the meaning of:
downward movement (pelt down)
decreasing (dumb down, play down)
2 *off* may have the meaning of:
movement away (doze off, pull it off)
3 *on* may have the meaning of:
touching (step on it)
adding (lay on, catch on)
4 *out* may have the idea of:
completing something (sort out, stick it out)
excluding (bottle out)
5 *up* may have the idea of:
an improvement (ease up)
an upward movement (crop up)

As you encounter new phrasal verbs, see if the prepositions or particles seem to fit these meanings. Some of them will, but some won't. Appreciating the meanings of the particles or prepositions will sometimes help, but not always.

94.5
1 conferenced out: have had enough of conferences
2 rocketed off: rose at great speed
3 tile up: cover with tiles
4 surfed away: occupied themselves on the Internet continuously

Unit 95

95.1
1 As Juan was away he missed out on the fireworks.
2 I've got a temperature and think I may be going down with something.
3 I know you've had a bad day but there's no need to take it out on me.
4 Most students wish that schools would do away with end-of-term exams.
5 It really is time we got round to painting the house.
6 I hope we're not going to fall out with each other over who is going to pay.
7 One of the other waiters has had it in for me ever since I started work in that restaurant.
8 I don't think I can take a lunch break today as I've got to catch up with some work.

95.2

1 cheered	5 lay
2 aback	6 open
3 worked	7 under
4 branch	8 picking

95.3
1 There's no point in trying to talk to your father until he's simmered down.
2 Do you think it would be a good idea to do away with selective education?
3 Sam's father died when he was six and so he missed out on having a male role model at home.
4 When Mr Brown was laid off, the family decided to emigrate to Australia.
5 Emily was carried away by the emotional way in which Richard read the poem.
6 Do you consider that oil prices have now bottomed out?
7 You take life too seriously. Chill out!
8 The newly married couple were bubbling over with happiness.

95.4 The most obvious verbs to include in *Work and business* are:
slog away ease up
The most obvious verbs to include in *Mood and emotions* are:
bottle out stick something out bottle something up

95.5 *To branch out* is based on the metaphor of a tree. It is appropriate because it suggests that the business is growing and spreading out as a tree does.
To be snowed under is based on the metaphor of being covered by snow. It is appropriate because it suggests being buried by work in a way that makes it difficult to escape from it.
To chill out, simmer down and *bubble over* are all based on the temperature of liquid and they are appropriate because they compare being *cool* to being relaxed, being *heated* to being angry (simmer down) and *bubbling over* to excitement. *Bubble over* may also have associations with a glass of champagne or some other fizzy drink bubbling over the edge of the glass. This kind of literal effervescence is also comparable to an excited mood.

Unit 96

96.1
1 American. British version: I lost my way at the big **junction** just south of the city.
2 British. American version: Why are there always so many shopping **carts** left in the **parking lot**?
3 British. American version: Cross the **street** at the **crosswalk**, then **take a left**.
4 American. British version: You can't drive any further; you'll have to **reverse**, the **road** is very narrow.

5 British. American version: You'll see the **gas station** just after the **overpass** on **I-34** (or Highway 26, or some other typical American road designation).
6 American. British version: Once you get on to the **motorway**, it will only take you two hours to get there.
7 American. British version: The book**shop** is **diagonally opposite** the Chinese restaurant.
8 American. British version: There's a **stream** at the end of the **(foot)path**. It's about three miles from here.

96.2
1 dumpster US = skip UK
2 ground US = earth UK
3 frying pan UK = skillet US
4 cooker UK = stove US

96.3 1 hand baggage 2 deplane 3 coach

96.4 1 UK 2 US 3 US 4 UK 5 US

Unit 97

97.1
1 Irish
2 Australian
3 Australian
4 Irish

97.2
1 a dingo
2 the Prime Minister of Ireland
3 the wild land, especially the central deserts of Australia
4 fun / social enjoyment
5 in Ireland
6 in Australia or New Zealand
7 blow into it
8 a person; someone who is not very polite

97.3
1 Chinese Hong Kong word for payment office at a car park
2 Australian word for 'person'
3 Scottish word for 'small'
4 Malaysian word for 'university'
5 Scottish word for a child
6 Canadian word for a public toilet
7 Caribbean word for a godmother
8 Irish word for 'idiot/fool'
9 South African word for flat, open countryside with few trees

Unit 98

98.1
1 To try to make the language less stereotyped with regard to gender and also perhaps to try to alter sexist attitudes in this way.
2 The expression means words that have male connotations but are referring to people in general.
3 There might have been controversy perhaps because some people felt it was an unnecessary change or that it was impossible to try to impose language change artificially.
4 They want to get rid of 'male' words in traditional idioms like *man in the street* by using such phrases as the *person in the street* or the *average person* instead. They even want to get rid of *man* in words like *manhandle* and *woman* where the male idea has really been lost.

5 It was introduced as a title which does not focus on whether a woman is married or not. It is useful if you do not know what a woman's marital status is or if a woman does not want people to know her marital status.

98.2
1 Three **firefighters** helped put out a fire at a disused warehouse last night.
2 A **spokesperson** for the Department of Education provided us with a statement.
3 **Cleaner** wanted for house in Priory Street.
4 The switchboard is continuously **staffed** even during holiday periods.
5 All our **flight attendants** are fluent in at least three languages.
6 Ms Jones is in charge of the **Human Resources** Department of the company.
7 **Police officers** today spend more time in cars than on the beat.
8 Brenda's husband is a **nurse**.
9 It took a great many **working** hours to clean up the stadium after the concert.
10 This was a great step for the **human race**.
11 **The average person** has little time for such issues.
12 They **pushed** the hostage into the van.

98.3 1 mannish 2 sissy 3 virile 4 feminine 5 male

98.4 1–6 personal answers
7 The sentence can be altered by either using *he* or *she*: A government minister may have to neglect his or her family.
Or by making it plural: Government ministers may have to neglect their families.
It is also becoming increasingly common and acceptable for *their* to be used as a generic pronoun with a singular referent, e.g. A government minister may have to neglect their family. Note that some people consider this to be incorrect.
Note that some writers use the pronoun *s/he* instead of *he* or *she*.

Unit 99

99.1
1 chattering classes
2 new money
3 riff-raff
4 stuck-up
5 bourgeois
6 common
7 upper crust
8 oik

99.2
1 The speaker is probably an older person reminiscing – this is suggested by the use of the word *wireless*.
2 The speaker is upper class and older – the meaning of the sentence suggests this as does the use of *one* as a pronoun meaning *we*.
3 The speaker is probably quite old because of the use of *spiffing* and *motor*.
4 This is probably a young person talking to a contemporary – young people tend to abbreviate – *mobile* for *mobile phone*, *uni* for *university*.
5 The speaker is probably working class – the use of 'incorrect' grammar like *we was / we ain't done nothing* is a feature of some working class speech.

99.3
1 idiot
2 friend; difficult situation
3 very rich; die **To be rolling in money** is still used to mean 'very rich' but 'stuff' is a dated piece of slang. **To kick the bucket** is a similar idiom meaning to die which is still in use.

Unit 100

100.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 A bomb explosion in Moscow terrorises the population there.
2 The Prime Minister is going to announce plans for dealing with football hooligans.
3 A high-ranking Member of Parliament is fighting for or trying to achieve something on his own.
4 A strong campaign against pornography has been launched.
5 Violent men surround a teenage star.
6 The police decide to focus on dealing with violently behaved and offensive young men.

100.2

1c use of nudity; use of dramatic words like 'sensation' to attract attention
2b use of familiar name for King (shows either lack of respect or friendly familiarity); colloquial and dramatic expression 'mash-up' for battle
3e alliteration of Marathon Man and Drop-dead Dash; dramatic words and image
4a royalty and scandal – favourite topics for tabloids
5d colloquial expression 'It's curtains for ...' [It's the end for ...]; alliteration of curtains and Corinth

100.3

1g Dracula was a vampire known for drinking blood. **Bad blood** is also an expression used to mean bad feelings between people. There will probably be bad blood between the vicar of Whitby and the people who are making a profit from the Dracula connections of the town.
2e School days are often referred to as the 'happiest days of one's life'.
3b **Shell-shocked** means traumatised or in a state of great shock. It is referring to how soldiers in the trenches in World War I felt after they had been subjected to shells or bombs for a long time. Terrapins and tortoises have shells and they would certainly be shocked (in the medical sense) by falling from such a height.
4a Dentists make impressions of teeth and **false impressions** is a common collocation used to mean incorrect impressions created by a person.
5d This is meant to recall the phrase 'happy hunting'. Haunting, however, is what a ghost does. An apparition is a kind of ghost.
6h **Hopping mad** is a collocation meaning extremely cross. It is appropriate here as toads and frogs hop along the ground. Hopping mad is also no doubt how the police felt when they discovered they had been called out by a toad.
7f A loo is a toilet and toilets flush (= water passes through them). **Flushed** also means to have a pink colour in one's skin because one is happy. It collocates strongly with the phrase 'flushed with success', as the people who have sold the toilet for such a large sum of money are likely to be.
8i **Highly embarrassed** is a collocation meaning extremely embarrassed. It is doubly appropriate here as the man is so high up the tree that he has to be rescued by the fire brigade – certainly an embarrassing situation.
9c Sheepdogs **round up** sheep. Labradors and golden retrievers are kinds of dogs and it is suggested that they should round up the children.

音标表

元音

音标	示例		
/iː/	sleep	me	
/i/	happy	recipe	
/ɪ/	pin	dinner	
/ʊ/	foot	could	pull
/uː/	do	shoe	through
/e/	red	head	said
/ə/	arrive	father	colour
/ɜː/	turn	bird	work
/ɔː/	sort	thought	walk
/æ/	cat	black	
/ʌ/	sun	enough	wonder
/ɒ/	got	watch	sock
/ɑː/	part	heart	laugh
/eɪ/	name	late	aim
/aɪ/	my	idea	time
/ɔɪ/	boy	noise	
/eə/	pair	where	bear
/ɪə/	hear	beer	
/əʊ/	go	home	show
/aʊ/	out	cow	
/ʊə/	pure		

辅音

音标	示例		
/p/	put		
/b/	book		
/t/	take		
/d/	dog		
/k/	car	kick	
/g/	go	guarantee	
/tʃ/	catch	church	
/dʒ/	age	lounge	
/f/	for	cough	
/v/	love	vehicle	
/θ/	thick	path	
/ð/	this	mother	
/s/	since	rice	
/z/	zoo	houses	
/ʃ/	shop	sugar	machine
/ʒ/	pleasure	usual	vision
/h/	hear	hotel	
/m/	make		
/n/	name	now	
/ŋ/	bring		
/l/	look	while	
/r/	road		
/j/	young		
/w/	wear		

索引

索引中的数字是单元号不是页码。

a bit *76*
a- 2
AA /ˌeɪ'eɪ/ *1*
abhor /əb'hɔː/ *17*
abhorrence /əb'hɒrəns/ *17*
abhorrent /əb'hɒrənt/ 17
abject /'æbdʒekt/ *49*
-able *3*
abort /ə'bɔːt/ ii
abortion /ə'bɔːʃən/ *20*
about /ə'baʊt/ *87*
abrogate /'æbrəgeɪt/ *47*
absolute poverty *45*
absolute power *44*
abstruse /əb'struːs/ *72*
abuse power *44*
accede /æk'siːd/ *44, 75*
accelerate /ək'seləreɪt/ *69*
access /'ækses/ *49*
accidents will happen *73*
accommodating /ə'kɒmədeɪtɪŋ/ *39*
accord /ə'kɔːd/ *77, 81*
(go) according to plan *89*
account /ə'kaʊnt/ *27*
account for *83*
-ache *56*
ache /eɪk/ *56*
aches and pains *56*
achieve /ə'tʃiːv/ *49*
achievement /ə'tʃiːvmənt/ *10, 27*
achiever /ə'tʃiːvə/ *8*
acknowledge /ək'nɒlɪdʒ/ *10*
acne /'ækni/ *57*
acorn /'eɪkɔːn/ *36*
acquaintance /ə'kweɪntəns/ *15*
acquiesce /ˌækwi'es/ *75*
acquit /ə'kwɪt/ *77*
acronym /'ækrənɪm/ *1*
acupuncture /'ækjʊpʌŋtʃə/ *56*
acute /ə'kjuːt/ *43*
AD /ˌeɪ'diː/ *1*
ad- 2 *2*
additive-free *3*
address /ə'dres/ *83*
adhere /əd'hɪə/ *41*
adherence /əd'hɪərəns/ *41*
adherent /əd'hɪərənt/ *41*
adjacent 2 /ə'dʒeɪsənt/ *2*
adjoin /ə'dʒɔɪn/ *2*
admit /əd'mɪt/ *73*
advantageous /ˌædvən'teɪdʒəs/ *73*
adversity /əd'vɜːsəti/ *72*
advertisement /əd'vɜːtɪsmənt/ *8*
advisable /əd'vaɪzəbl/ *73*
advocate /'ædvəkeɪt/ *82*
aerial warfare *48*
affection /ə'fekʃən/ *14*
affectionate /ə'fekʃənət/ *14*
affinity /ə'fɪnəti/ *71*
affliction /ə'flɪkʃən/ *72*
AFK *1*
age-related *3*
aggregate /'ægrɪgət/ *74*
agony aunt *51*
agony column *51*
agoraphobia /ˌægərə'fəʊbiə/ *62*
agree to differ *81*
AI /ˌeɪ'aɪ/ *60*
AIDS /eɪdz/ *1*
ailing /'eɪlɪŋ/ *49, 57*
air bag *30*
air hostess *98*
air one's views *54*
akin /ə'kɪn/ *71*
alibi /'ælɪbaɪ/ *77*
alien /'eɪliən/ iv
all his born days *63*
all the rage *22*
all's well that ends well *92*
all-in package *31*
allergic to *56*
alleviate /ə'liːvieɪt/ *49*
alleviation /əˌliːvi'eɪʃən/ *45*
alliteration /əˌlɪtə'reɪʃən/ *53*
allude to 8 *83*
alluring /ə'ljʊərɪŋ/ *53*
ally /'ælaɪ/ *15*
aloof /ə'luːf/ *19*
alphabetical /ˌælfə'betɪkəl/ iii
altruistic /ˌæltru'ɪstɪk/ *13*
amass a fortune *10*
amber /'æmbə/ *5, 68*
ambiguous /æm'bɪgjuəs/ *82*
ambitions /æm'bɪʃənz/ *73*
amble /'æmbl/ *64*
ambulance /'æmbjələns/ *55*
ambush /'æmbʊʃ/ *48*
American-led *3*
amethyst /'æməθɪst/ *68*
amiability /ˌeɪmiə'bɪləti/ *14*
amiable /'eɪmiəbl/ *14*
amnesia /æm'niːziə/ *57*
amphibian /æm'fɪbiən/ *38*
analogue /'ænəlɒg/ *60*
analogy /ə'nælədʒi/ *71*
anarchic /æn'ɑːkɪk/ *41*
anarchy /'ænəki/ *41*
ancestor /'ænsestə/ *33*
and that *87*
Anglo-Saxon /ˌæŋgləʊ'sæksən/ *43*
animal rights activist *37*
animal shelter *37*
annihilate /ə'naɪəleɪt/ *48*
annihilation /əˌnaɪə'leɪʃən/ *48*
annotated 2 /'ænəteɪtɪd/ *2*
annual budget *46*
annul /ə'nʌl/ *47*
-ant *3*
anthology /æn'θɒlədʒi/ *27*
anti-corruption squad *40*
anti-virus software *52*
antipathetic /ˌæntɪpə'θetɪk/ *17*
antipathy /æn'tɪpəθi/ *17*
antisocial /ˌæntɪ'səʊʃəl/ *7*
anxious /'æŋʃəs/ *73*
aperitif /əˌperə'tiːf/ *29*
apex /'eɪpeks/ *31*
apology /ə'pɒlədʒi/ *77*
apothecary /ə'pɒθəkəri/ vii
appalling /ə'pɔːlɪŋ/ iv
apparel /ə'pærəl/ vii
appeal to *46*
appease /ə'piːz/ *16*
append /ə'pend/ *82*
apple of someone's eye *36*
applicant /'æplɪkənt/ *3*
approachable /ə'prəʊtʃəbl/ *19*
(on) approval /ə'pruːvəl/ *9*
approve /ə'pruːv/ *81*
approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətli/ *87*
APR /ˌeɪpi'ɑː/ *50*
arbitrary /'ɑːbɪtrəri/ *82*
arduous /'ɑːdjuəs/ *72*
arid /'ærɪd/ *33, 34*
armistice /'ɑːmɪstɪs/ *77*
armour /'ɑːmə/ *44*
aromatherapy /əˌrəʊmə'θerəpi/ *56*
around /ə'raʊnd/ *87*
article /'ɑːtɪkl/ *11*
artificial intelligence *60*
asap /ˌeɪeseɪ'piː/ *1*
ascending order *83*
ascribe /ə'skraɪb/ *41*
aspirations /ˌæspə'reɪʃənz/ *73*
as quiet as a mouse *66*
assent /ə'sent/ *75*

assess /ə'ses/ *11*
assets /'æsets/ *9*
assiduously /ə'sɪdjuəsli/ *46*
assignment /ə'saɪnmənt/ *11*
assumption /ə'sʌmʃən/ *41*
asterisk /'æstərɪsk/ *84*
astute /ə'stju:t/ *13*
asylum /ə'saɪləm/ vii, *40*
at a glance *39*
atmospheric /ˌætməs'ferɪk/ *42*
attachment /ə'tætʃmənt/ *52*
attribute /ə'trɪbju:t/ *41*
auburn /'ɔ:bən/ *68*
aught /ɔ:t/ iii
Austronesian /ˌɒstrə'ni:ʒən/ *43*
authorise /'ɔ:θəraɪz/ *75*
authoritative /ɔ:'θɒrɪtətɪv/ *82*
auto- *4*
automation /ˌɔ:tə'meɪʃən/ *21*
autonomous /ɔ:'tɒnəməs/ *4*
availability /əˌveɪlə'bɪləti/ *32*, *39*
averse to *17*
aversion /ə'vɜ:ʃən/ *17*
avoidable /ə'vɔɪdəbl/ *3*
award /ə'wɔ:d/ *25*, *47*
award for achievement *10*
awe-inspiring /'ɔ:ɪnspaɪrɪŋ/ *32*
B and B /ˌbi:ən'bi:/ *31*
back copy *54*
(by the) back door *35*
back on your feet *55*
back up *96*
back yard *35*
back-handed /ˌbæk'hændɪd/ *78*
back-seat driver *30*
backlog /'bæklɒg/ *39*
backstairs /ˌbæk'steəz/ *46*
bad blood *91*, *100*
bad language *79*
baggy /'bægi/ *22*
bags of *85*
bairn /beən/ *97*
(go) ballistic /bə'lɪstɪk/ *91*
ballpark figure *74*
bar /bɑ:/ *75*
bargain /'bɑ:gɪn/ *53*
bash /bæʃ/ *24*
basic /'beɪsɪk/ *8*
battle /'bætl/ *48*, *100*
BC /ˌbi:'si:/ *1*
be an item *24*
be associated with *42*
be at death's door *20*
be into *21*
be on bad terms with *15*
be on your last legs *20*
be sick *57*
be someone's guest *29*
be your own boss *31*
beam /bi:m/ *65*
beaut /bju:t/ *97*
become of *80*
bedridden /'bedˌrɪdən/ *3*
bedsit /'bedsɪt/ *1*
bedtime reading *27*
before I knew where I was *92*
begin /bɪ'gɪn/ vii
behind someone's back *15*
behind the wheel *30*
beige /beɪʒ/ *68*
believe something when you see it *41*
bend the law/rules *47*
benefit from *76*
benefit of the doubt *41*, *91*
benefits /'benɪfɪts/ *8*
bequeath /bɪ'kwi:ð/ *20*
bequest /bɪ'kwest/ *20*
bereaved /bɪ'ri:vd/ *20*
berth /bɜ:θ/ *31*
besiege /bɪ'si:dʒ/ *48*, *100*
besotted /bɪ'sɒtɪd/ *14*
best bet *79*
bet /bet/ *79*
better-off /betər'ɒf/ *12*
bi-centenary /ˌbaɪsen'ti:nəri/ *42*
bicker /'bɪkə/ *86*
bid /bɪd/ *9*
bidder /'bɪdə/ *9*
bigot /'bɪgət/ *41*
bigoted /'bɪgətɪd/ *41*
bigotry /'bɪgətri/ *41*
bilingual /baɪ'lɪŋgwəl/ iii
billboard /'bɪlbɔ:d/ *53*
binder /'baɪndə/ *51*
binding /'baɪndɪŋ/ *47*
bio- *4*
biodegradable /ˌbaɪədɪ'greɪdəbl/ *4*
biological warfare *48*
biotechnology /ˌbaɪətek'nɒlədʒi/ *60*
bird sanctuary *37*
(a) bit /bɪt/ *87*
(a) bit of *85*
bite to eat *29*
bite your nails *18*
black /blæk/ viii, *68*
black as thunder *68*
black mark *68*
black market *59*, *68*
black sheep of the family *68*
black tie *29*
black tie event *24*
black-and-white /ˌblækən'waɪt/ *26*
bland /blænd/ *17*
blank /blæŋk/ iv
bleached /bli:tʃt/ ii
(as) blind as a bat *88*
blip /blɪp/ *74*
bliss /blɪs/ *16*
blissful /'blɪsfəl/ *16*
blissfully /'blɪsfəli/ *16*
blissfully happy *16*
blissfully ignorant *16*
blissfully unaware *16*
block capitals *84*
bloke /bləʊk/ vii, *97*
blonde /blɒnd/ ii
(in cold) blood /blʌd/ *88*
blood sports *37*
blow a fuse *91*
blow hot and cold vi
blow out *93*
blow over *93*
blow up *93*
blowy /'bləʊi/ *34*
blue /blu:/ viii, *68*
blue joke *68*
(once in a) blue moon *63*
blue movie *68*
blue-collar /ˌblu:'kɒlə/ *68*
blurb /blɜ:b/ *27*
boast /bəʊst/ *32*
boastful /'bəʊstfəl/ *13*
boiling /'bɔɪlɪŋ/ *34*
bold /bəʊld/ *84*
bolt /bəʊlt/ *69*
bomb /bɒm/ *25*
bond /bɒnd/ *14*
booklet /'bʊklət/ *51*
bookmark /'bʊkmɑ:k/ *52*
boost /bu:st/ *49*
booze-up /'bu:zʌp/ *24*
boreen /bɔ:'ri:n/ *97*
(not) born yesterday *90*
borrowing /'bɒrəʊɪŋ/ *5*, *43*
bosom friend *14*
bottle out *94*
bottle up *94*
bottom out *95*
bounce /baʊns/ *50*, *52*
bound to *73*
bourgeois /'bɔ:ʒwɑ:/ *99*
box /bɒks/ *84*
brackets (chain/diamond/round/square) /'brækɪts/ *84*

(be the) brains behind *90*
branch /brɑːnʃ/ *36*
branch out *36*, *95*
brand loyalty *9*
brash /bræʃ/ *17*
brave face on it *91*
(on the) breadline /'bredlaɪn/ *45*
break down *15*, *54*
break a promise/vow *79*
break out *6*
break the ice *88*
breakout /'breɪkaʊt/ *6*
breast-feed /'bresfiːd/ *57*
breathalyser /'breθəlaɪzə/ *4*, *30*, *40*
breathtaking /'breθˌteɪkɪŋ/ *27*
breed /briːd/ *70*
breeze through *11*
breezy /'briːzi/ *34*
brick wall *35*
bright /braɪt/ vi
brilliant /'brɪliənt/ *96*
bring /brɪŋ/ *83*
bring a bottle *29*
bring about *70*
broad /brɔːd/ iv
broad-minded /ˌbrɔːd'maɪndɪd/ *13*
brochure /'brəʊʃə/ *51*
broke /brəʊk/ *50*
broken home *15*
brolly /'brɒli/ vii
bronchitis /brɒŋ'kaɪtɪs/ *55*
brownie points *78*
browse /braʊz/ *39*, *52*
brunch /brʌnʃ/ *4*
brush under the carpet *89*
brusque /bruːsk/ *29*
BTW *1*
bubble over with *95*
buckets of *85*
bud /bʌd/ *36*
budding /'bʌdɪŋ/ *36*
buddy /'bʌdi/ *14*
budget /'bʌdʒɪt/ *31*, *46*
buffer /'bʌfə/ *58*
bullet /'bʊlɪt/ *84*
bully /'bʊli/ *12*
bump /bʌmp/ *30*
bumpy /'bʌmpi/ *15*
bunged up *56*
burden /'bɜːdən/ *49*
burdensome /'bɜːdənsəm/ *67*
burgundy /'bɜːgəndi/ *68*
bury your head in the sand vi
bury yourself in your books *11*
(the) bush /bʊʃ/ *32*
bush /bʊʃ/ *97*
business /'bɪznɪs/ *10*
business cards *24*
bustling /'bʌslɪŋ/ *62*
butch /bʊtʃ/ *98*
butter someone up *86*
by heart *11*
cabin /'kæbɪn/ *31*
Caesarean section *20*
calcium-rich *3*
calm before the storm *89*
calming /'kɑːmɪŋ/ *21*
calorie knowledge *29*
campaign /kæm'peɪn/ vi, *48*
can't possibly do *76*
can't put down *27*
cancel /'kænsəl/ *49*
cancellation fee *31*
(skin/lung/breast) cancer /'kænsə/ *55*
cap/crown it all *92*
capital assets *9*
capitals /'kæpɪtəlz/ *84*
carbon dioxide emissions *38*
cardiac arrest *57*
cardiovascular /ˌkɑːdiəʊ'væskjʊlə/ *58*
career /kə'rɪə/ *8*, *69*
career ladder *24*
career-minded *3*
carnivore /'kɑːnɪvɔː/ *37*
carnivorous /kɑː'nɪvərəs/ *37*
carried away *95*
carry out *11*
carry the scars of *57*
carry-on baggage *96*
cart /kɑːt/ *44*, *96*
(put the) cart before the horse *44*
carte blanche /ˌkɑːt'blɑːnʃ/ *75*
cast-iron /ˌkɑːst'aɪən/ *77*
casual /'kæʒjʊəl/ *15*
(look like the) cat that got the cream *90*
catch on *22*, *94*
catch up on iii
catch up with iii, *95*
categorise /'kætəgəraɪz/ *83*
causal /'kɔːzəl/ *48*
cause /kɔːz/ *48*, *70*
cavalry /'kævəlri/ *44*
CD-ROM /ˌsiːdiː'rɒm/ iii
ceasefire /'siːsfaɪə/ *48*
cedilla /sə'dɪlə/ *43*
ceiling /'siːlɪŋ/ *35*
celebrate /'seləbreɪt/ *42*
celebrations /ˌselə'breɪʃənz/ *42*
celebratory /ˌselə'breɪtəri/ *42*
Celtic /'keltɪk/ *43*
cement /sɪ'ment/ *35*
centenary /sen'tiːnəri/ *42*
center /'sentə/ iii
centralisation /ˌsentrəlaɪ'zeɪʃən/ *46*
centralised /'sentrəlaɪzd/ *46*
centre /'sentə/ iii
cereal /'sɪəriəl/ *33*
cereal bar *28*
ceremonial /ˌserɪ'məʊniəl/ *42*
ceremony /'serɪməni/ *42*
certain /'sɜːtən/ *73*
ch *1*
chalet /'ʃæleɪ/ *31*
challenging /'tʃælɪndʒɪŋ/ *26*
champagne /ʃæm'peɪn/ *68*
Chancellor of the Exchequer *46*
chances /'tʃɑːnsɪz/ *73*
chapter heading *84*
character /'kærəktə/ *43*
charge card *50*
charge something to a credit card *50*
chariot /'tʃæriət/ *44*
charter flight 3 *31*
chase /tʃeɪs/ *64*
chat room *52*
chatter /'tʃætə/ *86*
chattering classes *99*
chauvinistic /ˌʃəʊvɪ'nɪstɪk/ *13*
check out iv
cheer up *95*
chestnut /'tʃesnʌt/ *68*
chief executive *10*
child labour *59*
Child Poverty Action Group *46*
children /'tʃɪldrən/ vii
chill out *95*
chilling /'tʃɪlɪŋ/ *27*
chilly /'tʃɪli/ *34*, *76*
chiropractic /ˌkaɪrə'præktɪk/ *56*
chocolate /'tʃɒkələt/ *68*
cholera /'kɒlərə/ *55*
cholesterol /kə'lestərɒl/ *58*
chortle /'tʃɔːtl/ *65*
chronicle /'krɒnɪkl/ *27*
chuck it down *34*
chummy /'tʃʌmi/ *24*
Chunnel /'tʃʌnəl/ *4*
circumflex /'sɜːkəmfleks/ *43*
cite /saɪt/ *83*
civil /'sɪvəl/ *20*, *47*
civil servant *46*

Civil Service *46*
claimant /'kleɪmənt/ *3*
clammy /'klæmi/ *34*
clamp /klæmp/ *30*
clamp down on *75*
clampdown /'klæmpdaʊn/ *75*
class-conscious *3*
classical /'klæsɪkəl/ *5*
classified ad *51*
claustrophobia /ˌklɔːstrə'fəʊbiə/ *62*
clean up your own back yard *35*
cleaner /'kliːnə/ *98*
cleaning lady *98*
(in the) clear /klɪə/ *72*
(as) clear as mud *89*
clear customs *40*
clench your fist *18*
climate /'klaɪmət/ *34*, *38*
climatic /klaɪ'mætɪk/ *38*
climax /'klaɪmæks/ *46*
climb the career ladder *24*
clinic /'klɪnɪk/ *55*
clique /kliːk/ *24*
cliquey /'kliːki/ *24*
cloak-and-dagger /ˌkləʊkən'dægə/ *22*
clobber /'klɒbə/ vii
clock in *7*
clock out *7*
(go/run like) clockwork /'klɒkwɜːk/ *89*
clog /klɒg/ *58*
cloning /'kləʊnɪŋ/ *61*
close /kləʊz/ *34*
close call/thing *89*
close doors *35*
close the door on *35*
close-knit /ˌkləʊs'nɪt/ *46*
clot /klɒt/ *57*
clothes /kləʊðz/ vii
clothing /'kləʊðɪŋ/ vii
(on) cloud nine *90*
cloud your judgement *34*
(in) clover /'kləʊvə/ *36*
club /klʌb/ *31*
(go) clubbing /'klʌbɪŋ/ *24*
(haven't a) clue /kluː/ *90*
clumsy /'klʌmzi/ *26*
coach class *96*
cognate /'kɒgneɪt/ iii
coherent /kəʊ'hɪərənt/ *82*
coincide /ˌkəʊɪn'saɪd/ *81*
cold-calling /'kəʊldkɔːlɪŋ/ *9*
collision /kə'lɪʒən/ *30*
collocation /ˌkɒlə'keɪʃən/ ii
colourful /'kʌləfəl/ *26*
colourless /'kʌlələs/ ii
column inch *54*
com- *2*
come down with *55*, *95*
come under the hammer *9*
commemorate /kə'meməreɪt/ *42*
commiserate 2 /kə'mɪzəreɪt/ *2*
commit /kə'mɪt/ *47*
common /'kɒmən/ *99*
communicate /kə'mjuːnɪkeɪt/ *10*
community-led *3*
compact /kɒm'pækt/ *62*
compatible /kəm'pætɪbl/ *52*
compelling /kəm'pelɪŋ/ *27*
compendium /kəm'pendiəm/ *27*
complain about *76*
complaint /kəm'pleɪnt/ *76*
complaints /kəm'pleɪnts/ *39*
complement /'kɒmplɪmənt/ *82*
complete /kəm'pliːt/ ii
complete and unswerving *15*
complex /'kɒmpleks/ *72*
compliment /'kɒmplɪmənt/ *78*
composition /ˌkɒmpə'zɪʃən/ *11*
compound /'kɒmpaʊnd/ *43*
comprehensive /ˌkɒmprɪ'hensɪv/ *82*
comprehensive schooling *12*
comprise /kəm'praɪz/ *83*
compromise /'kɒmprəmaɪz/ *9*, *81*
compulsive /kəm'pʌlsɪv/ *27*
compulsory /kəm'pʌlsəri/ *73*
computer nerd *60*
con- *2*
concede /kən'siːd/ *46*
conceit /kən'siːt/ *19*
conceited /kən'siːtɪd/ *19*
conceitedness /kən'siːtɪdnəs/ *19*
conceive /kən'siːv/ *20*, *82*
conception /kən'sepʃən/ *20*
concession /kən'seʃən/ *81*
conciliate /kən'sɪlieɪt/ *16*
conclude /kən'kluːd/ ii, *83*
concur /kən'kɜː/ *81*
condolences /kən'dəʊlənsɪz/ *2*
condone /kən'dəʊn/ *75*
conduct business *10*
confess /kən'fes/ *73*
conform /kən'fɔːm/ *81*
confusion marketing *9*
congeal /kən'dʒiːl/ *2*, *67*
congested /kən'dʒestɪd/ *62*
congress /'kɒŋgres/ *4*
coniferous /kə'nɪfərəs/ *33*
conk out *30*
connoisseur /ˌkɒnə'sɜː/ *31*
connotation /ˌkɒnə'teɪʃən/ ii, viii
conscientious /ˌkɒnʃi'enʃəs/ *19*
-conscious *3*
consciousness /'kɒnʃəsnəs/ *41*
consequence /'kɒnsɪkwəns/ *5*
(as a) consequence of *70*
conservation /ˌkɒnsə'veɪʃən/ *38*
conservative /kən'sɜːvətɪv/ *74*
conserve /kən'sɜːv/ *41*
considerate /kən'sɪdərət/ *14*
consideration /kənˌsɪdər'eɪʃən/ *14*
constituency /kən'stɪtjuənsi/ *46*
constituent /kən'stɪtjuənt/ *46*
consultant /kən'sʌltənt/ *55*
consumer /kən'sjuːmə/ *46*
consumption /kən'sʌmʃən/ vii, *46*
contact lenses *56*
contaminate /kən'tæmɪneɪt/ *2*
contented /kən'tentɪd/ *15*
contents /'kɒntents/ *84*
contestant /kən'testənt/ *3*
continental /ˌkɒntɪ'nentəl/ *34*
continually /kən'tɪnjuəli/ *6*
continuing education *12*
continuously /kən'tɪnjuəsli/ *6*
continuum /kən'tɪnjuəm/ *74*
contradict /ˌkɒntrə'dɪkt/ *82*
contravene /ˌkɒntrə'viːn/ *47*
convene /kən'viːn/ *82*
converse (adj.) /'kɒnvɜːs/ *82*
converse (v.) /kɒn'vɜːs/ vii, *2*
conversion /kən'vɜːʃən/ *41*
convert /'kɒnvɜːt/ *41*
convincing /kən'vɪnsɪŋ/ *77*
convoluted /'kɒnvəluːtɪd/ *72*
convulsion /kən'vʌlʃən/ *57*
cooker /'kʊkə/ *96*
cookie /'kʊki/ *52*
cool /kuːl/ *96*, *99*
cop /kɒp/ vii
copy /'kɒpi/ *54*
copy out *84*
copyright infringement *59*
coral /'kɒrəl/ *68*
cordially /'kɔːdiəli/ *29*
cornflower /'kɔːnflaʊə/ *68*
corporate /'kɔːpərət/ *46*
corporation /ˌkɔːpər'eɪʃən/ *46*
corpulent /'kɔːpjʊlənt/ *18*
correlate /'kɒrəleɪt/ *74*
correlation /ˌkɒrə'leɪʃən/ *74*
correspond /ˌkɒrɪ'spɒnd/ *71*
cost-cutting /'kɒstkʌtɪŋ/ *59*
costly /'kɒstli/ *3*

cosy /ˈkəʊzi/ *31*
cot /kɒt/ *5*
couch potato *21*, *36*
council housing *23*
count the calories *29*
countenance /ˈkaʊntənəns/ *75*
counter /ˈkaʊntə/ *46*
courteous /ˈkɜːtiəs/ *29*
courtesy /ˈkɜːtəsi/ *65*
covet /ˈkʌvɪt/ *16*
cowboy /ˈkaʊbɔɪ/ viii
crackdown /ˈrækdaʊn/ *100*
craic /kræk/ *97*
cram /kræm/ *11*, *62*
cramped /kræmpt/ *62*
crash /kræʃ/ *66*
crave /kreɪv/ *16*
crawl /krɔːl/ *69*, *78*
(pub) crawl /krɔːl/ *24*
crawler /ˈkrɔːlə/ *78*
creak /kriːk/ *66*
create a climate of *34*
credence /ˈkriːdəns/ *41*
(add/give/lend) credence to *41*
credentials /krɪˈdenʃəlz/ *38*
credible /ˈkredəbl/ *41*
credit card *50*
credit card fraud *50*
credulous /ˈkredjʊləs/ *41*
creek /kriːk/ *96*
creep /kriːp/ *69*
cremation /krɪˈmeɪʃən/ *20*
crime-ridden *3*
criminology /ˌkrɪmɪˈnɒlədʒi/ *4*
crimson /ˈkrɪmzən/ *68*
critical /ˈkrɪtɪkəl/ *15*
crop up *94*
cross your legs *18*
cross- 2
cross-border 2
cross-cultural 2
crossing /ˈkrɒsɪŋ/ *31*
crossroads /ˈkrɒsrəʊdz/ *30*
crosswalk /ˈkrɒswɔːk/ *96*
crowded /ˈkraʊdɪd/ *62*
crucial /ˈkruːʃəl/ *82*
cruise /kruːz/ *31*
crush /krʌʃ/ *100*
cubist /ˈkjuːbɪst/ *26*
cul-de-sac /ˈkʌldəsæk/ *30*
culture-vulture /ˈkʌltʃəˌvʌltʃə/ *21*
cumbersome /ˈkʌmbəsəm/ *67*
cunning /ˈkʌnɪŋ/ *13*
(want to) curl up and die *91*
curriculum reform *12*
custody /ˈkʌstədi/ *47*
customs /ˈkʌstəmz/ *40*
customs declaration form *40*
cut a long story short *92*
cut and paste /ˌkʌtənˈpeɪst/ *84*
cuts and bruises *56*
cutting /ˈkʌtɪŋ/ *54*
cyber- *4*
cybercafé /ˈsaɪbəˌkæfeɪ/ *4*
d/g *1*
dabbler /ˈdæblə/ *21*
damn with faint praise *78*
damp /dæmp/ *6*
dampen /ˈdæmpən/ *3*
damsel /ˈdæmzəl/ vii
danger /ˈdeɪndʒə/ *100*
(in the) dark /dɑːk/ *88*
dark deeds *100*
dark horse *91*
darken /ˈdɑːkən/ *3*
dart /dɑːt/ *69*
dash /dæʃ/ *69*
dash of *87*
date back to *42*
dawdle /ˈdɔːdl/ *69*
dazzling /ˈdæzlɪŋ/ *26*
de- *4*
dead end *30*
dead on my feet *91*
dead-end job *7*
deadline /ˈdedlaɪn/ *7*, *10*, *11*, *54*
deafening /ˈdefənɪŋ/ *66*
deal /diːl/ *9*, *10*
deal with *83*
dearly /ˈdɪəli/ *3*
debt servicing *45*
debtor /ˈdetə/ *49*
deceased /dɪˈsiːst/ *20*
deciduous /dɪˈsɪdjʊəs/ *33*
deck /dek/ *31*
declaration form *40*
decline /dɪˈklaɪn/ *49*
decolonise /ˌdiːˈkɒlənaɪz/ *4*
deduce /dɪˈdjuːs/ *82*
deem /diːm/ *26*
deep /diːp/ *49*
deeply /ˈdiːpli/ *15*
defamation of character *54*
default on a payment *10*
deforestation /diːˌfɒrɪˈsteɪʃən/ *38*
defuse /ˌdiːˈfjuːz/ *16*
dehydration /ˌdiːhaɪˈdreɪʃən/ *57*
delete /dɪˈliːt/ *52*
deliver /dɪˈlɪvə/ *20*
delivery /dɪˈlɪvəri/ *20*
deluge /ˈdeljuːdʒ/ *34*
deluxe /dəˈlʌks/ *31*
demographic projection *38*
demography /dɪˈmɒgrəfi/ *38*
demonstrate /ˈdemənstreɪt/ *82*
demote /dɪˈməʊt/ *8*
denote /dɪˈnəʊt/ *82*
depict /dɪˈpɪkt/ *26*
deplane /ˌdiːˈpleɪn/ *96*
depose /dɪˈpəʊz/ *44*
depress /dɪˈpres/ *12*
depressed /dɪˈprest/ iv
deprived /dɪˈpraɪvd/ *45*
deputation /ˌdepjəˈteɪʃən/ *46*
derivative /dɪˈrɪvətɪv/ *28*
derive /dɪˈraɪv/ *41*
descendant /dɪˈsendənt/ *33*
descended from *33*
descending order *83*
designer baby *61*
designer (label) clothes *22*
desire /dɪˈzaɪə/ *73*
desktop /ˈdesktɒp/ *60*
desktop publishing *51*
destitute /ˈdestɪtjuːt/ *45*
detail /ˈdiːteɪl/ iv
deter /dɪˈtɜː/ *48*
determined /dɪˈtɜːmɪnd/ *73*
deterrent /dɪˈterənt/ *48*
detractor /dɪˈtræktə/ *26*
devaluation /ˌdiːvæljuˈeɪʃən/ *49*
development /dɪˈveləpmənt/ *49*
development grant *49*
deviate /ˈdiːvieɪt/ *74*, *82*
devoted /dɪˈvəʊtɪd/ *14*
devotion /dɪˈvəʊʃən/ *14*
diabetes /ˌdaɪəˈbiːtiːz/ *55*
diabetic /ˌdaɪəˈbetɪk/ *58*
diagnose /ˈdaɪəgnəʊz/ *57*
diamond /ˈdaɪəmənd/ viii
diaper /ˈdaɪpə/ iii
diary /ˈdaɪəri/ *21*
didgeridoo /ˌdɪdʒəriˈduː/ *97*
die of/from *55*
die of a broken heart *15*
dietary requirements *29*
diffident /ˈdɪfɪdənt/ *19*
dig up *36*
digital technology *60*
dilemma /dɪˈlemə/ *72*
diligent /ˈdɪlɪdʒənt/ *13*
dilute /daɪˈluːt/ *28*, *67*
dim /dɪm/ vi
dingo /ˈdɪŋgəʊ/ *97*
dinner party *29*

diphthong /'dɪfθɒŋ/ *43*
disappointed /ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/ *80*
disappointing /ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/ *80*
discerning /dɪ'sɜ:nɪŋ/ *32*
discontent /ˌdɪskən'tent/ *36*
discontinue /ˌdɪskən'tɪnju:/ ii
discord /'dɪskɔ:d/ *15*, *81*
discrepancy /dɪ'skrepənsi/ *74*
discrete /dɪ'skri:t/ *71*
discretion /dɪ'skreʃən/ *81*
discretionary /dɪ'skreʃənəri/ *47*
discriminate *47*
discrimination /dɪˌskrɪmɪ'neɪʃən/ *47*
disdain /dɪs'deɪn/ *19*
disdainful /dɪs'deɪnfəl/ *19*
disease /dɪ'zi:z/ *55*
disease-resistant *60*
disembark /ˌdɪsɪm'bɑ:k/ *96*
disgrace /dɪs'greɪs/ *80*
disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ iv
dishonest /dɪ'sɒnɪst/ *15*
disjointed /dɪs'dʒɔɪntɪd/ *25*
disloyal /dɪ'slɔɪəl/ *15*
disloyalty /dɪ'slɔɪəlti/ *15*
dismal /'dɪzməl/ iv
disparate /'dɪspərət/ *71*
dispatch /dɪ'spætʃ/ *39*
disposable /dɪ'spəʊzəbl/ *3*
disposition /ˌdɪspə'zɪʃən/ *34*
dissent /dɪ'sent/ *81*
dissertation /ˌdɪsə'teɪʃən/ *11*
dissimilar /ˌdɪs'sɪmɪlə/ iii, *71*
distant /'dɪstənt/ *3*
distasteful /dɪ'steɪstfəl/ iv
distinct /dɪ'stɪŋkt/ *71*
distort /dɪ'stɔ:t/ *82*
divergent /daɪ'vɜ:dʒənt/ *71*
diverse /daɪ'vɜ:s/ *8*, *43*, *71*
divert /daɪ'vɜ:t/ *30*
division /dɪ'vɪʒən/ *81*
dizzy /'dɪzi/ *56*
DNA /ˌdi:en'eɪ/ *28*
do /du:/ *24*
do away with *95*
do lunch *24*
do out *6*
docile /'dəʊsaɪl/ *37*
doctor /'dɒktə/ *55*
docusoap /'dɒkju:səʊp/ *4*
doer /'du:ə/ *21*
dog's life *23*
dogged *13*
dollop of *87*
domesticated /də'mestɪkeɪtɪd/ *37*
don't count your chickens before they are hatched *88*
donate blood *56*
donkey's years *63*
doodle /'du:dl/ *84*
doomsday scenario *61*
door, *expressions with* /dɔ:/ *35*
dosage /'dəʊsɪdʒ/ *56*
dotcom /ˌdɒt'kɒm/ *52*
double chin *18*
double-edged /ˌdʌbl'edʒd/ *78*
dowdy /'daʊdi/ *17*
down in the dumps *90*
down in the mouth *90*
downfall /'daʊnfɔ:l/ *13*
download /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd/ *52*
downpour /'daʊnpɔ:/ *34*
doze off *94*
draft /drɑ:ft/ *11*, *84*
(what a) drag /dræg/ *72*
draw attention to *51*
draw the line at *88*
(like a bad) dream /dri:m/ *89*
dreary /'drɪəri/ *26*
dress /dres/ vii
dress code *22*
dress down *22*
dressed to kill *22*
dressy /'dresi/ *22*
drift along *31*
drill /drɪl/ v
drink driving *30*
drink on the house *23*
drink-driving /ˌdrɪŋk'draɪvɪŋ/ *40*
drive /draɪv/ *8*
drive someone crazy/nuts / round the bend *91*
drop out *11*
drop someone *24*
drought /draʊt/ *33*
drug /drʌg/ *57*
drug squad *40*
due to *70*
dumb down *26*, *94*
dumpster /'dʌmpstə/ *96*
dynamic /daɪ'næmɪk/ *8*
déjà vu /ˌdeɪʒɑ: 'vu:/ *92*
e- *2*
e-book /'i:bʊk/ *52*
e-commerce /i:'kɒmɜ:s/ *52*, *61*
e-enabled /i:ɪn'eɪbld/ *52*
e-learning /'i:lɜ:nɪŋ/ *52*
e-signature /'i:sɪgnətʃə/ *52*
eager /'i:gə/ *8*, *73*
earn plaudits *78*
earnest /'ɜ:nɪst/ *26*
earnings-led *3*
earth /ɜ:θ/ *96*
ease /i:z/ *49*
ease up *94*
(have someone) eat out of the palm of your hand *91*
eco-tourism /ˌi:kəʊ'tʊərɪzəm/ *32*
ecological balance *38*
economic growth *49*
economic migrant *40*
economy class *96*
ectopic pregnancy *20*
editorial /ˌedɪ'tɔ:riəl/ *51*
educational ladder *12*
eejit /'i:dʒɪt/ *97*
eerie /'ɪəri/ *66*
effeminate /ɪ'femɪnət/ *98*
effusive /ɪ'fju:sɪv/ *19*
e.g. /ˌi:'dʒi:/ *1*
egalitarianism /ɪˌgælɪ'teərɪənɪzəm/ *41*
egg on *97*
ejected /ɪ'dʒektɪd/ *2*
elders and betters *65*
electric /ɪ'lektrɪk/ *68*
(in your) element /'elɪmənt/ *90*
elevation /ˌelɪ'veɪʃən/ *34*
(at the) eleventh hour *89*
elitism /ɪ'li:tɪzəm/ *12*
embargo /ɪm'bɑ:gəʊ/ *49*, *75*
embezzle /ɪm'bezl/ *47*
embezzlement /ɪm'bezlmənt/ *47*
embezzler /ɪm'bezlə/ *47*
embrace /ɪm'breɪs/ *83*
emerald /'emərəld/ *68*
emerge from *49*
emigrant /'emɪgrənt/ *33*
emitted /ɪ'mɪtɪd/ *2*
empirical /ɪm'pɪrɪkəl/ *82*
empower /ɪm'paʊə/ *48*
-en *3*
encircle /ɪn'sɜ:kl/ *46*
encore /'ɒŋkɔ:/ *25*
encourage /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ *49*
end /end/ ii
(be at the) end of your tether *91*
end up *6*, *80*
endangered species *38*
endorse /ɪn'dɔ:s/ *75*
endorsement /ɪn'dɔ:smənt/ *75*
endowment /ɪn'daʊmənt/ *50*
(gain your) ends /endz/ *48*
enigmatic /ˌenɪg'mætɪk/ *27*
enrich /ɪn'rɪtʃ/ *5*

ensure /ɪn'ʃɔ:/ vii
entrepreneurship /ˌɒntrəprə'nɜ:ʃɪp/ *9*
entry restrictions *40*
epitomise /ɪ'pɪtəmaɪz/ *83*
equality /ɪ'kwɒlətɪ/ *41*
equality of opportunity *12*
equate /ɪ'kweɪt/ *71*
eradicate /ɪ'rædɪkeɪt/ *41*
ergonomics /ˌɜ:gə'nɒmɪks/ *60*
err on the side of caution *74*
erratic /ɪ'rætɪk/ *74*
escape the crowd *32*
-esque *3*
essay /'eseɪ/ *11*
essential /ɪ'senʃəl/ *73*
EST /ˌi:es'ti:/ *1*
etiquette /'etɪket/ *65*
EU /ˌi:'ju:/ *1*
evergreen /'evəgri:n/ *33*
every likelihood *73*
every little helps *88*
evocative /ɪ'vɒkətɪv/ *26*, *27*
evoke /ɪ'vəʊk/ *42*
excel /ɪk'sel/ *12*
excess /ɪk'ses/ *50*
(in) excess of *87*
excessive /ɪk'sesɪv/ *62*
exchange (business) cards *24*
excitability /ɪkˌsaɪtə'bɪlətɪ/ *19*
excitable /ɪk'saɪtəbl/ *19*
excl *1*
exclusive /ɪks'klu:sɪv/ *54*
excrement /'ekskrəmənt/ *57*
excrete /ɪk'skri:t/ *58*
excursion /ɪk'skɜ:ʃən/ *32*
excuse /ɪk'skju:s/ *77*
executive /ɪg'zekjətɪv/ *10*, *31*
exercise discretion *81*
exert /ɪg'zɜ:t/ *38*
exhaust emissions *30*
exhilarating /ɪg'zɪləreɪtɪŋ/ *31*
exonerate /ɪg'zɒnəreɪt/ *77*
exotic /ɪg'zɒtɪk/ *31*
expedient /ɪk'spi:dɪənt/ *73*
expenditure /ɪk'spendɪtʃə/ *74*
expire /ɪk'spaɪə/ *10*, *50*
expiry /ɪk'spaɪrɪ/ *10*
expose /ɪk'spəʊz/ *51*
expound /ɪk'spaʊnd/ *83*
exquisite /ɪk'skwɪzɪt/ *26*
extensive /ɪk'stensɪv/ *62*
extol the virtues/benefits of *78*
extraterrestrial being *61*
extrovert /'ekstrəvɜ:t/ *19*
exultant /ɪg'zʌltənt/ *16*
eyeglass /'aɪglɑ:s/ vii
f/f *1*
facsimile /fæk'sɪməlɪ/ *51*
factor /'fæktə/ *10*, *74*
fad /fæd/ *26*
fade /feɪd/ *36*
fair /feə/ ii, v
Fair Trade *28*
faith /feɪθ/ *14*
faithful /'feɪθfəl/ *14*
faithfulness /'feɪθfəlnəs/ *14*
fall /fɔ:l/ *42*
fall behind *11*
fall from power *44*
fall head over heels in love *14*, *90*
fall into place *89*
fall out with *95*
fallopian tubes *20*
false /fɒls/ iv, *77*
false friend iii, *5*
false impression *100*
family doctor *55*
family ties *14*
famous last words *92*
fanatic /fə'nætɪk/ *41*
fanatical /fə'nætɪkəl/ *41*
fanaticism /fə'nætɪsɪzəm/ *41*
fancy dress party *24*
FAQ /ˌefeɪ'kju:/ *1*, *39*
far-fetched /ˌfɑ:'fetʃt/ *25*
fare type *31*
fast /fɑ:st/ iv
fast moving *8*
fasting /'fɑ:stɪŋ/ *42*
fatalities /fə'tælətiz/ *20*
fatuous /'fætjuəs/ iv
faucet /'fɔ:sɪt/ *96*
fault-finder /'fɒltfaɪndə/ *13*
fault-finding /'fɒltfaɪndɪŋ/ *76*
favour /'feɪvə/ *15*
feature /'fi:tʃə/ *51*
fed up with *76*
feedback /'fi:dbæk/ *11*
feel blue *68*
feel it in your bones *92*
feel nauseous *57*
feel sick *57*
fellow /'feləʊ/ *49*
female /'fi:meɪl/ *98*
feminine /'femɪnɪn/ *98*
feminism /'femɪnɪzəm/ *41*
Feng Shui /ˌfeŋ'ʃu:i/ *23*
fertilisation /ˌfɜ:tɪlaɪ'zeɪʃən/ *20*
festival /'festɪvəl/ *42*
festive /'festɪv/ *42*
festivities /fes'tɪvətiz/ *42*
fetching /'fetʃɪŋ/ *53*
feud /fju:d/ *15*
feudal /'fju:dəl/ *44*
fever /'fi:və/ *57*
fever pitch *57*
feverish /'fi:vərɪʃ/ *56*
fibre /'faɪbə/ *58*
fibre-rich *3*
fickle /'fɪkl/ *17*
fierce /fɪəs/ *37*
fifty/fifty *21*
fight off *55*
figures /'fɪgəz/ *74*
file /faɪl/ *64*
filling /'fɪlɪŋ/ *56*
finals /'faɪnəlz/ *11*
find fault with *76*
fine /faɪn/ *96*
finish /'fɪnɪʃ/ ii
finite /'faɪnaɪt/ *38*
firefighter /'faɪəˌfaɪtə/ *98*
fireman /'faɪəmən/ *98*
firmly rooted *36*
fiscal /'fɪskəl/ *49*
fish finger *28*
fish for compliments *78*
fit /fɪt/ *57*
fit the description *8*
(in a) fix /fɪks/ *72*
fixed penalty *40*
flamboyant /flæm'bɔɪənt/ *42*
(in a) flash /flæʃ/ *63*
flashy /'flæʃɪ/ *13*
flat /flæt/ v
flatter /'flætə/ *78*
flattery /'flætərɪ/ *78*
flavour /'fleɪvə/ *28*
flavoured /'fleɪvəd/ *28*
flaw /flɔ:/ *10*
flawed /flɔ:d/ *74*
fleadh /flæ/ *97*
fleeting /'fli:tɪŋ/ *63*
flexi-time /'fleksɪtaɪm/ *7*
flight attendant *98*
flimsy /'flɪmzɪ/ *77*
flinch /flɪnʃ/ *65*
flirt /flɜ:t/ *19*
floating on air *16*
flog yourself to death *72*
flood /flʌd/ vi, *64*
flora and fauna *32*
flourish /'flʌrɪʃ/ *36*
flow /fləʊ/ *64*

fluctuate /'flʌktʃueɪt/ *74*
fluorescent /flɔː'resənt/ *68*
flushed /flʌʃt/ *100*
flutter your eyelashes *65*
(have a) flutter /'flʌtə/ *79*
fly-drive /'flaɪdraɪv/ *32*
flyer /'flaɪə/ *51*, *53*
focus /'fəʊkəs/ *26*
foetus /'fiːtəs/ *20*
-fold *74*
fold your arms *18*
follow /'fɒləʊ/ *49*
fond /fɒnd/ *14*
fondness /'fɒndnəs/ *14*
font /fɒnt/ *84*
footprint /'fʊtprɪnt/ *60*
for goodness sake *76*
for keeps *63*
forced to *83*
forces /'fɔːsɪz/ *40*
forefront /'fɔːfrʌnt/ *33*
foreman /'fɔːmən/ *98*
foreword /'fɔːwɜːd/ *51*
(never) forget how *80*
forget-me-not /fə'getmɪnɒt/ *68*
forgetfulness /fə'getfəlnəs/ *57*
forgive /fə'gɪv/ *77*
format /'fɔːmæt/ *84*
formidable /fə'mɪdəbl/ iv
fortune /'fɔːtʃuːn/ *10*, *31*
fragmented /fræg'mentɪd/ *46*
franchise /'frænʃaɪz/ *75*
-free *3*
free trade agreement *49*
free-range /ˌfriː'reɪndʒ/ *28*
freelance /'friːlɑːns/ *7*
freezing /'friːzɪŋ/ *34*
frequently /'friːkwəntli/ vii
fresh /freʃ/ *28*
friend /frend/ *15*
friendly /'frendli/ *3*
Friends of the Earth *46*
frills /frɪlz/ *22*
frock /frɒk/ vii
frolic /'frɒlɪk/ *97*
frosty /'frɒsti/ *34*
frown /fraʊn/ *65*
frugal /'fruːgəl/ *13*
fruitful /'fruːtfəl/ *21*, *36*
frumpy /'frʌmpi/ *22*
frying pan *96*
fuddy-duddy /'fʌdiˌdʌdi/ *17*
full board *31*
full of beans *91*
full of the joys of spring *16*
fur trade *37*
fussy eater *29*
FYI *1*
gain your ends *48*
gait /geɪt/ *18*
gallant /'gælənt/ *13*
galleon /'gæliən/ *44*
galore /gə'lɔː/ *53*
game park *37*
game reserve *37*
gangling /'gæŋglɪŋ/ *18*
gangly /'gæŋgli/ *18*
garbled /'gɑːbld/ *52*
gardai /gɑː'diː/ *97*
garment /'gɑːmənt/ vii
garrulity /gær'uːlәti/ *19*
garrulous /'gærələs/ *19*
garrulousness /'gærələsnəs/ *19*
gas station *96*
gateway /'geɪtweɪ/ *35*
gawp /gɔːp/ *65*
GDP /ˌdʒiːdiː'piː/ *45*
gene therapy *61*
generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ *33*, *70*
generous /'dʒenərəs/ *13*
genetic engineering *61*
genetic modification *61*
genetically modified *61*
genome /'dʒiːnəʊm/ *61*
gentlemanly /'dʒentlmənli/ *65*
genuine /'dʒenjuɪn/ *15*
genuine article iv
germ warfare *48*
Germanic /dʒə'mænɪk/ *43*
germinate /'dʒɜːmɪneɪt/ *36*
gesture /'dʒestʃə/ *10*
get /get/ *29*
get, *expressions with* /get/ *85*
get a new lease of life *23*
get around *31*
get away from it all *31*
get back to *39*
get back to nature *32*
get carried away *13*
get into *27*
get my back up *90*
get on like a house on fire *14*, *90*
get on my nerves *90*
get on my wick *90*
get over *55*
get round to *95*
get the hang of *11*
get up my nose *90*
get up to *21*
get-together /'gettəgeðə/ *24*
ghost writer *51*
gift /gɪft/ *5*
(have the) gift of the gab *90*
gift of the gab *90*
giggle /'gɪgl/ *65*
gimmick /'gɪmɪk/ *5*
ginger /'dʒɪndʒə/ *68*
girls' night out *24*
give /gɪv/ *70*
give credence to *41*
give or take *87*
give praise to *78*
give someone a standing ovation *78*
give someone the benefit of the doubt *41*, *91*
give the go-ahead *75*
give the green light *75*
give way *30*
give-way sign *30*
glamorous /'glæmərəs/ *7*
glare /gleə/ *65*
glass ceiling *8*, *35*
glasses /'glɑːsɪz/ vii
glide /glaɪd/ *64*
glitch /glɪtʃ/ *72*
global village *61*
global warming *38*
globalise /'gləʊbəlaɪz/ *61*
gloss /glɒs/ *54*
glossy /'glɒsi/ *54*
glower /'glaʊə/ *65*
glucose /'gluːkəʊs/ *58*
GM /ˌdʒiː'em/ *28*, *61*
GMT /ˌdʒiːem'tiː/ *1*
GNP /ˌdʒiːen'piː/ *45*
go, *expressions with* *89*, *91*
go as you please *31*
go back to your roots *36*
go blank *11*
go clubbing *24*
go down with *55*, *95*
go into recession *49*
go off *21*
go on a pub crawl *24*
go out of your way *29*
go private *55*
go through the roof *35*
go to press *54*
go under the hammer *9*
go-ahead /'gəʊəhed/ *75*
goalposts, move the /'gəʊlpəʊsts/ *58*
goes to show *92*
golden /'gəʊldən/ *3*

golden handshake *50*
good old days *80*
gossip /'gɒsɪp/ *28*, *86*
GP /ˌdʒiː'piː/ *35*
GPS /ˌdʒiːpiː'es/ *60*
grab a bite to eat *29*
graft /grɑːft/ *72*
gram- /græm/ *4*
granny flat *23*
grant /grɑːnt/ *47*
-graph- *4*
graphic image *52*
grasping /'grɑːspɪŋ/ *17*
grass roots /ˌgrɑːs'ruːts/ *36*
grating /'greɪtɪŋ/ *66*
grave /greɪv/ *43*
great powers *48*
Graeco-Latin *43*
green /griːn/ viii, *68*
green credentials *38*
green light *75*
Green Party *68*
green tourism *68*
-gress- *4*
grey /greɪ/ *68*
grey area *68*
grey cells *68*
grey matter *68*, *90*
gridlock /'grɪdlɒk/ *30*, *61*
grievance /'griːvəns/ *46*
grill /grɪl/ *28*
grimace /'grɪməs/ *18*
grind /graɪnd/ *72*
gripe /graɪp/ *76*
gripping /'grɪpɪŋ/ *25*
grizzle /'grɪzl/ *65*
Gross Domestic Product *45*
Gross National Product *45*
ground /graʊnd/ *96*
grouse /graʊs/ *76*
gruelling /'gruəlɪŋ/ *72*
grumble /'grʌmbl/ *76*
guarantee /ˌgærən'tiː/ *39*
guards /gɑːdz/ *97*
guesstimate /'gestɪmət/ *4*
guest house *31*
guffaw /gʌf'ɔː/ *65*
guilt-ridden /'gɪltˌrɪdən/ *3*
gulf /gʌlf/ *61*
gullible /'gʌlɪbl/ *19*, *41*
gut /gʌt/ *58*
gutter press *54*
habitat /'hæbɪtæt/ *37*
hack into *52*
hackneyed /'hæknɪd/ *25*
haemophilia /ˌhiːmə'fɪliə/ *57*
haggard /'hægəd/ *18*
hail of abuse/bullets *34*
half-baked /ˌhɑːf'beɪkt/ vi, *28*
half board /ˌhɑːf'bɔːd/ *31*
half-hearted /ˌhɑːf'hɑːtɪd/ *88*
hammer /'hæmə/ *66*
hammer out a deal *9*
hammock /'hæmək/ *5*
hand in glove with *22*
hand to mouth, live from *45*
hand-baggage /'hændbægɪdʒ/ *96*
handheld /ˌhænd'held/ *60*
hands-free /ˌhændz'friː/ *60*
hang out with *24*
hanker /'hæŋkə/ *16*
happiest days of one's life *80*
hara-kiri /ˌhærə'kɪri/ *5*
harass /'hærəs/ *47*
harassment /'hærəsmənt/ *47*
hard sell *9*
hardship /'hɑːdʃɪp/ *72*
Hari Raya *42*
harrowing /'hærəʊɪŋ/ *25*
has-been /'hæzbiːn/ *63*
hassle /'hæsl/ *72*
hate /heɪt/ *17*
hate someone's guts *15*
haughty /'hɔːti/ *19*
have a craving for *16*
have a flutter *79*
have a hankering for *16*
have a sweet tooth *29*
have a yearning for *16*
have all your wits about you *20*
have ambitions *73*
have aspirations *73*
have a thirst for *16*
have every hope of *73*
have first refusal *9*
have got to do something about *76*
have had enough of *76*
have it as easy *80*
have it in for *15*, *95*
have its ups and downs *15*
have no option but to *73*
have right of way *30*
have room for *29*
have second thoughts *88*
have someone eating out of the palm of your hand *91*
have the shirt off someone's back *22*
have the time of your life *23*
have to pinch yourself *41*
(in a) haze /heɪz/ *34*
hazy /'heɪzi/ *34*
head over heels in love *90*
head-on collision *30*
heading /'hedɪŋ/ *84*
health care *55*
health cover *50*
health-conscious /'helθkɒnʃəs/ *3*
heap praise on *78*
hear anything of *80*
heart attack *55*, *57*
heart disease *55*
heart failure *55*
heartfelt /'hɑːtfelt/ *77*
heartland /'hɑːtlænd/ *32*
heavy /'hevi/ *34*
heavy industry *59*
heavy-going /hevi'gəʊɪŋ/ *27*
heir apparent *44*
heliport /'helɪpɔːt/ *4*
helpline /'helplaɪn/ *39*
hem in *22*, *62*
hen party *24*
hepatitis /ˌhepə'taɪtɪs/ *55*
herbal medicine *56*
herbivore /'hɜːbɪvɔː/ *37*
herbivorous /hɜː'bɪvərəs/ *37*
hierarchical /ˌhaɪ'rɑːkɪkəl/ *7*
high and mighty *88*
(on the) high street *22*
high-flyer /ˌhaɪ'flaɪə/ *8*
high-minded /ˌhaɪ'maɪndɪd/ *3*
high-pitched /ˌhaɪ'pɪtʃt/ *66*
high-rise flats *23*
high-tech /ˌhaɪ'tek/ *59*
high-technology *59*
highbrow /'haɪbraʊ/ *26*
highly praised *78*
highwayman /'haɪweɪmən/ *44*
hike /haɪk/ *32*
hint /hɪnt/ *73*
hit home *23*
hit it off *14*, *90*
hit the ceiling/roof *91*
hit the headlines *54*
hit the roof *35*
hit-and-run /ˌhɪtən'rʌn/ *30*
hitch /hɪtʃ/ *72*
hobble /'hɒbl/ *64*
hobnob /'hɒbnɒb/ *24*
hoi polloi /ˌhɔɪpə'lɔɪ/ *99*
hold the key to *35*
hold up *6*
(in a) hole /həʊl/ *72*
holiday entitlement *8*

holiday of a lifetime *31*
home truths *23*
homeopathy /ˌhəʊmiˈɒpəθi/ *56*
honest /ˈɒnɪst/ *15*
honestly /ˈɒnɪstli/ *76*
(off the) hook /hʊk/ *72*
hooked on *21*
hoot /huːt/ *30, 66*
(have every) hope of *73*
hopping mad *100*
hordes /hɔːdz/ *32*
horn /hɔːn/ *30*
hospital /ˈhɒspɪtəl/ *55*
hostile /ˈhɒstaɪl/ *17*
hostilities /hɒsˈtɪlətiz/ *48*
hot deal *39*
hot off the press *54*
hot potato *36*
(on the) house /haʊs/ *23*
household word/name *23*
housewarming (party) *24*
hovel /ˈhɒvəl/ *23*
human factor *10*
human genome *61*
human poverty *45*
human race *98*
human resources *10, 98*
humid /ˈhjuːmɪd/ *34*
humour /ˈhjuːmə/ *27*
hunger for *16*
hurt /hɜːt/ *56*
I don't buy that *41*
I mean that in the nicest possible way *85*
I wasn't born yesterday *41*
I'll believe it when I see it *41*
i.e. /ˌaɪˈiː/ *1*
-ible *3*
icily /ˈaɪsɪli/ *34*
icon /ˈaɪkɒn/ *60*
-ics *4*
ID /ˌaɪˈdiː/ *1*
(haven't the foggiest) idea /aɪˈdɪə/ *90*
(a good) idea to *73*
ideogram /ˈɪdiəgræm/ *43*
idiot-proof /ˈɪdiətˌpruːf/ *3*
if I were in the same boat *73*
if I were in your shoes *73*
if only *80*
if you can't beat them, join them *92*
if you don't mind my saying so *85*
illiteracy /ɪˈlɪtərəsi/ *45*
illness /ˈɪlnəs/ *55*
illuminate /ɪˈluːmɪneɪt/ *26*
illustrate /ˈɪləstreɪt/ *26*
image /ˈɪmɪdʒ/ *26*
IMF /ˌaɪemˈef/ *1*
immediate dispatch *39*
immigrant /ˈɪmɪgrənt/ *33*
immune to *26*
impeach /ɪmˈpiːtʃ/ *47*
impeccable /ɪmˈpekəbl/ *29, 39*
impediment /ɪmˈpedɪmənt/ *72*
impenetrable /ɪmˈpenɪtrəbl/ *25, 26, 67*
impermeable /ɪmˈpɜːmiəbl/ *67*
impersonal /ɪmˈpɜːsənəl/ *39*
impervious /ɪmˈpɜːviəs/ *67*
impetuosity /ɪmˌpetjuˈɒsəti/ *19*
impetuous /ɪmˈpetjuəs/ *19*
impetuousness /ɪmˈpetjuəsnəs/ *19*
implacable /ɪmˈplækəbl/ *16*
implausible /ɪmˈplɔːzəbl/ *41*
impose /ɪmˈpəʊz/ *49*
impossible /ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ iv
impoverished /ɪmˈpɒvərɪʃt/ *45*
Impressionism /ɪmˈpreʃənɪzəm/ *26*
impressionist /ɪmˈpreʃənɪst/ *26*
improve /ɪmˈpruːv/ *49*
impulsive /ɪmˈpʌlsɪv/ *19*
in line to the throne *44*
in next to no time *92*
in one way or another *87*
in sum vii
in those days *80*
inbox /ˈɪnbɒks/ *52*
inc *1*
incarcerate /ɪnˈkɑːsəreɪt/ *62*
incendiary device *48*
incidence /ˈɪnsɪdəns/ *82*
incipient /ɪnˈsɪpiənt/ *63*
incite /ɪnˈsaɪt/ *70*
income poverty *45*
incompetent /ɪnˈkɒmpɪtənt/ *39*
inconsistent /ˌɪnkənˈsɪstənt/ *74*
incredulous /ɪnˈkredjələs/ *41*
increment /ˈɪnkrəmənt/ *8*
incur /ɪnˈkɜː/ *49*
indent /ˈɪndent/ *84*
Independence Day *42*
indictable /ɪnˈdaɪtəbl/ *47*
indictment /ɪnˈdaɪtmənt/ *47*
indistinguishable /ˌɪndɪˈstɪŋgwɪʃəbl/ *71*
Indo-Arian /ˌɪndəʊˈeərɪən/ *43*
Indo-European /ˌɪndəʊjʊərəˈpiːən/ *43*
induce /ɪnˈdjuːs/ *70*
indulge oneself *53*
industrial espionage *59*
industrial piracy *59*
industrious /ɪnˈdʌstriəs/ *13*
inertia selling *9*
inevitable /ɪˈnevɪtəbl/ *73*
inexorable /ɪˈneksərəbl/ *63*
infantry /ˈɪnfəntri/ *44*
infatuated /ɪnˈfætjueɪtɪd/ *14*
infer /ɪnˈfɜː/ *82*
inflected /ɪnˈflektɪd/ *43*
influence /ˈɪnfluəns/ *46*
informant /ɪnˈfɔːmənt/ *3*
infringe /ɪnˈfrɪndʒ/ *47*
ingenuous /ɪnˈdʒenjuəs/ *41*
(all the) ingredients of *28*
inherent /ɪnˈherənt/ *12*
inherit /ɪnˈherɪt/ *20*
inheritance /ɪnˈherɪtəns/ *20*
inhibition /ˌɪnɪˈbɪʃən/ *36*
inn /ɪn/ *31*
innovative /ˈɪnəvətɪv/ *53*
inseparable /ɪnˈsepərəbl/ *14*
(do/practise) insider trading/dealing *47*
install /ɪnˈstɔːl/ *52*
instant messaging *52*
Institute of Directors *46*
insufferable /ɪnˈsʌfərəbl/ *72*
insulin /ˈɪnsjəlɪn/ *58*
intelligence /ɪnˈtelɪdʒəns/ vi
intelligentsia /ɪnˌtelɪˈdʒentsiə/ *5*
inter- *2*
inter-library loan *11*
interactive /ˌɪntərˈæktɪv/ *61*
interchangeable /ˌɪntəˈtʃeɪndʒəbl/ *71*
interdepartmental /ˌɪntəˌdiːpɑːtˈmentəl/ *2*
interfere /ˌɪntəˈfɪə/ *6*
international observer *48*
Internet /ˈɪntənet/ *2*
interplanetary /ˌɪntəˈplænɪtəri/ *61*
interpretation /ɪnˌtɜːprɪˈteɪʃən/ *25*
interrelated /ˌɪntərɪˈleɪtɪd/ *2*
intersection /ˌɪntəˈsekʃən/ *30, 96*
interstate /ˌɪntəˈsteɪt/ *96*
intervene /ˌɪntəˈviːn/ *6*
intestate /ɪnˈtesteɪt/ *20*
intimidate /ɪnˈtɪmɪdeɪt/ *46*
intra- *2*
intradepartmental /ˈɪntrəˌdiːpɑːtˈmentl/ *2*
intranet /ˈɪntrənet/ *2*
intravenous /ɪntrəˈviːnəs/ *2*

intriguing /ɪn'tri:gɪŋ/ *26*
introvert /'ɪntrəvɜ:t/ *19*
intuitive /ɪn'tju:ɪtɪv/ *13*
inured to *26*
inverse proportion *74*
inverted commas *84*
inward investment *59*
IOC *1*
IQ /ˌaɪ'kju:/ *74*
Iron Lady viii
irregular /ɪ'regjələ/ *7*
-ish *68*, *87*
isolating /'aɪsəleɪtɪŋ/ *43*
ISP /ˌaɪes'pi:/ *52*
issue a statement *54*
it might never happen *73*
italics /ɪ'tælɪks/ *84*
item /'aɪtəm/ *24*
itinerary /aɪ'tɪnərəri/ *32*
ivory tower *35*
ivory trade *37*
jacket /'dʒækɪt/ *51*
jade /dʒeɪd/ *68*
jaundiced /'dʒɔ:ndɪst/ *57*
jelly /'dʒeli/ *28*
jester /'dʒestə/ *44*
jet /dʒet/ *68*
jet black *68*
(in a) jiffy /'dʒɪfi/ *63*
job ad *8*
job satisfaction *8*
job-share /'dʒɒbʃeə/ *7*
joker /'dʒəʊkə/ *97*
jot down *84*
journal /'dʒɜ:nəl/ *11*, *27*
joyride /'dʒɔɪraɪd/ *47*
joyrider /'dʒɔɪˌraɪdə/ *47*
joyriding /'dʒɔɪˌraɪdɪŋ/ *47*
jubilant /'dʒu:bɪlənt/ *16*
juicy /'dʒu:si/ *28*
jump a red light *30*
jungle /'dʒʌŋgl/ vi
k (=*1000*) /keɪ/ *8*
keep a promise/vow *79*
keep an eye on *88*
keep cool vi
keep down *93*
keep from *93*
keep in touch with *80*
keep off *93*
keep on a tight rein vi
keep on the move *31*
keep up *93*
(for) keeps /ki:ps/ *63*
key /ki:/ *35*
key figures *35*
key to success *35*
kick in the teeth *88*
kick the bucket *20*
kid /kɪd/ vii
killer /'kɪlə/ *39*
(a) kind of *87*
kindly /'kaɪndli/ *3*
kindred spirit *14*
kit /kɪt/ vii
kitty-corner to *96*
knock around with *24*
knock off *7*
(in the) know /nəʊ/ *90*
know a subject inside out *11*
know one's stuff *90*
know what's what *90*
know-all /'nəʊɔ:l/ *90*
labour /'leɪbə/ *20*
labour-saving /'leɪbəˌseɪvɪŋ/ *21*
labyrinth /'læbərɪnθ/ *62*
ladylike /'leɪdilaɪk/ *65*
lame /leɪm/ *77*
lame duck *59*
lament /lə'ment/ *80*
landing card *40*
lanky /'læŋki/ *18*
(in the) lap of luxury *53*
laptop /'læptɒp/ *60*
lashings of *87*
(that's the) last thing I wanted to hear *89*
lasting /'lɑ:stɪŋ/ *49*
late /leɪt/ *20*
latitude /'lætɪtju:d/ *34*
laud /lɔ:d/ *25*, *78*
laudable /'lɔ:dəbl/ *78*
laudatory /'lɔ:dətəri/ *78*
launch (party) /lɔ:nʃ/ *24*
launder money *47*
laws of succession *44*
lay claim to *44*
lay off *95*
lay on *94*
lay the foundations *35*
lb *58*
leader /'li:də/ *51*
leaflet /'li:flət/ *51*
league tables *12*
learn by heart *11*
learning experience *31*
(get a new) lease of life *23*
leave something standing *53*
-led *3*
leer /lɪə/ *18*, *65*
legion /'li:dʒən/ *44*
legislate /'ledʒɪsleɪt/ *46*
legislation /ˌledʒɪ'sleɪʃən/ *46*
legislator /'ledʒɪsleɪtə/ *46*
leisurely /'leʒəli/ *3*
lemon /'lemən/ *68*
lend credence to *41*
(in) less than no time *63*
less well-off *12*
let someone stew *28*
let the cat out of the bag *90*
level playing field *58*
lexicon /'leksɪkən/ *5*, *43*
liable /'laɪəbl/ iii
libel /'laɪbəl/ *54*
liberalise /'lɪbərəlaɪz/ *41*
liberalism /'lɪbərəlɪzəm/ *41*
lick someone's boots *78*
life expectancy *45*
life savings *50*
lifelong companion *14*
lifelong education *12*
(of a) lifetime /'laɪftaɪm/ *31*
lift /lɪft/ *49*
light /laɪt/ ii, *26*, *28*
light industry *59*
light up vi
lightweight /'laɪtweɪt/ *27*
like /laɪk/ *99*
like-minded /ˌlaɪk'maɪndɪd/ *3*
likelihood /'laɪklihʊd/ *73*
likely story *41*
likely to *73*
likewise /'laɪkwaɪz/ *82*
lime /laɪm/ *68*
limp /lɪmp/ *64*
lingering /'lɪŋgərɪŋ/ *63*
linguistic /lɪŋ'gwɪstɪk/ *5*
lisp /lɪsp/ *86*
list /lɪst/ *51*
literacy /'lɪtərəsi/ *12*
(you) live and learn *92*
live from hand to mouth *45*
live to a ripe old age *20*
live to tell the tale *92*
lively /'laɪvli/ *3*
(a) load of *85*
loads of *85*
loan shark *50*
loan word *5*, *43*
loathe /ləʊð/ *17*
loathing /'ləʊðɪŋ/ *17*
loathsome /'ləʊðsəm/ *17*
lobby /'lɒbi/ *46*
lobbyist /'lɒbiɪst/ *46*

lock oneself away *21*
locked in/on *35*
lodge an appeal *47*
logbook /'lɒgbʊk/ *27*
(at) loggerheads /'lɒgəhedz/ *91*
log in *39*
LOL *1*
long /lɒŋ/ *73*
long time no see *88*
long-winded /ˌlɒŋ'wɪndɪd/ *88*
look back *80*
look out *6*
look to work in *8*
looking up *89*
lookout /'lʊkaʊt/ *6*
loophole /'luːphəʊl/ *28*
lose /luːz/ *58*
lose, you've lost me there /luːz/ *89*
(be at a) loss for words *91*
loss leader /ˌlɒs'liːdə/ *9*
lost /lɒst/ iv
lounge around *31*
lout /laʊt/ *100*
love at first sight *14*
love someone to bits *90*
lovely /'lʌvli/ *96*
low fat /ˌləʊ 'fæt/ *28*
(in) low spirits *90*
low-tech /ˌləʊ'tek/ *59*
low-technology *59*
lowbrow /'ləʊbraʊ/ *26*
(give someone the) lowdown on *51*
lower case *84*
loyal /lɔɪəl/ *14*, *15*
loyalty /'lɔɪəlti/ *14*, *15*
(as) luck would have it *92*
(I should be so) lucky /'lʌki/ *73*
lucrative /'luːkrətɪv/ *8*, *9*, *21*
ludicrous /'luːdɪkrəs/ iv
lugubrious /luː'guːbriəs/ *27*
lumbering /'lʌmbərɪŋ/ *67*
lump sum *50*
luncheon /'lʌnʃən/ *99*
lurch /lɜːtʃ/ *64*
-ly *3*
m *1*
macabre /mə'kɑːbr/ *27*
macommere /mækɒ'meər/ *97*
(be) made for *90*
magnetic personality *13*
magnolia /mæg'nəʊliə/ *68*
make a note of *84*
make a promise/vow *79*
make a statement *40*
make all the difference *88*
make ends meet *50*
make head or tail of *90*
make life easier *89*
make medical history *20*
make (a cheque) out to /meɪk/ *50*
make sure vii
make the most of *88*
make up to *78*
make-believe /'meɪkbɪˌliːv/ *88*
male /meɪl/ *98*
male nurse *98*
malnutrition /ˌmælnjuː'trɪʃən/ *45*
mammal /'mæməl/ *37*
man in the street *98*
man of her dreams *90*
man /mæn/ *98*
man-hours *98*
man/woman after one's own heart *14*
manageable /'mænɪdʒəbl/ *3*
manhandle /ˌmæn'hændl/ *98*
mankind /mæn'kaɪnd/ *98*
manly /'mænli/ *98*
mannish /'mænɪʃ/ *98*
manpower /'mænˌpaʊə/ *98*
manual (n.) /'mænjuəl/ *27*, *51*
manual (adj.) /'mænjuəl/ *7*
manufacturing /ˌmænjə'fæktʃərɪŋ/ *33*
manufacturing industry *59*
manuscript /'mænjəskrɪpt/ *84*
mark /mɑːk/ *11*
marvellous /'mɑːvələs/ *96*
masculine /'mæskjəlɪn/ *98*
(a) mass of *85*
mass production *21*, *46*
mass-produced /ˌmæsprə'djuːst/ *46*
masses of *85*
masterly /'mɑːstəli/ *3*
masterpiece /'mɑːstəpiːs/ *25*
match /mætʃ/ v
mate /meɪt/ *97*
maternity leave *8*
mature student *12*
mauve /məʊv/ *68*
may /meɪ/ *73*
May Day /'meɪdeɪ/ *42*
may I ask *73*
maybe /'meɪbi/ vii
meal /miːl/ vii
mean /miːn/ *34*
meander /mi'ændə/ *64*
measure /'meʒə/ *49*
(get the) measure of *91*
mechanical /mɪ'kænɪkəl/ *7*
mechanisation /ˌmekənaɪ'zeɪʃən/ *21*
medication /ˌmedɪ'keɪʃən/ *56*
medicine /'medsən/ *55*
medieval /ˌmedi'iːvəl/ *44*
meet a deadline *7*, *10*
memoirs /'memwɑːz/ *27*
memorable /'memərəbl/ *25*
memorise /'meməraɪz/ *11*
merge /mɜːdʒ/ *9*
metaphor /'metəfə/ vi
methodical /mə'θɒdɪkəl/ *13*
might /maɪt/ *73*
might I ask *73*
migrant /'maɪgrənt/ *33*, *40*
mileage /'maɪlɪdʒ/ *31*
mill around *64*
(not) mince your words *91*
mind your own business *92*
mind your Ps and Qs *65*
mind you vii
mind-map *11*
-minded *3*
mine of information *90*
minimalism /'mɪnɪməlɪzəm/ *23*
minister /'mɪnɪstə/ *46*
minstrel /'mɪnstrəl/ *44*
miscarriage /mɪ'skærɪdʒ/ *20*
miscast /mɪ'skɑːst/ *25*
(as) miserable as sin *90*
miserly /'maɪzəli/ *3*
miss a deadline *10*
miss out on *95*
(in the) mists of *34*
misty-eyed /'mɪstiaɪd/ *34*
misunderstanding /ˌmɪsʌndə'stændɪŋ/ *15*
mnemonic /nɪ'mɒnɪk/ *11*
(in a) mo /məʊ/ *63*
mod cons /ˌmɒd'kɒnz/ *1*
modal verb *43*
modality /mə'dæləti/ *43*
moderate /'mɒdərət/ *34*
modest /'mɒdɪst/ *19*
moist /mɔɪst/ *6*
moisten /'mɔɪsən/ *3*
momentarily /məʊmən'terəli/ *96*
monetary union *49*
money is tight *45*
money laundering *47*
money-minded *3*
monitor /'mɒnɪtə/ *54*
monochrome /'mɒnəkrəʊm/ *68*
monograph /'mɒnəgrɑːf/ *4*
monolingual /ˌmɒnə'lɪŋgwəl/ iii
monotonous /mə'nɒtənəs/ *7*

mood enhancer *58*
(over the) moon /muːn/ *90*
morale /məˈrɑːl/ *10*
more or less *87*
moreover /mɔːrˈəʊvə/ vii
morose /məˈrəʊs/ *13*
morpheme /ˈmɔːfiːm/ *43*
morphology /mɔːˈfɒlədʒi/ *43*
mortgage /ˈmɔːgɪdʒ/ *50*
MOT test *30*
motel /məʊˈtel/ *4*
Mother's Day *42*
motif /məʊˈtiːf/ *26*
motivated /ˈməʊtɪveɪtɪd/ *8*
motor(car) /ˈməʊtə/ *99*
mould /məʊld/ *26*
mourn /mɔːn/ *80*
mourning /ˈmɔːnɪŋ/ *20*
mousy /ˈmaʊsi/ *68*
move the goalposts *58*
moving /ˈmuːvɪŋ/ *25*
muck-raking /ˈmʌkreɪkɪŋ/ *54*
muddy the waters *89*
mug /mʌg/ *41*
muggy /ˈmʌgi/ *34*
mulish /ˈmjuːlɪʃ/ *13*
multinational /ˌmʌltiˈnæʃənəl/ *59*
mumble /ˈmʌmbl/ *86*
mumps /mʌmps/ *5*
murmur /ˈmɜːmə/ *86*
mushroom /ˈmʌʃrʊm/ *36*
must /mʌst/ *73*
mutter /ˈmʌtə/ *86*
myself included *85*
mystery /ˈmɪstəri/ *89*
n/s *1*
nag /næg/ *86*
naïve /naɪˈiːv/ iv, *13*, *19*
nappy /ˈnæpi/ iii
National Health Service *55*
national insurance *55*
nationalisation /ˌnæʃənəlaɪˈzeɪʃən/ *59*
nationwide /ˌneɪʃənˈwaɪd/ *39*
NATO /ˈneɪtəʊ/ *1*
natural habitat *37*
nauseous /ˈnɔːsiəs/ *56*, *57*
navy /ˈneɪvi/ *68*
NB /ˌenˈbiː/ *1*
Neanderthal Man *98*
neat /niːt/ *84*
neck and neck *58*
(up to your) neck /nek/ *72*
(that's all we) need /ˈniːd/ *89*
negate /nɪˈgeɪt/ *82*
network /ˈnetwɜːk/ *24*
New Age /ˌnjuː ˈeɪdʒ/ *23*
new money *99*
New Year's resolution *79*
news story breaks *54*
newsgroup /ˈnjuːzgruːp/ *52*
newsworthy /ˈnjuːzˌwɜːði/ *3*
nibbles /ˈnɪblz/ *29*
niche market *9*
(in the) nick of time *63*
(it's a real) nightmare /ˈnaɪtmeə/ *89*
nine-to-five (job) *7* /ˌnaɪntuːˈfaɪv/ *7*
nip /nɪp/ *69*
nip something in the bud *36*
nippy /ˈnɪpi/ *34*
nit-picking /ˈnɪtpɪkɪŋ/ *17*
nitty-gritty /ˌnɪtiˈgrɪti/ *88*
no offence intended *85*
nobody's fool *90*
noiseless /ˈnɔɪzləs/ *66*
non-refundable /ˌnɒnrɪˈfʌndəbl/ *31*
norm /nɔːm/ *74*
not be born yesterday *41*
not buy something *41*
not enough room to swing a cat *62*
not see eye to eye *15*
not the most *85*
(I'm) not with you *89*
not/never a hair out of place *18*
notebook /ˈnəʊtbʊk/ *60*
nothing between the ears *90*
(have) nothing to lose *92*
nothing to write home about *23*
notwithstanding /ˌnɒtwɪθˈstændɪŋ/ *82*
now then vii
nuclear /ˈnjuːkliə/ *48*
nuclear family *61*
number-plate /ˈnʌmbəpleɪt/ *30*
numeracy /ˈnjuːmərəsi/ *12*
nurse /nɜːs/ *98*
o.n.o. *1*
oath /əʊθ/ *79*
OBE /ˌəʊbiːˈiː/ *1*
obituary /əˈbɪtʃʊəri/ *20*, *51*
object to *76*
objection /əbˈdʒekʃən/ *76*
obligation /ˌɒblɪˈgeɪʃən/ *73*
obligatory /əˈblɪgətəri/ *73*
obliging /əˈblaɪdʒɪŋ/ *13*, *39*
obnoxious /əbˈnɒkʃəs/ *17*
obsequious /əbˈsiːkwiəs/ *17*, *78*
obstacle /ˈɒbstəkl/ *72*
obstetrics /ɒbˈstetrɪks/ *4*
obstinate /ˈɒbstɪnət/ *19*
obstructive /əbˈstrʌktɪv/ *72*
occupant /ˈɒkjəpənt/ *3*
ocker /ˈɒkə/ *97*
(the) odds are *73*
off the beaten track *32*
off the cuff *22*
off the hook *72*
off the peg *22*
off the rack *22*
off-colour /ˌɒfˈkʌlə/ *56*
off-hand /ˌɒfˈhænd/ *17*
off-putting /ˌɒfˈpʊtɪŋ/ *29*
offal /ˈɒfəl/ *58*
offence /əˈfens/ *40*
offensive /əˈfensɪv/ *52*
offhand /ˌɒfˈhænd/ *65*
officious /əˈfɪʃəs/ *17*
offline /ˌɒfˈlaɪn/ *52*
offspring /ˈɒfsprɪŋ/ vii
ogle /əʊgl/ *65*
oik /ɔɪk/ *99*
oil the wheels of *65*
oil-rich *3*
old boy network *24*
old school tie network *24*
-ology *4*
on a shoestring *22*
on me *29*
on the ball vi
on the breadline *45*
on the mend *55*
on the move *31*
on top of the world *16*, *90*
on-the-spot fine *30*, *40*
once in a blue moon *63*
one of those things *92*
one thing led to another *92*
one to one *12*
online /ˌɒnˈlaɪn/ iii, *52*
online auction *39*
only have eyes for *14*, *90*
oodles of *85*, *87*
open doors *35*
open up *95*
open-ended /ˌəʊpənˈendɪd/ *88*
opportunistic /ˌɒpətjuːˈnɪstɪk/ *13*
opportunity /ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti/ *12*
opposite number *7*
oppressive /əˈpresɪv/ *34*
(have no) option but to *73*
optional /ˈɒpʃənəl/ *73*
opulent /ˈɒpjələnt/ *53*
or so *87*
or something *87*
or whatever *87*

ordeal /ɔ:'di:l/ *72*
organic /ɔ:'gænɪk/ *28*
origin /'ɒrɪdʒɪn/ *5*
orthography /ɔ:'θɒgrəfi/ *43*
ostentatious /ˌɒsten'teɪʃəs/ *17*
other half vii
out in the wilds *31*
out of sorts *56*
out of the blue *92*
out of the ordinary *32*
out on the town *24*
outback /'aʊtbæk/ *97*
outbox /'aʊtbɒks/ *52*
outbreak /'aʊtbreɪk/ *6*
outdo /ˌaʊt'du:/ *6*
outfit /'aʊtfɪt/ *22*
outlaw /'aʊtlɔ:/ *48, 75*
outlook /'aʊtlʊk/ *6*
outstanding /ˌaʊt'stændɪŋ/ *10*
outstay your welcome *24*
ovaries /'əʊvəriz/ *20*
(standing) ovation /ə'veɪʃən/ *25, 78*
ovenproof /'ʌvənpru:f/ *3*
over the hill *63*
over the worst *55*
over- *2*
overbearing /ˌəʊvə'beərɪŋ/ *2, 29*
overboard /'əʊvəbɔ:d/ *2*
overcome /ˌəʊvə'kʌm/ *16*
overdo /ˌəʊvə'du:/ *29*
overlap /'əʊvəlæp/ *82*
overleaf /ˌəʊvə'li:f/ *2*
overnight /ˌəʊvə'naɪt/ *2*
overpass /'əʊvəpɑ:s/ *96*
overpriced /ˌəʊvə'praɪst/ *2*
overrated /ˌəʊvə'reɪtɪd/ *2, 25*
overseas aid *45*
overshadowed /ˌəʊvə'ʃædəʊd/ *2*
overstated /ˌəʊvə'steɪtɪd/ *2*
overstep /ˌəʊvə'step/ *2*
overturn /ˌəʊvə'tɜ:n/ *47*
overworked and underpaid *8*
overwrite /ˌəʊvə'raɪt/ *2*
owing to *70*
(score an) own goal *58*
(be your) own person *91*
Oz /ɒz/ *97*
p /pi:/ *1*
pack in like sardines *62*
packed with *51*
paddy field *33*
page-turner /'peɪdʒtɜ:nə/ *27*
pager /'peɪdʒə/ *60*
paid-up member *46*
(what a) pain /peɪn/ *72*
paint /peɪnt/ *26*
palaver /pə'lɑ:və/ *5*
pale /peɪl/ ii
pally /'pæli/ *24*
palmtop /'pɑ:mtɒp/ *60*
pals /pælz/ *14*
pamper oneself *53*
pamphlet /'pæmflɪt/ *51*
pan /pæn/ *25*
paper /'peɪpə/ *11*
paperwork /'peɪpəwɜ:k/ *7*
paramilitary police *40*
parking lot *96*
parking ticket *40*
parsimonious /ˌpɑ:sɪ'məʊniəs/ *13*
partner /'pɑ:tnə/ *15*
party animal *24*
party pooper *24*
pass away *20*
pass on *20*
pass over *8*
past it *63*
past paper *11*
pastel /'pæstəl/ *22*
pastel colours *68*
pat on the back *78*
paternity leave *8*
patriotic /ˌpætri'ɒtɪk/ *13*
patriotism /'pætriətɪzəm/ *48*
pay a compliment *78*
pay tribute to *78*
PC /ˌpi:'si:/ *1*
pcm *1*
PDA /ˌpi:di:'eɪ/ *60*
peace and quiet *66*
peace-keeping troops *48*
pecking-order /'pekɪŋɔ:də/ *7*
pedestrian /pɪ'destriən/ *26*
peerless /'pɪələs/ *26*
(off the) peg /peg/ *22*
pelt down *94*
penalty /'penəlti/ *40*
penalty clause *10*
penalty point *30*
penance /'penəns/ *42*
pension plan *50*
penthouse /'penthaʊs/ *23*
penury /'penjəri/ *45*
per /pɜ:/ *74*
perceive /pə'si:v/ *12, 82*
perfect /'pɜ:fɪkt/ *77*
peripatetic teacher *12*
perished /'perɪʃt/ *20*
perjurer /'pɜ:dʒərə/ *47*
perjury /'pɜ:dʒəri/ *47*
perks /pɜ:ks/ *8*
perpetuate /pə'petʃueɪt/ *12*
persistent /pə'sɪstənt/ *63*
person in the street *98*
personal gesture *10*
pervert the course of justice *47*
pet aversion *17*
petition /pə'tɪʃən/ *46*
philistinism /'fɪlɪstɪnɪzəm/ *26*
phon- *4*
phoneme /'fəʊni:m/ *43*
phonetics /fə'netɪks/ *4*
phonology /fə'nɒlədʒi/ *43*
physiotherapy /ˌfɪziə'θerəpi/ *56*
Picassoesque /pɪkæsəʊ'esk/ *3*
pick up *95*
pick your nose *18*
pictogram /'pɪktəgræm/ *43*
piecemeal /'pi:smi:l/ *38*
piecework /'pi:swɜ:k/ *59*
pied-à-terre /pjeɪd/ɑ:/'teə/ *23*
piercing /'pɪəsɪŋ/ *66*
pig-headed /ˌpɪg'hedɪd/ *19*
pig-headedness /ˌpɪg'hedɪdnəs/ *19*
pile-up /'paɪlʌp/ *30*
(you could have heard a) pin drop *66*
(take something with a) pinch of salt *41*
pitch /pɪtʃ/ *68*
pitch black *68*
pitfall /'pɪtfɔ:l/ *72*
pithy /'pɪθi/ *13*
pity /'pɪti/ *80*
placate /plə'keɪt/ *16*
placenta /plə'sentə/ *20*
placid /'plæsɪd/ *13*
plagiarism /'pleɪdʒərɪzəm/ *11*
plagued by *13*
plain clothes police *40*
plantation /plæn'teɪʃən/ *33*
plaque /plɑ:k/ *58*
platonic /plə'tɒnɪk/ *14*
plaudits /'plɔ:dɪts/ *78*
play down *94*
play it by ear *88*
pleb /pleb/ *99*
plebby /'plebi/ *99*
plebeian /plə'bi:ən/ *99*
pledge /pledʒ/ *79*
plug /plʌg/ *53*
plummet /'plʌmɪt/ *69*
plunge /plʌndʒ/ *69*
poach /pəʊtʃ/ *37, 47*
poacher /'pəʊtʃə/ *37*

poesy /'pəʊɪzi/ vii
poignant /'pɔɪnjənt/ *27*
pointer /'pɔɪntə/ *73*
poky /'pəʊki/ *62*
police officer vii
policeman/woman vii
policy /'pɒləsi/ *49*
political asylum *40*
polysemous /pə'lɪsɪməs/ ii
polysemy /pə'lɪsɪmi/ ii, v
pompous /'pɒmpəs/ *17*
ponderous /'pɒndərəs/ *67*
pooh /puː/ *57*
poorly /'pɔːli/ *55*
pop /'pɒp/ *69*
poppy /'pɒpi/ *68*
port of entry *40*
portfolio /ˌpɔːt'fəʊliəʊ/ *11*, *50*
portly /'pɔːtli/ *18*
portray /pɔː'treɪ/ *26*
portrayal /pɔː'treɪəl/ *25*
posh /pɒʃ/ *99*
posit /'pɒzɪt/ *83*
post- *4*
post-modernism /ˌpəʊs'mɒdənɪzəm/ *23*
posthumous pardon *77*
postulate /'pɒstjəleɪt/ *41*
pot luck /ˌpɒt 'lʌk/ *29*
pound /paʊnd/ *58*, *66*
pour /pɔː/ *34*, *64*
pout /paʊt/ *18*
poverty /'pɒvəti/ *45*, *49*
power outfit *22*
prairie /'preəri/ *33*
praise, *expressions with* /preɪz/ *78*
praise to the skies *78*
praiseworthy /'preɪzˌwɜːði/ *3*, *78*
pre- *4*
precedent /'presɪdənt/ *47*
precious stone *68*
precipitate /prɪ'sɪpɪteɪt/ *70*
precipitation /prɪˌsɪpɪ'teɪʃən/ *34*
predator /'predətə/ *37*
predatory /'predətəri/ *37*
predictable /prɪ'dɪktəbl/ *3*
predominant /prɪ'dɒmɪnənt/ *82*
preface /'prefɪs/ *83*
prefix /'priːfɪks/ *4*
pregnancy /'pregnənsi/ *20*
pregnant /'pregnənt/ *57*
premiere /'premieə/ *31*
premium /'priːmiəm/ *50*
prepaid /ˌpriː'peɪd/ *4*
prescription /prɪ'skrɪpʃən/ *55*, *56*
prescription charge *55*
present company excepted *85*
press /pres/ *54*
press conference *54*
press for *46*
press release *54*
pressure /'preʃə/ *46*
pressure group *54*
pressurise /'preʃəraɪz/ *46*
pretender /prɪ'tendə/ *44*
pretentious /prɪ'tenʃəs/ *17*
pretext /'priːtekst/ *77*
prevailing /prɪ'veɪlɪŋ/ *34*
prim /prɪm/ *65*
primary colours *68*
primitive /'prɪmɪtɪv/ *26*
(not her highest) priority /praɪ'ɒrəti/ *76*
prissy /'prɪsi/ *65*
pristine /'prɪstiːn/ *38*, *63*
privacy policy *39*
privatisation /ˌpraɪvɪtaɪ'zeɪʃən/ *59*
pro- *2*
pro-active /prəʊ'æktɪv/ *24*
(in all) probability /ˌprɒbə'bɪlәti/ *73*
probable /'prɒbəbl/ *73*
proclaim /prə'kleɪm/ *44*
procrastinate /prə'kræstɪneɪt/ *2*, *13*
procreate /'prəʊkrieɪt/ *2*
produce /prə'djuːs/ *70*
producer /prə'djuːsə/ *46*
product /'prɒdʌkt/ *46*
productive /prə'dʌktɪv/ *3*, *46*
prof /prɒf/ *1*
prognosis /prɒg'nəʊsɪs/ *57*
project (n.) /'prɒdʒekt/ *11*
project (v.) /prə'dʒekt/ *38*
projected /prə'dʒektid/ *38*
projected figures *74*
proliferate /prə'lɪfəreɪt/ *2*
promise someone the earth/moon *79*
promising /'prɒmɪsɪŋ/ *32*, *79*
promote /prə'məʊt/ *2*
prompt /prɒmt/ *39*, *70*
prone to *33*
-proof *3*
prophets of doom and gloom *38*
prospectus /prə'spektəs/ *51*
protest (n.) /'prəʊtest/ *76*
protest (v.) /prə'test/ *76*
protracted /prə'træktɪd/ *63*
proven /'pruːvən/ *53*
provide the key to *35*
provoke /prə'vəʊk/ *70*
prudent /'pruːdənt/ *73*
prune back *36*
(mind your) Ps and Qs *65*
PTA /ˌpiːtiː'eɪ/ *12*
PTO /ˌpiːtiː'əʊ/ *1*
pub crawl /'pʌb krɔːl/ *24*
public-private partnership *59*
puerile /'pjʊəraɪl/ *17*
pull in/over *30*
pull off *93*, *94*
pull out *93*
pull the other one *41*
pull the wool over someone's eyes *26*, *90*
pull through *93*
pull up *93*
pushover /'pʊʃəʊvə/ *41*
pushy /'pʊʃi/ *19*
put a brave face on it *91*
put down roots *36*
put in a tender *10*
put money/your life on *79*
put your foot in it *88*
put someone in a straitjacket *22*
put someone in the picture *90*
put someone in the shade *53*
put someone on hold *39*
put someone on/under oath *79*
put something on a credit card *50*
put yourself about *24*
pw *1*
quadruple /'kwɒdrʊpl/ *74*
quarterly /'kwɔːtəli/ *51*
quash /kwɒʃ/ *47*
query /'kwɪəri/ *39*
quickly /'kwɪkli/ iv
quiet /'kwaɪət/ *66*
(as) quiet as a mouse *66*
quotation /kwəʊ'teɪʃən/ *32*
quotation marks *84*
race /reɪs/ *69*
(off the) rack /ræk/ *22*
radical /'rædɪkəl/ *41*
radicalism /'rædɪkəlɪzəm/ *41*
radio /'reɪdiəʊ/ vii
rag /ræg/ *54*
(all the) rage /reɪdʒ/ *22*
raise /reɪz/ iv, *58*
raise your voice *86*
raise your/someone's eyebrows *18*, *65*
rally /'ræli/ *48*
ram something down someone's throat *88*

ramble /'ræmbl/ *32*
rambling /'ræmblɪŋ/ *62*
random check *40*
rapport /ræp'ɔ:/ *7*
rapture /'ræptʃə/ *16*
rapturous /'ræptʃərəs/ *16*
rash of *57*
rat race *23*
(at a) rate of knots *63*
raucous /'rɔ:kəs/ *42*
rave about *90*
reach a compromise *9*
reach a compromise/settlement *81*
reaction /ri'ækʃən/ *41*
reactionary /ri'ækʃənəri/ *41*
real thing iv
reap the reward of *36*
reception /rɪ'sepʃən/ *24*
recession /rɪ'seʃən/ *49*
recharge /ˌri:'tʃɑ:dʒ/ *32*
recipe for *28*
reckless driving *30*
recorded /rɪ'kɔ:dɪd/ *74*
recover /rɪ'kʌvə/ *49*
recover from *55*
red /red/ viii, 68
red alert *68*
red carpet *68*
red flag *68*
red tape *9*, *59*
red-letter day *68*
redden /'redən/ *3*
reduced fat *28*
regent /'ri:dʒənt/ *44*
(in the) region of *87*
register /'redʒɪstə/ ii, iii, vii
regret /rɪ'gret/ *80*
reiterate /ri'ɪtəreɪt/ *83*
rejoice /rɪ'dʒɔɪs/ *16*
-related *3*
relative poverty *45*
relaxing /rɪ'læksɪŋ/ *21*
relentlessly /rɪ'lentləsli/ *46*
relevant /'reləvənt/ *3*
relocate /ˌri:lə'keɪt/ *59*
reminisce /ˌremɪ'nɪs/ *80*
remonstrance /rɪ'mɒnstrəns/ *76*
remonstrate /'remənstreɪt/ *76*
remorse /rɪ'mɔ:s/ *77*, *80*
Renaissance /rə'neɪsəns/ *26*, *44*
rendition /ren'dɪʃən/ *25*
renew /rɪ'nju:/ *42*
renewal /rɪ'nju:əl/ *42*
renewed /rɪ'nju:d/ *42*
repast /rɪ'pɑ:st/ vii
repay /rɪ'peɪ/ *49*
repayment /rɪ'peɪmənt/ *49*
repent /rɪ'pent/ *77*
repetitive /rɪ'petətɪv/ *7*
represent /ˌreprɪ'zent/ *46*
representative /ˌreprɪ'zentətɪv/ *46*
reprieve /rɪ'pri:v/ *77*
reptile /'reptaɪl/ *37*
repulse /rɪ'pʌls/ *17*
repulsion /rɪ'pʌlʃən/ *17*
repulsive /rɪ'pʌlsɪv/ *17*
research /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ/ *11*
reserve /rɪ'zɜ:v/ *19*
reserved /rɪ'zɜ:vd/ *19*
reservedness /rɪ'zɜ:vədnəs/ *19*
reside /rɪ'zaɪd/ *82*
reskilling /ˌri:'skɪlɪŋ/ *59*
resolute /'rezəlu:t/ *13*
resolution /ˌrezəl'u:ʃən/ *79*
resolved /rɪ'zɒlvd/ *73*
resources /rɪ'zɔ:sɪz/ *10*
responsive /rɪ'spɒnsɪv/ *39*
restrictions /rɪ'strɪkʃənz/ *31*, *40*
restrictive practices *49*
result in *70*
(as a) result of *70*
retraining /ˌri:'treɪnɪŋ/ *59*
retro- *4*
retroactive /ˌretrəʊ'æktɪv/ *4*
return to *83*
revaluation /ˌri:vælu'eɪʃən/ *49*
revise /rɪ'vaɪz/ *11*
revolt /rɪ'vəʊlt/ *17*
revolting /rɪ'vəʊltɪŋ/ *17*
revulsion /rɪ'vʌlʃən/ *17*, *48*
rewarding /rɪ'wɔ:dɪŋ/ *8*, *21*
-rich *3*
-ridden *3*
ridiculous /rɪ'dɪkjələs/ iv
riff-raff /'rɪfræf/ *99*
rift /rɪft/ *15*, *81*
(have) right of way *30*
rightly /raɪtli/ iv
ring out *66*
rip /rɪp/ *100*
ripe old age *20*
risqué /rɪ'skeɪ/ *25*
rival /'raɪvəl/ *15*
road /rəʊd/ *96*
road rage *30*
roadblock /'rəʊdblɒk/ *40*
roadworthy /'rəʊdˌwɜ:ðɪ/ *30*
roar /rɔ:/ *86*
roasting /'rəʊstɪŋ/ *34*
rock bottom *53*
rocket /'rɒkɪt/ *69*
rodent /'rəʊdənt/ *37*, *74*
rolling in it *50*
romance /rə'mæns/ *14*
Romance /rə'mæns/ *43*
romantic /rə'mæntɪk/ *14*
roof /ru:f/ *35*
room for *29*
roomy /'ru:mi/ *62*
root /ru:t/ *4*, *36*
rooted /'ru:tɪd/ *36*
rose-tinted spectacles *80*
roster /'rɒstə/ *5*
rote-learning /ˌrəʊt'lɜ:nɪŋ/ *11*
rough diamond *91*
rough it *31*
roughen /'rʌfən/ *3*
round the bend *91*
round things down/up *74*
round-up /'raʊndʌp/ *100*
roundabout /'raʊndəˌbaʊt/ *30*
rout /raʊt/ *48*
route /ru:t/ *31*
RSPCA /ˌɑ:resˌpi:si:'eɪ/ *1*
RSVP /ˌɑ:resvi:'pi:/ *1*, *29*
rub shoulders with *24*
rub someone up the wrong way *88*, *91*
ruby /'ru:bi/ *68*
rue the day *80*
(in) ruins /'ru:ɪnz/ *35*
run into ... figures *74*
run-of-the-mill /ˌrʌnəvðə'mɪl/ *26*
(in the) running /'rʌnɪŋ/ *58*
rut /rʌt/ *7*
s/c *1*
(in the) saddle /'sædl/ vi
safe transaction *39*
safety /'seɪfti/ *6*
safety-conscious /'seɪftiˌkɒnʃəs/ *3*
sagacious /sə'geɪʃəs/ *13*
sail through *58*
sales experience *8*
sallow /'sæləʊ/ *18*
(in the) same boat *73*
sanctions /'sæŋkʃənz/ *49*, *75*
sandwich boards *53*
sanitation /ˌsænɪ'teɪʃən/ *45*
sapphire /'sæfaɪə/ *68*
satellite communications *60*
satisfied about *76*
saunter /'sɔ:ntə/ *64*
savage /'sævɪdʒ/ *37*
save (time) /seɪv/ vi
saving grace *88*

savour /'seɪvə/ *32*
savoury /'seɪvəri/ *29*
say when *29*
scamper /'skæmpə/ *69*
scan /skæn/ *65*
scandal /'skændəl/ *80*
scar /skɑ:/ viii
scarlet /'skɑ:lət/ *68*
scarred by *57*
(carry the) scars of *57*
scatter /'skætə/ *62*
scatter ashes *20*
scene /si:n/ *27*
scheduled flight *31*
school governors *12*
schooling /'sku:lɪŋ/ *12*
sci-fi /'saɪˌfaɪ/ *1*
scientifically designed *53*
scoop /sku:p/ *54*
scope /skəʊp/ *83*
score an own goal *58*
scorn /skɔ:n/ *17*
scornful /'skɔ:nfəl/ *17*
scowl /skaʊl/ *18*, *65*
(a) scrap of *85*
scratch your head *18*
scrawny /'skrɔ:ni/ *18*
scream /skri:m/ *86*
screen out *52*
screensaver /'skri:nseɪvə/ *60*
scribble /'skrɪbl/ *84*
scruff /skrʌf/ *22*
scrupulously /'skru:pjələsli/ *15*
scurry /'skʌri/ *69*
scuttle /'skʌtl/ *69*
(all at) sea /si:/ *91*
search warrant *40*
seasonality /si:zən'ælɪti/ *34*
(in a) sec /sek/ *63*
(have) second thoughts *88*
seconds /'sekəndz/ *29*
secure site *39*
security /sɪ'kjʊərəti/ *6*
security forces *40*
see eye to eye *15*
see red *68*
seeds of /si:dz/ *36*
seek /si:k/ *32*
seek a career in *8*
seek publicity *54*
seesaw /'si:sɔ:/ *74*
seize power *44*
selective /sɪ'lektɪv/ *12*
self-assured /ˌselfə'ʃʊəd/ *13*
self-catering /ˌself'keɪtərɪŋ/ *31*
self-confident /ˌself'kɒnfɪdənt/ *13*
self-employed /ˌselfɪm'plɔɪd/ *7*
self-important /ˌselfɪm'pɔ:tənt/ *19*
self-seeking /ˌself'si:kɪŋ/ *13*
Semitic /sɪ'mɪtɪk/ *43*
sense of urgency *39*
sensible /'sensɪbl/ *73*
sensitise /'sensɪtaɪz/ *57*
(in) sequence /'si:kwəns/ *82*
serf /sɜ:f/ *44*
serial /'sɪəriəl/ *6*
series /'sɪəri:z/ *6*
serious /'sɪəriəs/ *13*
server /'sɜ:və/ *52*
service industry *59*
servile /'sɜ:vaɪl/ *78*
set a new trend *22*
set a precedent *47*
setback /'setbæk/ *72*
setting /'setɪŋ/ *27*
settle /'setl/ *33*
settlement /'setlmənt/ *81*
setup /'setʌp/ *6*
(in) seventh heaven *90*
shade /ʃeɪd/ *6*
shaded /'ʃeɪdɪd/ *84*
shades /ʃeɪdz/ vii
shadow /'ʃædəʊ/ *6*
shadowy /'ʃædəʊi/ *26*
shambles /'ʃæmblz/ *89*
shame /ʃeɪm/ *80*
shape /ʃeɪp/ *26*
share portfolios *50*
shark /ʃɑ:k/ viii
sharp-tongued /ˌʃɑ:p'tʌŋd/ *13*
shed /ʃed/ *36*
shell-shocked /'ʃelʃɒkt/ *100*
sheltered accommodation *20*
shift (n.) /ʃɪft/ *7*
shift (v.) /ʃɪft/ *97*
shift work *7*
shift worker *7*
ship /ʃɪp/ *10*
shipment /'ʃɪpmənt/ *10*
shocking pink *68*
shoddy /'ʃɒdi/ *39*
(in your) shoes /ʃu:z/ *73*
(on a) shoestring /'ʃu:strɪŋ/ *22*
shop around *9*
shopaholic /ʃɒpə'hɒlɪk/ *21*
short of, *expressions with* *90*
short-listed /'ʃɔ:tlɪstɪd/ *8*
shortly /'ʃɔ:tli/ *96*
shout /ʃaʊt/ *86*
shower praises on *78*
shrewd /ʃru:d/ *13*
shriek /ʃri:k/ *86*
shrinking habitat *38*
shrivel /'ʃrɪvəl/ *36*
shroff /ʃrɒf/ *97*
shrug your shoulders *18*
sick /sɪk/ *57*
sick note *56*
sickness /'sɪknəs/ *55*
side effect *57*
sidle /'saɪdl/ *64*, *69*
siege /si:dʒ/ *48*
sighting /'saɪtɪŋ/ *74*
sign /saɪn/ *49*
silent /'saɪlənt/ *66*
silken /'sɪlkən/ *3*
silly season *54*
simmer down *95*
since the year dot *63*
sincere /sɪn'sɪə/ *77*
sing someone's praises *78*
single currency *49*
sissy /'sɪsi/ *98*
sitcom /'sɪtkɒm/ *1*
site index *39*
sizzle /'sɪzl/ *66*
skate around *58*
skid /skɪd/ *30*
skiing holiday *31*
skillet /'skɪlɪt/ *96*
skimpy /'skɪmpi/ *22*
skint /skɪnt/ *50*
skip /skɪp/ *96*
sky-writing *53*
slacks /slæks/ *99*
slag off *86*
slam /slæm/ *66*
slash /slæʃ/ *53*
slaughtered /'slɔ:təd/ *20*
slave of/to fashion *22*
Slavic /'slɑ:vɪk/ *43*
sleep under the stars *31*
slimy /'slaɪmi/ *78*
slog away *94*
slog your guts out *72*
sloppy /'slɒpi/ *17*
slow on the uptake *90*
sluggish /'slʌgɪʃ/ *29*
slump /slʌmp/ *49*, *69*
slur /slɜ:/ *86*
sly /slaɪ/ *13*
small print *51*
small world *92*
smarmy /'smɑ:mi/ *78*
smart /smɑ:t/ *61*

smart ID card *60*
smart aleck /ˌsmɑːt 'ælɪk/ *90*
smart-casual /ˌsmɑːt'kæʒjuəl/ *22*
(a) smattering of *87*
smirk /smɜːk/ *65*
smog /smɒg/ *4*
smooth someone's ruffled feathers *100*
smug /smʌg/ *13*
snag /snæg/ *72*
(at a) snail's pace *63*
snake in the grass *91*
snazzy /'snæzi/ *22*
sniff at *65*
sniffer dog *40*
sniffle /'snɪfl/ *65*
snigger /'snɪgə/ *65*
snooty /'snuːti/ *99*
snort /snɔːt/ *65*
snowed under *8*, *34*, *95*
so far so good *92*
soar /sɔː/ *69*
sob your heart out *65*
sober /'səʊbə/ *13*
social graces *65*
socialise /'səʊʃəlaɪz/ *24*
(have a) soft spot for *90*
soft touch *91*
solidify /sə'lɪdɪfaɪ/ *67*
sombre /'sɒmbə/ *42*
something along those lines *87*
something will have to be done about *76*
somewhat /'sʌmwɒt/ *82*
sophisticated /sə'fɪstɪkeɪtɪd/ *26*
sorry /'sɒri/ *80*
(a) sort of *87*
sort out *94*
soulmate /'səʊlmeɪt/ *14*
sound /saʊnd/ *30*
sound bite /'saʊnd ˌbaɪt/ *54*
soundless /'saʊndləs/ *66*
soundproof /'saʊnpruːf/ *3*
source /sɔːs/ *5*
spacious /'speɪʃəs/ *62*
spam /spæm/ *52*
spark off *70*
special needs education *12*
specs /speks/ vii
spectacle /'spektəkl/ *42*
spectacles /'spektəklz/ vii
spectacular /spek'tækjələ/ *42*
speed limit *30*
speed up *69*
spend /spend/ vi
spend a fortune *31*
spice up *28*
spiffing /'spɪfɪŋ/ *99*
spill /spɪl/ *64*
spin /spɪn/ *54*
spine /spaɪn/ *51*
split /splɪt/ *81*
split fifty/fifty *21*
split the bill *29*
split up *15*
spokesman /'spəʊksmən/ *98*
spokesperson /'spəʊksˌpɜːsən/ *98*
(in a) spot /spɒt/ *72*
spot check *40*
spread out *62*
sprout /spraʊt/ *36*
squad /skwɒd/ *40*
squalid /'skwɒlɪd/ *17*
square deal *10*
squat /skwɒt/ *23*
squeak /skwiːk/ *66*
squeeze in *62*
squirm /skwɜːm/ *65*
staff /stɑːf/ *98*
stag party *24*
stagecoach /'steɪdʒkəʊtʃ/ *44*
stagger /'stægə/ *64*
staggeringly /'stægərɪŋli/ *64*
stake /steɪk/ *79*
stammer /'stæmə/ *86*
stamp /stæmp/ *64*
stand a good chance *88*
stand back from *93*
stand by someone *93*
stand down *93*
stand for *93*
stand in for *93*
stand on ceremony *65*
stand out in your mind *80*
stand out in the crowd *53*
stand someone up *24*, *93*
stand up for *93*
standing ovation *25*, *78*
star /stɑː/ *100*
starchy /'stɑːtʃi/ *65*
start /stɑːt/ vii
start a new trend *22*
state ownership *59*
state-of-the-art /ˌsteɪtəvði'ɑːt/ *53*, *88*
(make a) statement /steɪtmənt/ *40*
station /'steɪʃən/ *97*
statutory /'stætjətəri/ *47*
staunch /stɔːnʃ/ *15*
stem /stem/ *36*
step on it *94*
step-by-step /ˌstepbaɪ'step/ *51*
(take) steps *64*
stew /stjuː/ *28*
stick it out *94*
sticky /'stɪki/ *72*
stiff /stɪf/ *72*
stiff neck *56*
stifling /'staɪflɪŋ/ *34*
still might *73*
sting /stɪŋ/ *56*
stingy /'stɪndʒi/ *13*
stools /stuːlz/ *57*
stop press *54*
stop-and-search /ˌstɒpənd'sɜːtʃ/ *40*
stopover /'stɒpˌəʊvə/ *31*
store card *50*
storm in a teacup *89*
story of my life *23*
stout /staʊt/ *18*
stove /stəʊv/ *96*
stow away *94*
strait-laced /ˌstreɪt'leɪst/ *65*
(put someone in a) straitjacket /'streɪtˌdʒækɪt/ *22*
strapped for cash *50*
strategies /'strætədʒiz/ vi
strawberry /'strɔːbəri/ *68*
stream /striːm/ *64*
street /striːt/ *96*
stress level *7*
stress-free /ˌstres'friː/ *3*
stress-related /'stresrɪˌleɪtɪd/ *3*
stride /straɪd/ *64*
strong colours *68*
(in the) strongest terms *76*
strongly /'strɒŋli/ iv
strut /strʌt/ *64*
struth /struːθ/ *97*
stubborn /'stʌbən/ *13*
stuck behind a desk *7*
stuck in a rut *7*
stuck-up /ˌstʌk'ʌp/ *99*
student-led *3*
stuff /stʌf/ *87*
stuff in *62*
stumble /'stʌmbl/ *64*
stumbling block *72*, *88*
stunning /'stʌnɪŋ/ *32*
stutter /'stʌtə/ *86*
sub-heading /'sʌbhedɪŋ/ *84*
submit /səb'mɪt/ *11*
submit a tender *10*
subscribe to *52*
subscription /səb'skrɪpʃən/ *51*

subsequently /ˈsʌbsɪkwəntli/ vii
subsidy /ˈsʌbsɪdi/ *59*
subsistence farming *23*
substandard /ˌsʌbˈstændəd/ *39*
subsume /səbˈsjuːm/ *83*
succeed to *44*
(and) suchlike /ˈsʌtʃlaɪk/ *87*
suck up to *78*
suffer from *55*
suffix /ˈsʌfɪks/ *3*
suggestion /səˈdʒestʃən/ *73*
suit of armour *44*
sullen /ˈsʌlən/ *13*, *29*
sultry /ˈsʌltri/ *34*
(in) sum /sʌm/ vii
summary /ˈsʌməri/ iv, *47*
sumptuous /ˈsʌmtʃuəs/ *53*
sunflower /ˈsʌnˌflaʊə/ *68*
sunglasses /ˈsʌnˌglɑːsɪz/ vii
sunny disposition *34*
superficial /ˌsuːpəˈfɪʃəl/ *13*
superstitious /ˌsuːpəˈstɪʃəs/ *42*
supervisor /ˈsuːpəvaɪzə/ *98*
supplement /ˈsʌplɪmənt/ *51*
supply teacher
support /səˈpɔːt/ *14*
supportive /səˈpɔːtɪv/ *14*, *15*
sure /ʃʊə/ *96*
surf the Web *52*
surgeon /ˈsɜːdʒən/ *55*
surgery /ˈsɜːdʒəri/ *55*
surrealist /səˈrɪəlɪst/ *26*
surveillance /sɜːˈveɪləns/ *40*
survival of the fittest *10*
sustain /səˈsteɪn/ *38*, *74*
sustainability /səˌsteɪnəˈbɪləti/ *38*
sustainable development *38*, *49*
sustainably /səsˈteɪnəbli/ *38*
swallow up *9*
swarthy /ˈswɔːði/ *18*
swear /sweə/ *79*
swear words *79*
sweatshop /ˈswetʃɒp/ *59*
sweet tooth *29*
sweeten /ˈswiːtən/ *3*
sweetener /ˈswiːtənə/ *59*
sweltering /ˈsweltərɪŋ/ *34*
swift /swɪft/ *58*
swiftly /ˈswɪftli/ iv
switch production *59*
symbolise /ˈsɪmbəlaɪz/ *42*
sympathetic /ˌsɪmpəˈθetɪk/ *5*
symptom /ˈsɪmtəm/ *56*, *57*
symptomatic /ˌsɪmtəˈmætɪk/ *57*
synonym /ˈsɪnənɪm/ iii
synonymous /sɪˈnɒnɪməs/ ii
synonymy /sɪˈnɒnɪmi/ ii
syntax /ˈsɪntæks/ *43*
synthetic /sɪnˈθetɪk/ *28*
tabby /ˈtæbi/ *5*
tablet /ˈtæblət/ *55*
tabloid newspapers *100*
taciturn /ˈtæsɪtɜːn/ *19*
tactics /ˈtæktɪks/ vi
tactless /ˈtæktləs/ *13*
tailback /ˈteɪlbæk/ *30*
take a left *96*
take aback *95*
take exception to *76*
take it as a compliment *78*
take it out on *95*
take off *93*
take pot luck *29*
take root *36*
take something in your stride *64*
take something in the spirit in which it is intended *73*
take something with a pinch of salt *41*
take steps *64*
take the shirt off someone's back *22*
takeaway /ˈteɪkəweɪ/ *29*
tale /teɪl/ *27*
talk shop *7*
talk the hind legs off a donkey *90*
tally /ˈtæli/ *81*
tame /teɪm/ *37*
tantalisingly /ˈtæntəlaɪzɪŋli/ *53*
tantamount /ˈtæntəmaʊnt/ *71*
Taoiseach /ˈtiːʃɒk/ *97*
tap /tæp/ *96*
tap someone's telephone *40*
tap sources *54*
tap your fingers *18*
target /ˈtɑːgɪt/ *100*
Tate Modern *26*
tax concession *46*
tax-free /ˌtæksˈfriː/ *3*
TB /ˌtiːˈbiː/ vii, *55*
teamwork /ˈtiːmwɜːk/ *10*
tear /tɪə/ *69*
techie /ˈteki/ *60*
techno- *4*
technophobia /ˌteknəˈfəʊbiə/ *4*
teetotal /ˌtiːˈtəʊtəl/ *29*
tele- *4*
telemarketing /ˌtelɪˈmɑːkɪtɪŋ/ *9*
telepathic /ˌtelɪˈpæθɪk/ *4*
telesales /ˈtelɪseɪlz/ *9*
television /ˈtelɪˌvɪʒən/ vii
teleworker /ˈtelɪˌwɜːkə/ *7*
tell against *93*
tell apart *93*
tell off *93*
tell on *93*
telly /ˈteli/ vii
tend /tend/ *33*
tend to *76*
tender /ˈtendə/ *10*
tenet /ˈtenɪt/ *41*
terminate /ˈtɜːmɪneɪt/ ii
termination /ˌtɜːmɪˈneɪʃən/ *20*
terror /ˈterə/ *100*
terse /tɜːs/ *13*
thanks to *70*
that'll be *73*
the box vii
the chances are *73*
the height of fashion *22*
the likes of *80*
the odds are *73*
the three Rs *12*
(accede/succeed to) the throne *44*
theme /θiːm/ *6*
therapeutic /ˌθerəˈpjuːtɪk/ *21*
thereby /ˌðeəˈbaɪ/ *82*
thesaurus /θɪˈsɔːrəs/ iii
thesis /ˈθiːsɪs/ *11*
(as) thick as two short planks *90*
thicken *67*
thin out *67*
(the done) thing /θɪŋ/ *65*
thing, *expressions with* /θɪŋ/ *85*, *87*
thing of the past *65*
things are a bit tight *50*
thingumabob /ˈθɪŋəməˌbɒb/ *85*
thingummy /ˈθɪŋəmi/ *85*
thingummyjig /ˈθɪŋəmɪdʒɪg/ *85*
thingy /ˈθɪŋi/ *85*
think the world of *90*
(can't hear yourself) think *66*
thirst /θɜːst/ *16*
thrifty /ˈθrɪfti/ *13*
thrilled to bits *16*
throb /θrɒb/ *56*
throne /θrəʊn/ *44*
throw fresh light on vi
throw someone *89*
throw up *57*
thug /θʌg/ *100*
thumbnail /ˈθʌmneɪl/ *60*
thunder /ˈθʌndə/ *34*
thunderous /ˈθʌndərəs/ *34*
thundery /ˈθʌndəri/ *34*

(in a) tick /tɪk/ *63*
tight /taɪt/ *45*
tighten your belt vi
tilde /'tɪldə/ *43*
till hell freezes over *63*
till the cows come home *63*
(ahead of your) time /taɪm/ *22*
time-conscious /'taɪmkɒnʃəs/ *3*
time-consuming /'taɪmkən,sju:mɪŋ/ *21*
tinge of *68*
tip /tɪp/ *73*
tip off *94*
tiptoe /'tɪptəʊ/ *64*
title /'taɪtl/ *84*
titter /'tɪtə/ *65*
(be the) toast of *78*
tobacco-related *3*
toff /tɒf/ *99*
toilet /'tɔɪlɪt/ *99*
tolerance /'tɒlərəns/ *58*
tolerant /'tɒlərənt/ *13*
tomboy /'tɒmbɔɪ/ *98*
tongue-in-cheek /,tʌŋɪn'tʃi:k/ *26*
tongue-tied /'tʌŋtaɪd/ *86*
tonic /'tɒnɪk/ *5*
toot /tu:t/ *30, 66*
topic /'tɒpɪk/ *6*
tot up *74*
totter /'tɒtə/ *69*
(a) touch of *85*
touch upon *83*
tough /tʌf/ *72*
tourism sector *32*
towaway zone *30*
tower above *35*
tower of strength *35*
(out on the) town *24*
trackpad /'trækpæd/ *60*
tract /trækt/ *32*
trade union representation *59*
trade war *49*
tragic /'trædʒɪk/ *100*
trail /treɪl/ *96*
trailer /'treɪlə/ *53*
tramp /træmp/ *64*
trample /'træmpl/ *64*
transaction /træn'zækʃən/ *39*
transfer /'trænsfɜ:/ *31*
transfers /'trænsfɜ:z/ *31*
transfusion /træns'fju:ʒən/ *55*
transient /'trænziənt/ *63*
transparent /træn'spærənt/ *26*
traumatic /trɔ:'mætɪk/ *72*
travel /'trævəl/ vi
treaty /'tri:ti/ *47, 77*
trek /trek/ *32*
trekking holiday *31*
tremble /'trembl/ *56*
trend /trend/ *22*
trespass /'trespəs/ *47*
trespasser /'trespəsə/ *47*
tribulation /,trɪbjə'leɪʃən/ *72*
tribute /'trɪbju:t/ *78*
trickle /'trɪkl/ vi, *64*
tricky /'trɪki/ *72*
trigger /'trɪgə/ *82*
trip /trɪp/ *31*
trite /traɪt/ *17*
troops /tru:ps/ *48*
tropical /'trɒpɪkəl/ *34*
(wear the) trousers /'traʊzəz/ *22*
truce /tru:s/ *48, 77*
trudge /trʌdʒ/ *64*
true up to a point *85*
trust /trʌst/ *14*
trusting /'trʌstɪŋ/ *14*
trustworthy /'trʌst,wɜ:ði/ *14*
truthful /'tru:θfəl/ *15*
tuberculosis /tju:,bɜ:kjə'ləʊsɪs/ vii, *55*
tumble /'tʌmbl/ *69*
tundra /'tʌndrə/ *33*
turban /'tɜ:bən/ *5*
turn down *8*
turn your stomach *91*
turn out all right in the end *92*
turn over a new leaf *79*
turn sour *15, 28*
turn your hand to *10*
turquoise /'tɜ:kwɔɪz/ *68*
TV /,ti:'vi:/ vii
twiddle your thumbs *92*
twist someone round your little finger *91*
twitch /twɪtʃ/ *65*
two-tier system *12*
typecast /'taɪpkɑ:st/ *25*
typescript /'taɪpskrɪpt/ *84*
typhoid /'taɪfɔɪd/ *55*
tyre tread *30*
UFO /,ju:ef'əʊ/ *1*
ulcer /'ʌlsə/ *57*
umbrella /ʌm'brelə/ vii
umlaut /'ʊmlaʊt/ *43*
umpteen /,ʌm'ti:n/ *85*
unapproachable /,ʌnə'prəʊtʃəbl/ *19*
unbeatable /ʌn'bi:təbl/ *32*
uncooperative /,ʌnkəʊ'ɒpərətɪv/ *39*
undelete /,ʌndɪ'li:t/ *52*
undemanding /,ʌndɪ'mændɪŋ/ *26*
under a cloud *34*
under guarantee/warranty *39*
under the weather *55, 56*
under- *2*
undercarriage /'ʌndəkærɪdʒ/ *2*
undercover police *40*
underestimate /,ʌndər'estɪmeɪt/ *2*
underfoot /,ʌndə'fʊt/ *2*
underfunded /,ʌndə'fʌndɪd/ *2*
underhand /,ʌndə'hænd/ *2*
underlying /,ʌndə'laɪɪŋ/ *2*
undermine /,ʌndə'maɪn/ *2*
underscore /,ʌndə'skɔ:/ *83*
understaffed /,ʌndə'stɑ:ft/ *2*
understated /,ʌndə'steɪtɪd/ *25*
UNESCO /ju:'neskəʊ/ *1*
uninspiring /,ʌnɪn'spaɪərɪŋ/ *26*
uninstall /,ʌnɪn'stɔ:l/ *52*
unkempt /ʌn'kemt/ *18*
unlimited mileage *31*
unprincipled /ʌn'prɪnsəpld/ *13*
unrivalled /ʌn'raɪvəld/ *32*
unsatisfactory /ʌn,sætɪs'fæktəri/ *76*
unsavoury /ʌn'seɪvəri/ *28*
unscrupulous /ʌn'skru:pjələs/ *13, 19*
unstinting /ʌn'stɪntɪŋ/ *13*
unsupportive /,ʌnsə'pɔ:tɪv/ *15*
unsurpassed /,ʌnsə'pɑ:st/ *53*
unswerving /ʌn'swɜ:vɪŋ/ *15*
unsympathetic /,ʌnsɪmpə'θetɪk/ *17*
untidy /ʌn'taɪdi/ *84*
untruthful /ʌn'tru:θfəl/ *15*
unwieldy /ʌn'wi:ldi/ *67*
unwind /ʌn'waɪnd/ *32*
up against it *72*
up and running *89*
up to your neck *72*
up- *2*
up-and-coming /,ʌpəp'kʌmɪŋ/ *25*
up-to-the-minute /,ʌptəðə'mɪnɪt/ *22*
upend /ʌp'end/ *6*
upgrade /ʌp'greɪd/ *2*
uphold /ʌp'həʊld/ *6*
upload /ʌp'ləʊd/ *52*
upper case *84*
upper crust /,ʌpə 'krʌst/ *99*
upper deck *31*
upset /'ʌpset/ *6*
upturn /'ʌptɜ:n/ *2*
usher in *41*
usurp /ju:'zɜ:p/ *44*
uterus /'ju:tərəs/ *20*
utilise /'ju:tɪlaɪz/ *82*

utterly /ˈʌtəli/ iv
vaccination /ˌvæksɪˈneɪʃən/ *56*
vaccination certificate *40*
Valentine's Day *42*
value for money *31*
variables /ˈveəriəblz/ *74*
varsity /ˈvɑːsəti/ *97*
VAT /ˌviːeɪˈtiː/ /væt/ *1*
vegetable burger *28*
vegetarian /ˌvedʒɪˈteəriən/ *28*
vegetation /ˌvedʒɪˈteɪʃən/ *33*
veld /velt/ *97*
verdict /ˈvɜːdɪkt/ *47*
version /ˈvɜːʃən/ *25*
veto /ˈviːtəʊ/ *75*
Victorian /vɪkˈtɔːriən/ *44*
violet /ˈvaɪələt/ *68*
virgin /ˈvɜːdʒɪn/ *32*
virile /ˈvɪraɪl/ *98*
virtual reality *61*
visit /ˈvɪzɪt/ iv
visually literate *26*
vivid /ˈvɪvɪd/ *68*
vocational /vəˈkeɪʃənəl/ *7*
vomit /ˈvɒmɪt/ *57*
vote with your feet *26*
vow /vaʊ/ *79*
wage war *48*
wager /ˈweɪdʒə/ *79*
wail /weɪl/ *66*
walking on air *16*, *90*
wall of silence *35*
wander off the beaten track *32*
war-torn /ˈwɔːtɔːn/ *49*
warfare /ˈwɔːfeə/ *48*
warlike /ˈwɔːlaɪk/ *48*
warm-hearted /ˌwɔːmˈhɑːtɪd/ *15*
warrant /ˈwɒrənt/ *40*
warranty /ˈwɒrənti/ *39*
warring /ˈwɔːrɪŋ/ *48*
washable /ˈwɒʃəbl/ *3*
washroom /ˈwɒʃrʊm/ *97*
waste /weɪst/ vi
water something down *67*
waterfront /ˈwɔːtəfrʌnt/ *32*
waterproof /ˈwɔːtəpruːf/ *3*
(go out of your) way /weɪ/ *29*
wayward /ˈweɪwəd/ *72*
weak /wiːk/ *77*
wealth of *32*
wear off *94*
wear the trousers *22*
wedding party *24*
wee /wiː/ *97*
weed out *36*
weigh down *67*
weigh in *67*
weigh on someone *67*
weigh out *67*
weigh up *67*
weighty /ˈweɪti/ *67*
welcoming /ˈwelkəmɪŋ/ *15*
well-endowed /ˌwelɪnˈdaʊd/ *12*
well-funded *46*
well-matched *14*
what a pain! *89*
what'd you take me for *41*
what's bugging him *72*
what's eating him *72*
what's got into him *72*
whatchamacallit /ˈwɒtʃəməˌkɔːlɪt/ *85*
whatnot /ˈwɒtnɒt/ *85*
whatsername /ˈwɒtsəneɪm/ vii, *85*
whatsisname /ˈwɒtsɪzneɪm/ vii, *80*, *85*
whatsit /ˈwɒtsɪt/ *85*
whereby /weəˈbaɪ/ *82*
whimper /ˈwɪmpə/ *65*
whine /waɪn/ *86*
whinge /wɪndʒ/ *76*, *86*
whirlwind /ˈwɜːlwɪnd/ *34*
whisper /ˈwɪspə/ *86*
white /waɪt/ viii, *68*
white as a sheet *68*
white as snow *68*
white knuckle *68*
white tie event *24*
white-collar /ˌwaɪtˈkɒlə/ *68*
whiter than white *68*
whither /ˈwɪðə/ vii
whittle away *94*
WHO /ˌdʌbljuːeɪtʃˈəʊ/ *1*
who should I see but *73*
wholemeal /ˈhəʊlmiːl/ *28*
wholesome /ˈhəʊlsəm/ *28*
whosit /huːzɪt/ *85*
wicked /ˈwɪkɪd/ *99*
wide open spaces *62*
widely praised *78*
widespread /ˈwaɪdspred/ *82*
(the) wilds /waɪldz/ *31*
will /wɪl/ *20*
will almost certainly *73*
wilt /wɪlt/ *36*
win a tender *10*
win plaudits from *78*
wind /wɪnd/ *57*
wind someone up vii, *86*
wind up ii
winds of *34*
wine and dine *29*
wireless /ˈwaɪələs/ vii, *99*
wires crossed *89*
wise /waɪz/ *73*
wise up *26*
wish /wɪʃ/ *73*, *76*, *80*
wither /ˈwɪðə/ *36*
withering /ˈwɪðərɪŋ/ *36*
without frills *22*
without so much as a by-your-leave *92*
wits /wɪts/ *20*
witty /ˈwɪti/ *13*
woman of his dreams *90*
womanly /ˈwʊmənli/ *98*
womb /wuːm/ *20*
won't /wəʊnt/ *73*
won't do *76*
wonder /ˈwʌndə/ *80*
wonderful /ˈwʌndəfəl/ *96*
(out of the) woods /wʊdz/ *72*
woollen /ˈwʊlən/ *3*
word stock *5*
(or) words to that effect *87*
work like a dream *89*
work-obsessed *13*
workaholic /ˌwɜːkəˈhɒlɪk/ *13*
worked up *95*
working relationship *7*
working hours *98*
workload /ˈwɜːkləʊd/ *7*
workmate /ˈwɜːkmeɪt/ *7*
(in a) world of your own *91*
worsen /ˈwɜːsən/ *3*
worst case scenario *38*
(be your own) worst enemy *91*
-worthy *3*
would be well advised to *76*
would you believe it *92*
wrap someone round your little finger *91*
write down *84*
write off *49*
write up *11*, *84*
wry /raɪ/ *27*
-y *68*, *87*
yearn /jɜːn/ *73*
yearn for *16*
yell /jel/ *86*
yellow /ˈjeləʊ/ viii
yonks /jɒŋks/ *63*
you can't win them all *92*
you could have heard a pin drop *66*

you must be joking *73*
your own person *91*
zero-tolerance /ˌzɪərəʊˈtɒlərəns/ *75*
zip /zɪp/ *69*

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank several individuals and also the students and staff at various institutions in different parts of the world who provided us with invaluable feedback on the initial manuscript: Olga Afanasyeva, Moscow, Russia; Faramarz Amiri, University of Wolverhampton; Andrew Arleo, Saint Nazaire, France; L Baranochnikova, Russia; Tomasz Bilau, Gdansk, Poland; Judith d'All, Angers, France; Celso Frade, Brazil; Reiko Furuya, Japan; Monika Galbarczyk, Warsaw, Poland; Ana Llinares Garcia, Madrid, Spain; Olga Gasparova, Moscow, Russia; Virginia Gavathas, Athens, Greece; Carolyne Ardron, Milan, Italy; Ludmila Gorodetskaya, Moscow, Russia; Eryl Griffiths, Cambridge, UK; Ewa Gumul, Sosnowiec, Poland; Sarah Hamilton, London, UK; Kathy Keohane, Stockport, UK; Cath King, London, UK; Marina Kulinich, Samara, Russia; Gillian Lazar, London, UK; Marilyn Lewis, Auckland, New Zealand; Elena Marinina, Moscow, Russia; Geraldine Mark, Cheltenham, UK; Ewa Modrzejewska, Gdansk, Poland; Anne O'Keefe, Limerick, Ireland; Paul Pauwels, Antwerpen, Belgium; Chen Pei Tsen, Taiwan, China; Guy Perring, Tokyo, Japan; David Perry, Valencia, Spain; Chaz Pugliese, Paris, France; Tony Robinson, Cambridge, UK; Shiomi Sasanuma, Tokyo, Japan; Diane Slaouti, University of Manchester, UK; Ruth Wajnryb, Sydney, Australia.

Particular thanks are due to our editors at Cambridge University Press, Nóirín Burke and Martine Walsh, who have contributed far beyond the call of duty to this book at all the stages of its development. We are extremely grateful to them for their generous help and support and we are well aware that this book would have been very different and much poorer had it not been for them. We are also very grateful to Jane Cordell, who contributed to the project in its initial stages, and to Alyson Maskell for the experience which she brought to the final editing. Last but not least, we would both like to thank our domestic partners for their patience and their assistance in many ways throughout the process of writing *English Vocabulary in Use: advanced*.

Michael McCarthy & Felicity O'Dell

Cambridge, January 2002

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce copyright material in *English Vocabulary in Use: advanced*. While every effort has been made, it has not been possible to identify the sources of all the material used and in such cases the publishers would welcome information from copyright owners.

pp.28 and *214* extracts from *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of the English Language* by David Crystal (Cambridge University Press, 1995); *p.33 Making time to meet* from USA TODAY Snapshots, Copyright 2000, USA TODAY. Reprinted with permission; *p.34* advert © The Observer 1998; *p.36* from The Times online (2000); *p.38* from *DOGBERT'S Top Secret Management Handbook*. Copyright © 1996 United Feature Syndicate, Inc.; *p.49* The Far Side® by Gary Larson © 1980 FarWorks, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Used with permission; *p.48* extract by William Davis from *High Life*, Headway Publishing (1998); *p.58* (top) extract by Cherry Norton first published in The Independent 11 September 1999; *p.58* (middle) extract by Keith Waterhouse from *Night and Day Magazine* 1999; *p.61* extract by Elaine Glusac, from *American Way* (2000); *p.62* by Julian Robson © Telegraph Group Limited; *p.70 Art* © Adrian Searle (2000) from The Guardian ©; *p.74* article by Christine Michael, from *Top Santé* (1999); *p.82* extract from article by Images, Words, Ltd. in The Observer © 2000; *p.84* adapted from *The Dorling Kindersley Geography of the World* (Dorling Kindersley 1996) copyright 1996 Dorling Kindersley Ltd; *p.95 Number of threatened species in USA* from USA TODAY Snapshots, Copyright 2000, USA TODAY. Reprinted with permission; *p.102* (top right) extract from *Culture Shock! Taiwan* by Chris & Lang-Li Bates © 1995 Times Media Pte Ltd. Published by Times Books International, an imprint of Times Media Pte Ltd; *p.102* (top left) extract reprinted by kind permission of the Tourism Bureau R.O.C., Taiwan China; *p.108* extract from *New Internationalist* (www.newint.org) © 1999; *p.110* from *The Essential Anatomy of Britain: Democracy in Crisis*, copyright ©1993 by Anthony Sampson, reprinted by permission of Harcourt Inc.; *p.114* from *No More War Heroes* by Dorothy Thompson in *New Internationalist* (www.newint.org) © 1999; *p.116* © Crown copyright 1999; *p.132* adapted from a Patient Information Leaflet from the Wallis Laboratory Ltd.; *p.134* (middle) by Ursula Kenny in The Observer © (1999); *p.134* (top) by Jane Clarke, author and nutritionist, published in The Observer © (1999); *p.166* from *Facts from Planet Gauge* by Morgan, HarperCollins Publishers Ltd; *p.210* The Far Side® by Gary Larson. © 1981 FarWorks, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Used with permission; *p.218* two headlines taken from The Guardian © 1999, reproduced with permission; *p.219* headlines reproduced from *Greek Gazette* by permission of Usborne Publishing, 83-85 Saffron Hill, London, EC1N 8RT. Copyright Usborne Publishing Ltd © 1997.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

Illustrations by:
O.D.I. *pp.29*, *78*, *88*, *130*, *131* and *138*
Sam Thompson *pp.32*, *54*, *55* and *200*
Kathy Baxendale *pp.44*, *81* and *107*
Phil Burrows *pp.62*, *78*, *124*, *125*, *141*, *164*, *170*, *178*, *189*, *196*, *202*, *206* and *208*

Original cover design by John Dunne
Designed and typeset by Oxford Designers & Illustrators